



# WARNING

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

Breathing diesel engine exhaust exposes you to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

- Always start and operate the engine in a well-ventilated area.
- If in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.
- Do not modify or tamper with the exhaust system.
- Do not idle the engine except as necessary.

For more information go to [www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel](http://www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel).

91K4-07310-EN

**⚠ Breathing diesel engine exhaust exposes you to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**

- Always start and operate the engine in a well-ventilated area.
- If in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.
- Do not modify or tamper with the exhaust system.
- Do not idle the engine except as necessary.

※ For more information go to [www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel](http://www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel).

EC declaration of conformity.....	0-1	6. Efficient working method .....	4-11
Foreword .....	0-2	7. Operation in the special work sites .....	4-15
Before servicing this machine .....	0-3	8. Normal operation of excavator .....	4-17
EC regulation approved .....	0-4	9. Attachment lowering .....	4-18
Table to enter S/No and distribution .....	0-5	10. Storage .....	4-19
Safety labels .....	0-6	11. RCV lever operating pattern .....	4-21
Machine data plate .....	0-15	12. Handling the rubber tracks .....	4-23
Guide (direction, S/No, Symbol) .....	0-16		

## 1. SAFETY HINTS

1. California proposition 65 .....	1-1
2. Safety instructions .....	1-2

## 2. SPECIFICATIONS

1. Major components .....	2-1
2. Specifications .....	2-2
3. Working range .....	2-5
4. Weight .....	2-7
5. Lifting capacities .....	2-8
6. Bucket selection guide .....	2-16
7. Undercarriage .....	2-17
8. Specification for major components .....	2-18
9. Recommended oils .....	2-21

## 3. CONTROL DEVICES

1. Cab devices .....	3-1
2. Cluster .....	3-2
3. Switches .....	3-35
4. Levers and pedals .....	3-41
5. Air conditioner and heater .....	3-43
6. Others .....	3-47

## 4. OPERATION

1. Instruction for new machine .....	4-1
2. Check before starting the engine .....	4-2
3. Starting and stopping the engine .....	4-3
4. Operation of the working device .....	4-7
5. Traveling of the machine .....	4-8

## 5. TRANSPORTATION

1. Preparation for transportation .....	5-1
2. Dimension and weight .....	5-2
3. Loading the machine .....	5-4
4. Fixing the machine .....	5-6
5. Loading and unloading by crane .....	5-7

## 6. MAINTENANCE

1. Instruction .....	6-1
2. Tightening torque .....	6-6
3. Fuel, coolant and lubricants .....	6-9
4. Maintenance check list .....	6-11
5. Maintenance chart .....	6-16
6. Service instruction .....	6-18
7. Electrical system .....	6-36
8. Air conditioner and heater .....	6-39

## 7. TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

1. Engine .....	7-1
2. Electrical system .....	7-2
3. Others .....	7-3

## 8. HYDRAULIC BREAKER AND QUICK COUPLER

1. Selecting hydraulic breaker .....	8-1
2. Circuit configuration .....	8-2
3. Maintenance .....	8-3
4. Precaution when operating the breaker ....	8-4
5. Quick coupler .....	8-6

## EC Declaration of Conformity (Original instruction)

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of manufacturer:

HD HYUNDAI CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT CO., LTD.

477 Bundangsuseo-ro, Bundang-gu,  
Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do 13553, Korea

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Europe N.V located at Hyundailaan 4, 3980 Tessenderlo, Belgium, as authorized representative in the European Community is authorized to compile the technical construction file and declares that the product:

Type:	*****
Model:	*****
Serial number (PIN):	*****

is in conformity with the relevant provisions of the Community harmonization legislation:

2006/42/EC - Machinery directive  
2014/30/EU - Electromagnetic compatibility directive  
2000/14/EC - Noise emission outdoor equipment directive  
2002/44/EU - Exposure of workers to vibration risks directive  
their amendments, and other applicable directives.

### EMC (2014/30/EU)

Certificate number:	*****
Date:	DD/MM/YYYY
Notified body:	*****

### Noise levels (2000/14/EC)

Certificate number:	*****
Date:	DD/MM/YYYY
Conformity assessment proc.:	Annex VIII Full Quality Assurance
Notified body:	*****

Measured sound power level:	nnn.n dB(A)
Guaranteed sound power level:	nnn.n dB(A)

### Engine information

Manufacturer :	*****
Engine model name:	*****
Type-approval number:	*****
Stage (Regulation) :	STAGE ** (**/**/**)
Gross Power (SAE J1995):	***kW / ****rpm
Net Power (SAE J1349):	***kW / ****rpm

Harmonized standards, other technical standards and specifications applied:

EN 474-1:2006+A\*:\*\*\*\* (EMM - Safety - Part 1); EN 474-3:2006+A\*:\*\*\*\* (EMM - Safety - Part 3); EN ISO 3471:2008 (EMM - ROPS: Lateral/Vertical/Longitudinal loads); EN ISO 3449:2008 (EMM - FOPS: Level II cabin); ISO 2631-1:1997 & ISO 2631-1:1997/Amd1 :2010 (Whole-body vibration); EN ISO 5349-1:2001 & EN ISO 5349-2:2001 & EN ISO 5349-2:2001/A1:2015 (Hand-arm vibration)

\*\*\*\*\*

Managing Director	
Place, date of issue:	Tessenderlo Belgium, DD MM YYYY

## FOREWORD

This manual contains a number of instructions and safety recommendations regarding driving, handling, lubrication, maintenance, inspection and adjustment of the excavator.

This manual provides important instructions regarding the excavator, including important safety warnings and instructions for proper operation and maintenance of the excavator.

Keep this manual handy and have all personnel read it periodically.

If you sell the machine, you must provide this manual with the excavator.

This machine complies with EC directive "2006/42/EC".

### 1. Read and understand this manual before operating the machine.

This operator's manual may contain attachments and optional equipment that are not available in your area. Please consult your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributor for those items you require.

### **▲ Improper operation and maintenance of this machine can be hazardous and could result in serious injury or death.**

The procedures and precautions given in this manual apply only to intended uses of the machine.

If you use your machine for any unintended uses that are not specifically prohibited, you must be sure that it is safe for you and others. In no event should you or others engage in prohibited uses of actions as described in this manual.

Some illustrations in this manual show details or attachments that can be different from your machine. Covers and guards might have been removed for illustrative purposes. Never operate the machine without the proper covers and guards in place.

### 2. Inspect the jobsite and follow the safety recommendations in chapter 1, Safety hints before operating the machine.

### 3. Use genuine HD Hyundai Construction Equipment spare parts for the replacement of parts.

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment will not accept any responsibility for defects resulting from non-genuine parts or non workmanlike repair.

In such cases HD Hyundai Construction Equipment cannot assume liability for any damage.

Continuing improvements in the design of this machine can lead to changes in detail which may not be reflected in this manual. Consult HD Hyundai Construction Equipment or your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributor for the latest available information for your machine or for questions regarding information in this manual.



## **EMISSION-RELATED COMPONENTS WARRANTY (USA AND CANADA ONLY)**

This machine complies with all applicable Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulations for warranties for emission-related components. The term of this warranty is 3,000 hours or five years, whichever occurs first.

This warranty does not cover damage arising from accident, misuse or negligence, use of non-HD Hyundai Construction Equipment parts, or alterations not authorized by HD Hyundai Construction Equipment.

**※ Emission-related components according to the EPA regulation.**

1. Air-induction system.
2. Fuel system.
3. Ignition system.
4. Exhaust gas recirculation systems.
5. After treatment devices.
6. Crankcase ventilation valves.
7. Sensors.
8. Electronic control units.

## **BEFORE SERVICING THIS MACHINE**

It is the responsibility of the owner and all service and maintenance personnel to avoid accidents and serious injury by keeping this machine properly maintained.

It also is the responsibility of the owner and all service and maintenance personnel to avoid accidents and serious injury while servicing the machine.

No one should service or attempt to repair this machine without proper training and supervision.

All service and maintenance personnel should be thoroughly familiar with the procedures and precautions contained in this manual.

All personnel also must be aware of any federal, state, provincial or local laws or regulations covering the use and service of construction equipment.

The procedures in this manual do not supersede any requirements imposed by federal, state, provincial or local laws.

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment can not anticipate every possible circumstance or environment in which this machine may be used and serviced.

All personnel must remain alert to potential hazards.

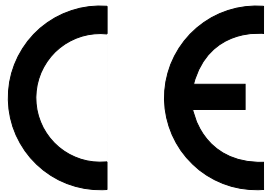
Work within your level of training and skill.

Ask your supervisor if you are uncertain about a particular task. Do not try to do too much too fast.

Use your common sense.

## EC REGULATION APPROVED

- Noise level (Directive 2000/14/EC) is as following.
  - LwA(Guaranteed) : 98 dB
- The value of vibrations transmitted by the operator's seat are lower than standard value of (EN474-1 and 2002/44/EC)



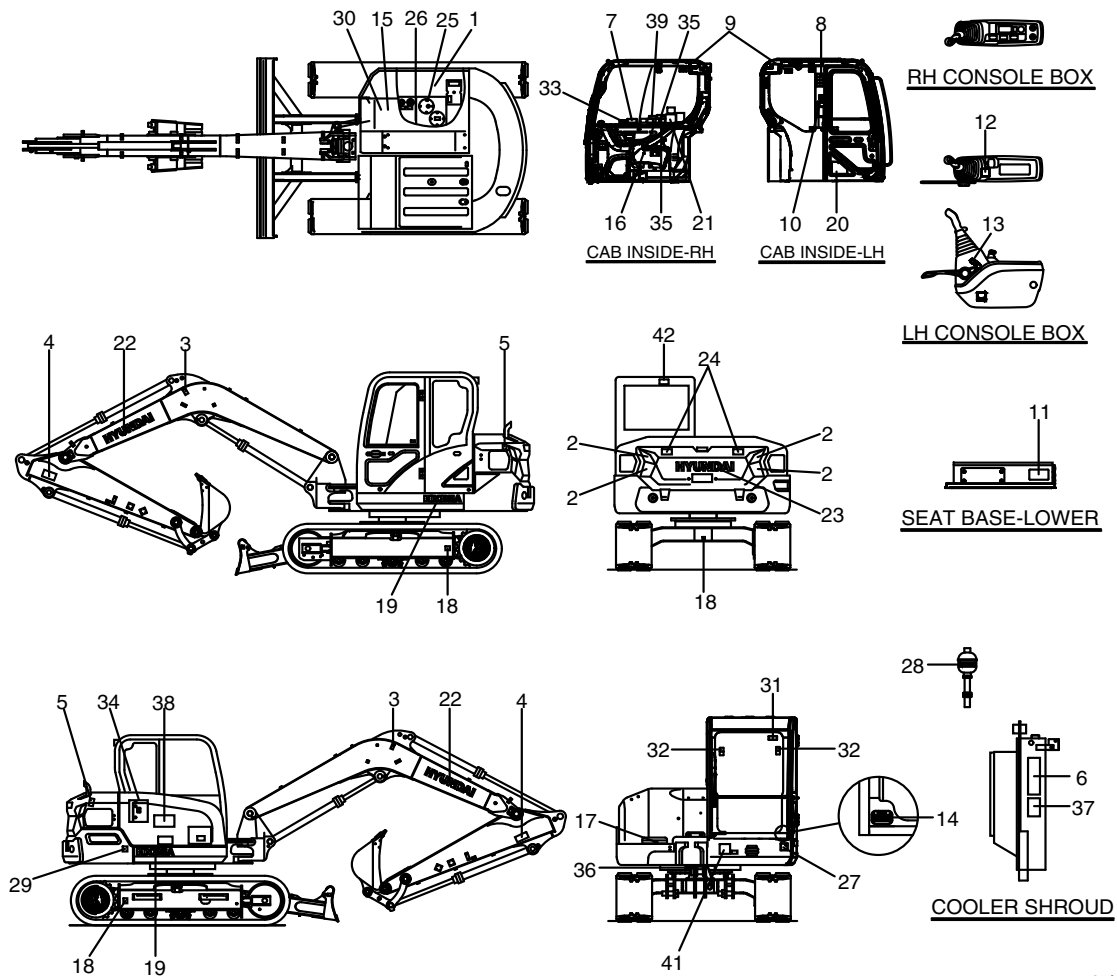
<b>TABLE TO ENTER SERIAL NO. AND DISTRIBUTOR</b>
--

Machine Serial No.	
Engine Serial No.	
Manufacturing year	
Manufacturer Address	HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Co., Ltd. 477 Bundangsuseo-ro, Bundang-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do 13553, Korea
Distributor for U.S.A Address	HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Americas, Inc 6100 Atlantic Boulevard Norcross GA 30071 U.S.A
Distributor for Europe Address	HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Europe N. V. Hyundailaan 4 3980 Tessenderlo Belgium
Dealer Address	

# SAFETY LABELS

## 1. LOCATION

Always keep these labels clean. If they are lost or damaged, replace them with a new label.



85A0SL01

- |                          |                            |                     |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Battery accident       | 15 Fueling                 | 29 Battery position |
| 2 Reflecting             | 16 General warning - frame | 30 Low sulfur fuel  |
| 3 Lifting point          | 17 Indicate - grease       | 31 Warning window   |
| 4 Keep clear - boom/arm  | 18 Tie                     | 32 Stay fix - cab   |
| 5 Keep clear-side        | 19 Model name              | 33 Lubrication      |
| 6 Caution - engine room  | 20 Service instruction     | 34 Fuel shut off    |
| 7 Control ideogram       | 21 Lifting chart           | 35 Water separator  |
| 8 General cautions - cab | 22 Hyundai logo - boom     | 36 Swing bearing    |
| 9 Safety - front window  | 23 Hyundai logo - CWT      | 37 Refrigerant      |
| 10 Hammer                | 24 Keep clear - rear       | 38 Bio oil          |
| 11 Aircon filter         | 25 ECU connector           | 39 Control dozer    |
| 12 Console tilting       | 26 High pressure           | 40 Pattern change   |
| 13 Safety knob           | 27 Noise level             | 41 Pin plate        |
| 14 ROPS plate            | 28 Accumulater             | 42 Beacon lamp      |

## 2. DESCRIPTION

There are several specific warning labels on this machine please become familiarized with all warning labels.

Replace any safety label that is damaged, or missing.

### 1) BATTERY ACCIDENT (item 1)

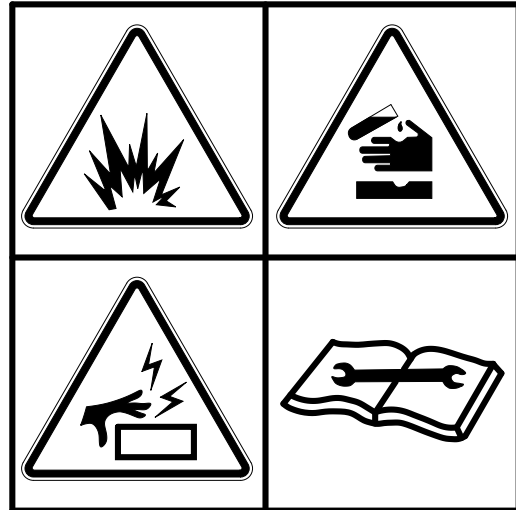
This label is positioned on the screen plate.  
Follow all warnings. Failure to comply may result in serious injury or death.

- ⚠ **Electrolyte containing sulfuric acid can cause severe burns. Avoid allowing contact with the skin, eyes or clothes. In the event of accident flush with sufficient water and contact a physician immediately. Failure to comply may result in serious injury or death.**

- ✳ **Maintain the electrolyte at the recommended level. Add distilled water to the battery only when starting up, never when shutting down.**

With electrolyte at proper level, less space may cause the gases to be accumulated in the battery.

- ⚠ **Do not allow any open flames or excessive heat near or when checking the battery.**
- ⚠ **Do not allow unauthorized personnel to change the battery or to use booster cables.**
- ⚠ **To prevent electric shock, do not touch battery terminal with wet hands.**



36070FW05

## 2) KEEP CLEAR-BOOM/ARM (item 4)

This label is positioned on both sides of the arm.

- ⚠ **Serious injury or death can result from a falling attachment.**
- ⚠ **To prevent serious injury or death, do not walk near, under implements or attachments. This applies when machine is in use, the implements are suspended in air or while the machine is being worked on.**

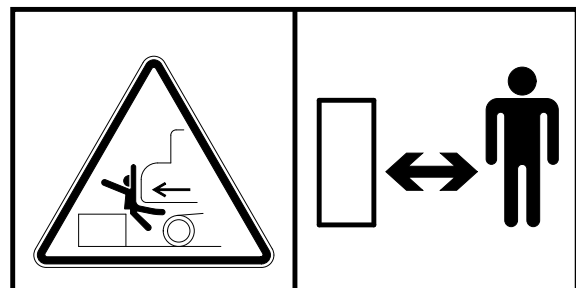


R5570FW31

## 3) KEEP CLEAR-REAR (item 24)

This label is positioned on the both sides of the counterweight.

- ⚠ **To prevent serious personal injury or death keep clear of machine swing radius.**
- ⚠ **Do not deface or remove this label from the machine.**

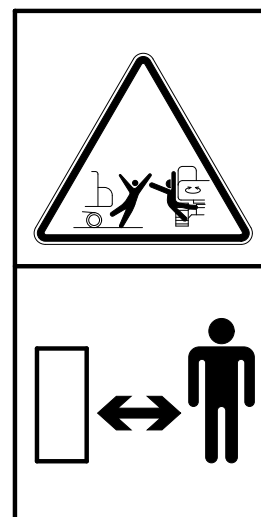


R35Z70FW09

## 4) KEEP CLEAR-SIDE (item 5)

This label is positioned on the side cover of the LH and RH cowl.

- ⚠ **To prevent serious personal injury or death keep clear of machine swing radius.**
- ⚠ **Do not deface or remove this label from the machine.**

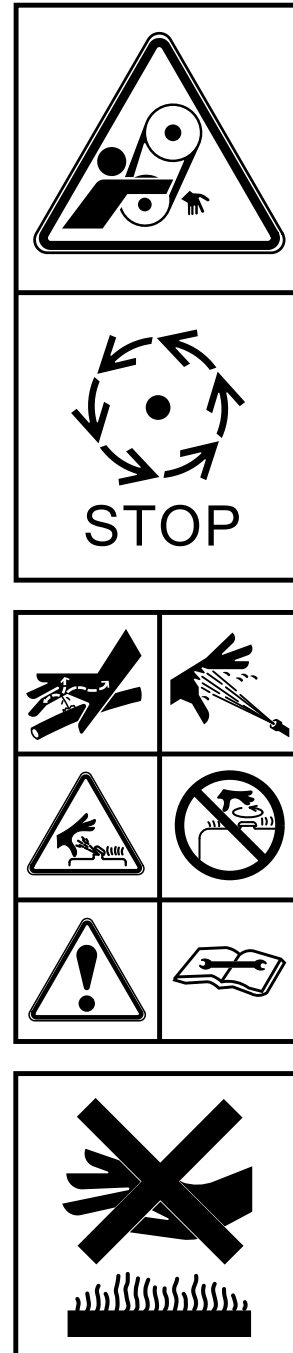


R5570FW13

### 5) CAUTION-ENGINE ROOM (item 6)

This label is positioned on the side of radiator.

- ⚠ Do not open the engine hood while the engine is running.
- ⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.
- ※ See the maintenance section for details.
- ⚠ Never open the filler cap while engine running or at high coolant oil temperature.
- ⚠ Review the operator's manual before starting and operating machine.
- ⚠ Do not touch exhaust pipe or it may cause severe burn.

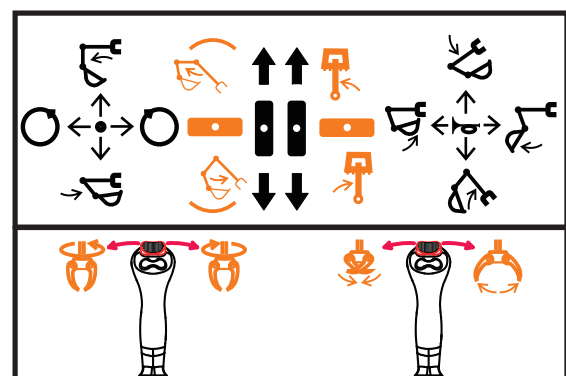


R5570FW14

### 6) CONTROL IDEOGRAM (item 7)

This label is positioned on the right window of inside the cab.

- ⚠ Always ensure the label matches the control pattern. If it does not, replace label with appropriate control pattern label.
- ⚠ Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death.
- ※ See page 4-7 for details.



85A0FW03A



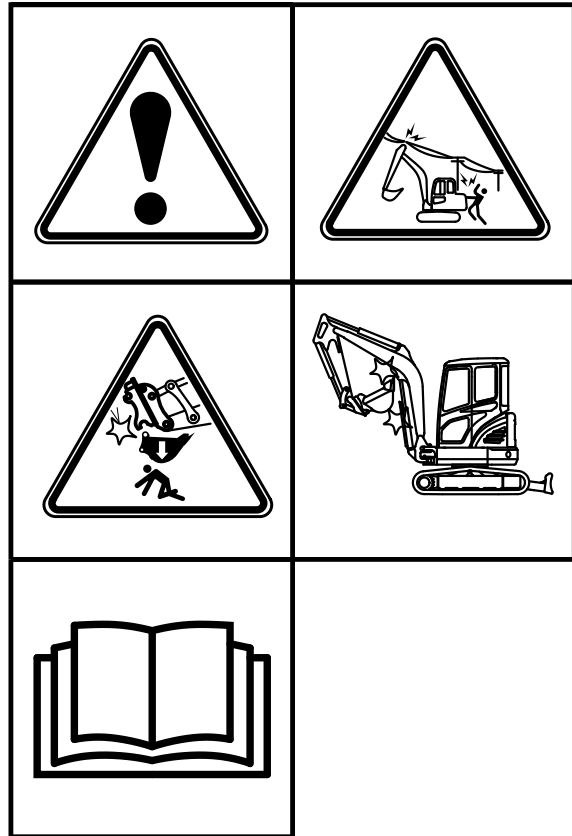
## 7) GENERAL CAUTIONS-CAB (item 8)

This label is positioned on the right window of inside the cab.

- ⚠ **Serious injury or death can result from contact with electric lines.**

It is possible to receive shock by merely coming into the vicinity of electric lines, the minimum distance based on supply voltage should never be exceeded. Refer to page 1-21.

- ⚠ **Serious injury or death can result from falling bucket.**
- ⚠ **Operating the machine with quick coupler switch unlocked or without safety pin of moving hook can cause the bucket to fall off.**
- ⚠ **When operating machine equipped with quick coupler or extensions, the bucket may come into contact with the boom, boom cylinders or cab, during the bucket or arm retraction operation.**

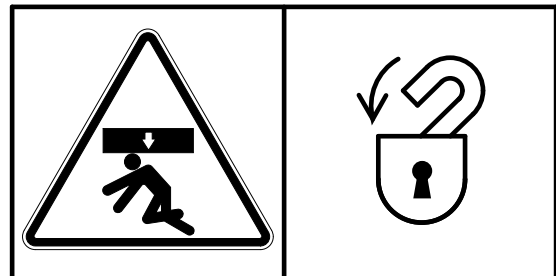


R35Z70FW11

## 8) SAFETY FRONT WINDOW (item 9)

This label is positioned on the right window of inside the cab.

- ⚠ **Make sure that front window is fully latched and locked into place before operating the machine.**

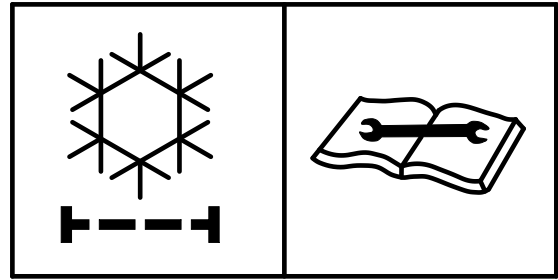


21070FW24

9) **AIR CONDITIONER FILTER (item 11)**

This label is positioned on the air front seat base.

- ※ **Periodic and proper inspection, cleaning and change of filter prolong air conditioner life and maintain good performance.**

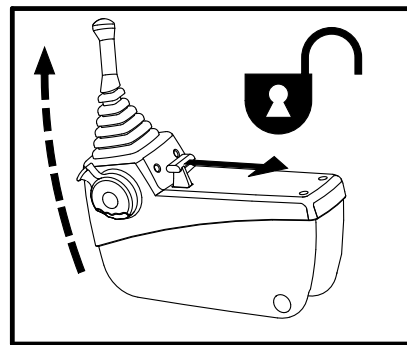


21070FW26

10) **CONSOLE TILTING (item 12)**

This label is positioned on the LH console box.

- ※ **Before you get off the machine, be sure to tilt the LH console box.**



21070FW27

11) **FUELING (item 15)**

This label is positioned on the fuel tank.

- ▲ **Stop the engine when refueling. Any lights or flames must be kept at a safe distance while refueling.**

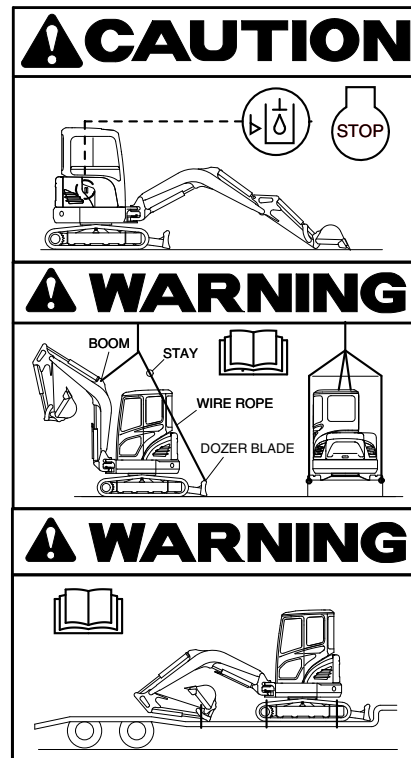


85A0FW04

### 12) GENERAL WARNING-FRAME (item 16)

This label is positioned on the right window of inside the cab.

- ⚠ **Review the operator's manual before transporting the machine. Tie down arm and track to the carrier with appropriate rated straps or chains.**
- ※ See page 5-6 for details.
- ⚠ **Place the bucket on the ground whenever servicing the hydraulic system.**
- ※ Check oil level on the level gauge as shown in the upper right hand illustration.
- ※ Using the recommend hydraulic oil, fill to the specified level if necessary. Please refer to section, Maintenance.

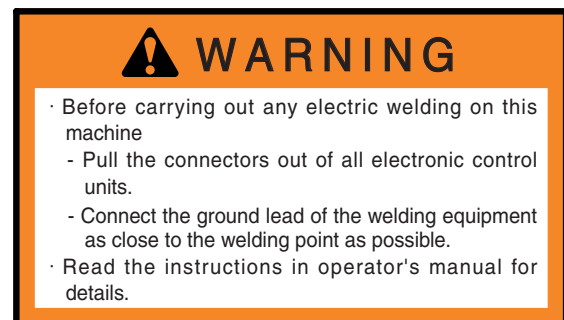


85A0FW12A

### 13) ECU CONNECTOR (item 25)

This label is positioned on the screen plate.

- ⚠ **Before carrying out any electric welding on this machine, follow the below procedure.**
  - Pull the connectors out of all electric control units.
  - Connect the ground lead of the welding equipment as close to the welding point as possible.
- ※ **Be sure to remove paint where ground will be applied to ensure proper grounding of welder. Once welding is complete, clean and repaint area.**
- See page 6-38 for detail.



7807AFW20

#### 14) ACCUMULATOR (item 28)

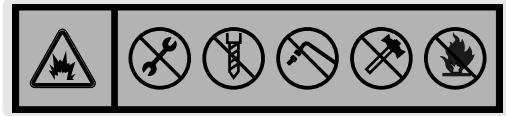
This label is positioned on the accumulator of the solenoid valve.

- ※ The accumulator is filled with high pressure nitrogen gas, and it is extremely dangerous if it is handled in the wrong way. Always observe the following precautions.

▲ Never make any holes in the accumulator or expose it to open flame or fire.

▲ Do not weld anything to the accumulator.

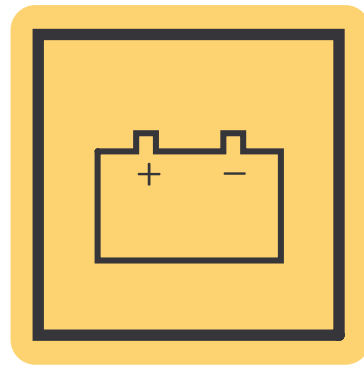
- ※ When carrying out disassembly or maintenance of the accumulator, or when disposing of the accumulator. It is necessary to release the gas from the accumulator. A special air bleed valve is necessary for this operation, so please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributor.



1107A0FW46

#### 15) BATTERY POSITION (item 29)

This label is positioned on the right side of tool box.

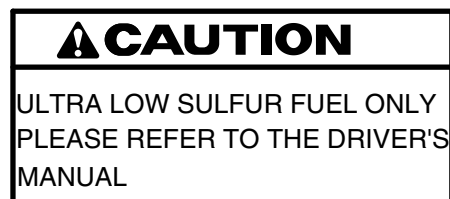


38090FW03

#### 16) LOW SULFUR FUEL (item 30)

This label is positioned on the rear cover.

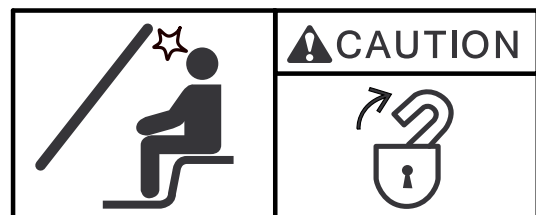
- ▲ EPA Regulation use low sulfur fuel or ultra low sulfur fuel only.



85A1FW09

#### 17) WARNING FRONT WINDOW (item 31)

This label is positioned on the front window of inside the cab.

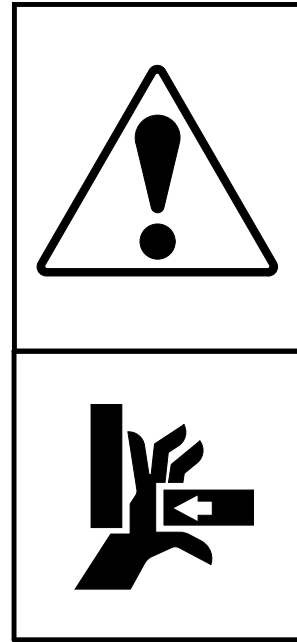


5591FW05

**18) STAY FIX-CABIN** (item 32)

This label is positioned on the front window of the cab.

- ⚠ **Be sure to fix the stay when the window needs to be opened.**
- ⚠ **A door which is not fixed in the fully closed or open position (via stay) can suddenly move causing severe personal injury or death.**

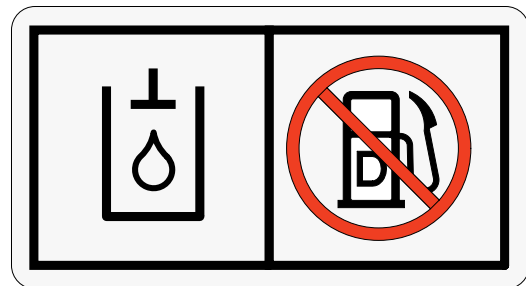


85A0FW22

**19) FUEL SHUT OFF** (item 34)

This label is positioned on the rear cover.

- ※ **Fill only with hydraulic oil.**
- ※ **Do not fill with diesel fuel.**



140WH90FW51

**20) WATER SEPARATOR** (item 35)

This label is positioned on the right window of inside the cab.

- ⚠ **In order to protect high pressure fuel system, please drain water in water separator before starting the engine.**



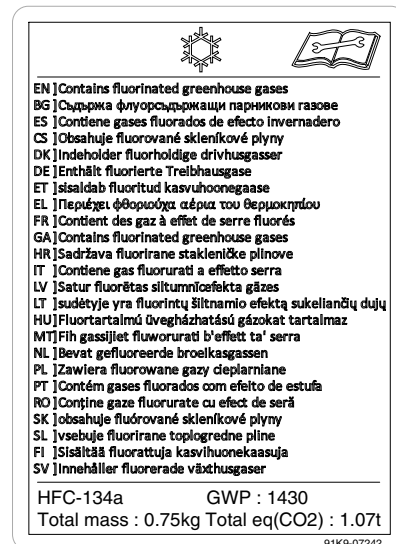
210N90FW50

## 21) REFRIGERANT (item 37)

This label is positioned on the side of radiator.

**⚠ Inhalation of A/C refrigerant gas in any form can result in serious injury or death.**

※ Refer to page 6-41.



91K9-07242

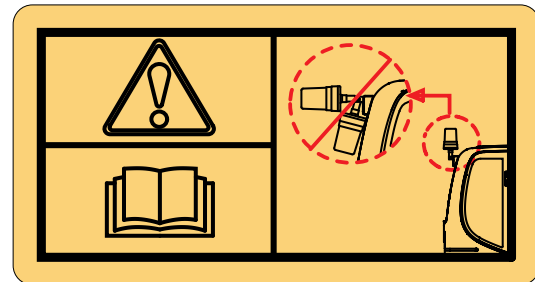
## 22) BEACON LAMP (item 42)

This label is positioned on the center outside of the cab.

※ Make sure the beacon lamp maintains a vertical position.


A horizontal position can result in a decrease in life time of the lamp due to the infiltration of foreign substances such as dust or water.

※ While the machine transfer, the beacon lamp is easy to break. In that case, change the position of the lamp to the horizontal.




140Z90FW49


## MACHINE DATA PLATE

DO NOT DEFACE OR REMOVE THIS PLATE 이 명판을 훼손하거나 오손시키지 마시오	
MACHINE TYPE / MODEL	
PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	
ENGINE POWER	
OPERATING MASS	
 477, Bundangseoseo-ro, Bundang-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do, 13553, Korea 91LM-14112	


For general

DO NOT DEFACE OR REMOVE THIS PLATE 이 명판을 훼손하거나 오손시키지 마시오	
MACHINE TYPE	
MODEL	
MAX. CERTIFIED WEIGHT	
STANDARDS ROPS : ISO 12117-2	
 477, Bundangseoseo-ro, Bundang-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do, 13553, Korea 91Q6-91295	


For ROPS

CE UK DO NOT DEFACE OR REMOVE THIS PLATE 이 명판을 훼손하거나 오손시키지 마시오	
MACHINE TYPE / MODEL	
PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER / VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	
ENGINE POWER	MAX. AXLE LOAD (FRONT / REAR)
OPERATING MASS / GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT	MFG. YEAR YEAR INTO SERVICE
 477, Bundangseoseo-ro, Bundang-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do, 13553, Korea 91LM-14142	

For EU only

DO NOT DEFACE OR REMOVE THIS PLATE 이 명판을 훼손하거나 오손시키지 마시오	
MACHINE TYPE	
MODEL	
STANDARDS FOG : ISO 10262 (LEVEL 2)	
 477, Bundangseoseo-ro, Bundang-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do, 13553, Korea 91N6-01283	

For FOPS/FOG

EAC DO NOT DEFACE OR REMOVE THIS PLATE 이 명판을 훼손하거나 오손시키지 마시오	
MACHINE TYPE / MODEL	
PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	
ENGINE POWER	
OPERATING MASS	
 477, Bundangseoseo-ro, Bundang-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do, 13553, Korea 91LM-14122	

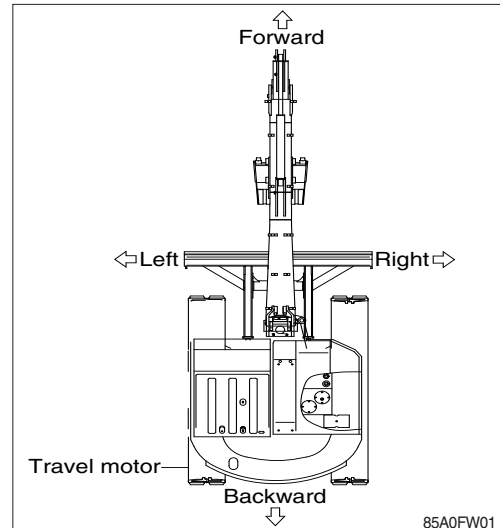
For EAC only

EX0MD01

※ The machine serial number assigned to this particular machine should be used when requesting information or ordering service parts for this machine from your authorized HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer. The machine serial number is also stamped on the frame.

## 1. DIRECTION

The direction of the arrows (as they are indicated) are with the travel motors to the rear and the boom facing the opposite direction. Refer to the right illustration.

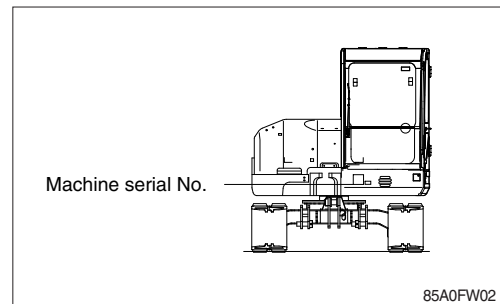


## 2. SERIAL NUMBER

Provides the serial number when ordering parts or seeking assistance.

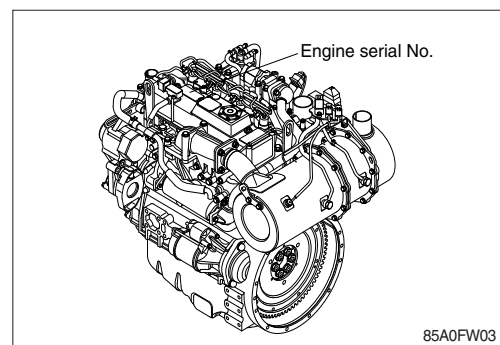
### 1) MACHINE SERIAL NUMBER

The numbers are located below the right window of the operator's cab.



### 2) ENGINE SERIAL NUMBER

The numbers are located on the engine name plate.



## 3. INTENDED USE

This machine is designed to be used mainly for the following work:

- Excavation work
- Loading work
- Leveling work
- Drainage work
- Lifting work
- Demolition work

※ Please refer to section, Efficient working method further details.

## 4. SYMBOLS

- ▲ Provides important safety warnings. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death.
- △ Provides important instructions to prevent damage to the equipment.
- ※ Provides useful information for the operator.



## 1. CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65



### **WARNING**

#### **CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65**

Breathing diesel engine exhaust exposes you to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

- Always start and operate the engine in a well-ventilated area.
- If in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.
- Do not modify or tamper with the exhaust system.
- Do not idle the engine except as necessary.

For more information go to [www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel](http://www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel).

## 2. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

### Safety Message

#### Intended Use

Machines should be operated in accordance with the procedures described in the operator manual.

The products described in the operator manual are designed and manufactured mainly for the following purposes:

- Excavation work
- Loading work
- Leveling work
- Drainage work
- Lifting work
- Demolition work

Do not operate the machine for any purpose other than those stated above or in areas where potential hazards have been identified. Make sure that you comply strictly with all safety instructions at all times. Please contact HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Co., Ltd. or your local dealer for more information.

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment strictly prohibits the use or operation of the machine in any of the following circumstances:

- Operation by an unskilled worker
- Lifting a worker up
- Transporting flammable or dangerous materials
- Driving down or extracting piles with the bucket
- Towing damaged vehicles

## **Safety guidelines**

Most safety accidents related to the operation, maintenance/ inspection, and repair of the machine result from a failure to comply with the safety instructions or to take adequate preventive measures. Safety accidents can be prevented by eliminating potentially hazardous situations. The operator should attend all mandatory training courses on the operation of the machine, and fully understand how to use the tools.

Improper operation, refueling, inspection or repair of this machine may cause serious injury or death.

Do not attempt to operate, refuel, inspect or repair this machine before reading and understanding the product information on such tasks.

This manual describes preventive measures and warnings about the product.

Failure to comply with the warnings about potential risks may result in serious injury or death.

## **General Safety Information**

### **Unauthorized modification**

Any attempt to modify the machine, including the use of unauthorized accessories or spare parts, may have adverse effects on the conditions of the machine and its ability to function as it was designed.

Do not attempt to modify the machine in any way without advanced written consent of the company.

Unauthorized modification will void the manufacturer's warranty.

Never modify the operator's cabin by welding, grinding, drilling holes or adding attachments unless instructed by HD Hyundai Construction Equipment in writing. Changes to the cabin can cause loss of operator protection from roll-over and falling objects, and result in serious injury or death.

The user is responsible for all damages and liabilities resulting from unauthorized modifications.

The attachment, the accessory, or the spare part has been made or distributed by HD Hyundai Construction Equipment and has been installed according to approved methods described in a publication available from HD Hyundai Construction Equipment.

Any modification must be approved by the company in writing.

### **ROPS/FOPS**

The cabin is designed to provide sufficient space to minimize impacts pursuant to ISO 12117-2 of Rollover Protective Structures (ROPS). If any additional devices are installed that exceed the Max. certified weight indicated on ROPS name plate, the ROPS certification may be nullified. The protective structure of the cabin should be replaced immediately if it is permanently deformed or damaged.

Machines operated in areas where there is a risk of objects falling onto the cabin are fitted with a Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) pursuant to ISO 10262.

## Fire and Explosion

### Preventing fires

The following actions should be taken to minimize the risk of fire:

- Do a visual inspection before operating the machine to check for any risk of fire.
- Do not operate the machine if there is a risk of fire.
- Be sure to identify the primary exit and alternative exit of the machine, and fully understand how to use the exits in the event of a fire.
- Do not perform any welding or drilling work on the engine cover.
- Keep the engine compartment free from the build-up of flammable materials such as dead leaves, small branches, paper, and other types of trash.
- Keep the covers of the major parts of the machine closed. Make sure that the covers operate normally in order to be able to use firefighting equipment in the event of a fire.
- Be careful when handling fuel. Fuel is a highly flammable.
- Always stop the engine when refueling the machine.
- Refuel outdoors.
- Remove any build-up of flammable materials from the machine.
- Do not operate the machine near a flame.
- All fuels and most lubricant and coolant mixtures are flammable materials, so special care should be exercised when handling such materials to prevent fire and explosion.
- Keep all fuels and lubricant in adequate containers.
- Never smoke in the area where refueling is taking place or in the space for handling battery electrolytes and other flammable materials.
- Oil leaked to a hot surface or electronic component may cause a fire.
- Do not operate the machine if there is an oil leak. Repair the source of the oil leak, and wipe clean any leaked oil before operating the machine.
- Always clean all electrical lines, connectors, and clamps, and check whether they are securely connected on a regular basis.
- If any electrical wire or connector is loose or damaged, repair it immediately.
- Do not weld, cut or use a cutting torch through any tubes or lines in which flammable flows. Check all tubes and lines for signs of abrasion or deterioration and replace if damaged.
- Dust or particles generated when repairing the non-metallic hood or fender are flammable or explosive. Repair such parts in a well ventilated area well away from flames or sparks, and be sure to wear suitable PPE (Personal Protective Equipment).



## Preventing explosions

The following actions should be taken to minimize the risk of explosion:

- Never use starting aid fluid in a low-temperature environment as it can have an adverse effect on the engine performance and may cause an explosion.
- Do not attempt to charge a frozen battery. Forcibly charging a frozen battery may result in an explosion.
- Use caution when handling the batteries. Never let a tool make contact with the positive battery post and the frame of the machine simultaneously.  
Sparks may be generated, resulting in an explosion.
- Only charge the battery with a charger of equal voltage. Incorrect voltage may cause overheating and explosion.
- Do not use or charge the battery if the level of electrolytes in the battery is low.  
Regularly check the electrolyte level, and refill with distilled water to the maximum level.
- Do not attempt to start the engine using an unsuitable booster cable as it may result in an explosion and serious injury or death.  
Only use the booster cable to start the engine in a well ventilated open space. Starting the engine with a booster cable may generate flammable gas.
- When hydraulic equipment and piping are overheated, flammable gas or airborne particles may explode. Protect and insulate such parts to prevent overheating.



## Corrective Actions Before and After a Fire

In the event of a fire in the machine, the top priority should be the safety of the operator and workers in the work area. In the event of a fire at a level that does not endanger the operator or workers, the following actions should be taken:

- Move the machine well away from any flammable materials (e.g., fuel, engine oil, clothes, and bits of wood) and adjacent buildings.
- If the engine is running, it may cause a persistent fire. Immediately stop the engine.
- In the event of an electric short, disconnect the batteries to eliminate the main ignition source.  
In the event of an electricity leak resulting from damage to the power wiring caused by fire, disconnect the batteries to eliminate the secondary ignition source.

If a fire becomes too large to control, assess the following risks:

- The tank, accumulator, hose and fitting may burst into flames, splashing fuel and scattering particles throughout the surrounding area.

If you have to handle a machine that has been damaged by fire or one that is exposed to excessively high heat after extinguishing a fire, take the following precautions:

- Wear thick protective gloves and protective goggles.
- Never touch any materials left after combustion with your bare hands.
- Avoid contact with melted polymer materials (e.g., plastics).



### Information on fire extinguisher

Fire extinguishers (if equipped) should be kept in a fully operable condition, and be inspected by a qualified person on a regular basis. Workers should complete a training course on the use of fire extinguishers in advance.

Use fire extinguishers in accordance with the following procedures, if required:

- ① Pull the safety pin of the fire extinguisher first.
- ② Extend the nozzle, and stand toward the fire.
- ③ Aim the nozzle at the flames, and firmly press the top and bottom handles.
- ④ Stand in a downwind position, and evenly spray the foam over the flames.

If the weight of the fire extinguisher exceeds 4.5 kg, mount the extinguisher in a location near the bottom of the cabin. Do not mount the fire extinguisher at a level higher than one third of the height of the cabin.

Do not weld or drill ROPS to mount a fire extinguisher. Contact your dealer or distributor for more information about the correct mounting of fire extinguishers.














## Health and Safety

### Personal protective equipment

The wearing of personal protective gear is mandatory for protecting the human body from hazardous chemicals and hazardous environments.

The wearing of personal protective gear is a means of preventing injury, and should not interfere with the performance of jobs. It is designed to protect the human body from hazardous environments and hazardous materials, and should be kept in an easily accessible place.

#### List of personal protection gear

Name	Symbol	Remarks
Safety helmet		Protects the head from falling objects, and reduces risks when falling down.
Dust mask		Air-purifying dust mask should not be worn in workplaces with an oxygen concentration of less than 18%.
Gas mask		Prevents the inhalation of mist, airborne particles, or protects against the spray of hazardous chemicals.
Welding helmet		Blocks airborne dust and slag, and shields the face from bright light during welding.
Protective clothing		Blocks dust, mist and hazardous chemicals, and protects against burns.
Protective gloves		Electric insulation gloves: Should be worn when working in areas with a high risk of electric shock. Chemical protective gloves: Should be worn when working in areas where there is a risk of contact with hazardous chemicals including materials leaked from batteries.
Protective goggles		Protects the eyes from dust, particles and airborne materials in work areas.
Earplugs and earmuffs		Wear earplug and earmuffs separately or in combination depending on the level and duration of noise.
Safety shoes		Protects the feet from falling objects, impacts, and sharp objects.

## Health and safety instructions in hazardous environments

Comply with the following instructions during operation and maintenance of the machine.

### When handling oil

Failure to wear personal protection may result in burns caused by contact with a high-temperature liquid. Make sure you wear protective goggles, protective gloves and protective clothing when handling oils such as hydraulic oils and engine oil.

If the eyes come into contact with oil, wash them with a sufficient quantity of water for 15 minutes or longer. If the skin comes into contact with oil, take off contaminated clothes and shoes, and wash the skin with soap and water for 15 minutes or longer.



### When handling the battery

If battery electrolyte leaks while handling the battery, the sulfuric acid contained in the electrolyte may cause burns. The lead components in battery electrolyte are toxic, so be sure to wear protective gloves and protective clothing.

Always wash your hands after handling the battery.

If a part of your body not protected by personal protective equipment comes into direct contact with battery electrolyte, immediately wash the affected part with flowing water for 20 minutes or more, and then see a doctor without delay.

If you accidentally swallow battery electrolyte, drink water, do not forcibly induce vomiting, and immediately seek medical help.



### When handling refrigerant

Always wear protective goggles, protective gloves and other personal protective equipment when handling refrigerant to prevent direct contact of the skin with the refrigerant.

Wear protective gloves made of materials that are resistant to chemicals (such as neoprene and butyl rubber).

Never smoke when handling refrigerant.

If refrigerant comes into direct contact with the skin, wash the skin with warm water immediately.



### **When handling coolants**

Do not remove the radiator cap after operation of the machine until the engine has cooled and the pressure has dropped to a safe level. Failure to comply may result in serious burns.

Coolant contains toxic and combustible ethylene glycol, and should be handled in a cool, well-ventilated place only when wearing protective goggles, protective gloves, protective clothing, and a gas mask.

Avoid inhaling airborne particles or spray from coolant. If the substances make contact with skin or eyes, immediately wash the skin and eye with flowing water for 20 minutes or longer.



### **When working in a place subject to airborne particles and falling objects,**

Always wear a safety helmet, protective goggles and safety shoes to prevent injury from airborne particles and thrown or falling objects. Earplugs or earmuffs may be necessary when working in a noisy place.











### **When working in places with a high level of noise**

When the operator is exposed to the noise exceeding 90 dB (A) for 8 hours or longer, wear earplugs or earmuffs.



## Personal protection gear for various situations

Situation	Symbol
Oil handling	
Battery handling	
Refrigerant handling	
Coolant handling	
Repair by welding	
Working in areas subject to airborne particles and falling objects	
Working in places with a high level of noise	
Handling machines damaged by fire or exposed to excessively high temperature	

## WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

- Do not wear loose clothing and accessories. Secure long hair. These items can snag on controls or on other parts of equipment.
- Do not wear oily clothes. They are highly flammable.
- Wear a hard hat, safety shoes, safety goggles, mask, leather gloves, earplugs and other protective equipment, as required.
- While working on machine, never use inadequate tools. They could break or slip, or they may not adequately perform intended.



73031GE01

## Noise and Vibration

### Information on vibration

This part describes the vibration data of the machine, and methods of calculating the vibration level.

The vibration level of the machine varies according to any of the following conditions:

- Driving habits of the operator
- Quality of seat and suspension
- Type of machine, attachments, and conditions of machine
- Conditions of work site, working environment, ground surface conditions, and weather

Vibration also varies according to the duration of operation.

Physical Agents Directive 2002/44/EC defines the exposure action value as  $0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$ , and the exposure limit value as  $1.15 \text{ m/s}^2$ . If the predicted value is near the exposure action value or exposure limit value, the predicted value should be assumed to exceed the two latter values, and necessary action should be taken.

Vibration levels are as followings.

- Whole body :  $\leq 0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$  or  $\leq 1.15 \text{ m/s}^2$  (Uncertainty K 0.07  $\text{m/s}^2$ )

**※ Although the level of whole body vibration exceeds exposure action value, is less than the exposure limit value.**

- Hand/arm :  $\leq 2.5 \text{ m/s}^2$  (Uncertainty K 0.21  $\text{m/s}^2$ )

In regards to the actions taken according to the vibrations, refer to the following table:

Daily vibration exposure (A(8))	Vibration exposure range	Actions to be taken
$A(8) \leq 0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$	Exposure action value or lower	When approaching the exposure activity value, reasonable measures should be taken to minimize exposure to vibration. The relevant information and opportunities for training on vibration reduction should be provided to the operator.
$0.5 \text{ m/s}^2 < A(8) \leq 1.15 \text{ m/s}^2$	Exceeding the exposure action value, but not exceeding the exposure limit value	It is required to execute certain measures for reducing exposure to and risks of vibration to the minimum. The health of an operator who has been exposed to excessive vibration should be examined.
$1.15 \text{ m/s}^2 < A(8)$	Exceeding the exposure limit value:	Immediate action is required to reduce the vibration exposure level to below the exposure limit value.

**※ For further information, please contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer.**

The vibration level can be predicted based on the information in the following table which is used to calculate the daily level of vibration exposure.

Predict the vibration level in the three vibration directions of axes X, Y, and Z. The mean vibration level should be used under normal operation conditions. Scenario factors from mean vibration level based on operation by skilled operator and on smooth terrain are excluded. Scenario factors are included to obtain the mean vibration level based on aggressive operation and severe terrain to assess the expected vibration level.

※ **All vibration values are indicated in  $\text{m/s}^2$ .**

ISO Reference table - Vibration level equivalent to whole body vibration emission of the excavator (Unit :  $\text{m/s}^2$ )

Machine family	Machine kind	Typical operating condition	Vibration Levels			Scenario Factors		
			X axis	Y axis	Z axis	X axis	Y axis	Z axis
Excavator	Compact crawler excavator	Excavating	0.33	0.21	0.19	0.19	0.12	0.10
		Hydraulic breaker app.	0.49	0.28	0.36	0.20	0.13	0.17
		Transfer movement	0.45	0.39	0.62	0.17	0.18	0.28
	Crawler excavator	Excavating	0.44	0.27	0.30	0.24	0.16	0.17
		Hydraulic breaker app.	0.53	0.31	0.55	0.30	0.18	0.28
		Mining application	0.65	0.42	0.61	0.21	0.15	0.32
		Transfer movement	0.48	0.32	0.79	0.19	0.20	0.23
	Wheeled excavator	Excavating	0.52	0.35	0.29	0.26	0.22	0.13
		Transfer movement	0.41	0.53	0.61	0.12	0.20	0.19

### Instructions on mitigating vibration

Machines should be correctly adjusted and maintained to ensure smooth operation. The terrain conditions should be observed. The following instructions will help reduce the whole body vibration level:

- ① Use the correct size attachments for your machine.
- ② Maintain the machines pursuant to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- ③ Maintain and provide good terrain conditions.
  - Remove any large rocks or obstacles.
  - Fill gutters or holes.
  - Adjust speed and driving path as needed for the conditions.
- ④ Use a driver's seat that satisfies ISO 7096.
  - Adjust the driver's seat and suspension for the weight and the size of the operator.
  - Inspect the suspension and adjusting devices of the driver's seat.
- ⑤ Perform the following maneuvers without using excessive force :
  - Steering
  - Braking
  - Accelerating
  - Gear shifting
- ⑥ Move the attachments smoothly.
- ⑦ Keep the level of vibration minimal when working for a long time or driving for a long distance.
  - Use a machine mounted with suspension system.
  - Transport the machine when moving between worksites; do not drive the machine to get to another worksite.
- ⑨ Take the following actions for optimal operator comfort and convenience:
  - Adjust the driver's seat adjustment device to allow a convenient posture.
  - Adjust the angles of the mirrors to minimize awkward, compromised posture
  - Avoid working for an excessively long time, and take regular breaks.
  - Do not jump on or off the cabin.
  - Minimize repeated handling of loads and lifting of loads.
  - The vibration information and calculation procedures are based on <ISO/TR 25398> has been defined according to the emission of vibrations measured under the actual working conditions of the machines.

### Information on noise

Noise level (Directive 2000/14/EC) is as followings.

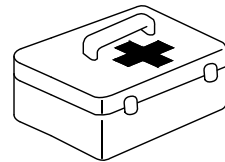
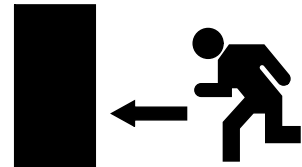
- LwA(Guaranteed) : 98 dB (Uncertainty K 1.0 dB(A))
- LpA(Measured) : 77 dB (Uncertainty K 1.0 dB(A))

### Emergency situations

In the event of an emergency situation, use the emergency hammer installed inside the cabin to break the windshield of the cabin, and carefully escape from the cabin. The emergency hammer should always be kept inside the cabin for emergencies, and should not be removed or used for other purposes. If the emergency hammer is lost, replace it immediately.

Keep a first-aid kit inside the cabin or in another place at the worksite for safety accidents.

Keep contact information (e.g., phone number) to request help with an emergency situation or injury.





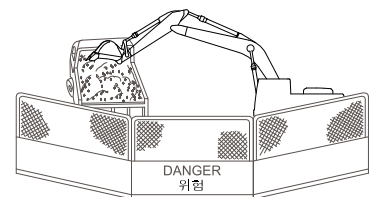
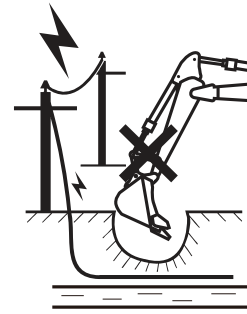
## Safety Information on the Machines and Operation

### Before Operating the Machine

Carefully examine the following conditions and take any necessary actions to prevent risk factors before operating the machine:

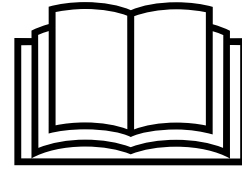
### Checking the worksite

- Always be aware of weather conditions at your worksite. Fog or heavy rain may decrease visibility or render the machine inoperable. In the event of lightning, immediately put the bucket to the ground and evacuate to a safe place.
- Check the worksite for obstacles, and avoid collisions with such obstacles during operation. Check the surroundings of the machine for any obstacles that may hinder operation.
- Check the worksite for buried waterlines, telecommunication cables, power cables and oil pipelines in advance, and avoid damaging them.
- If the terrain of the worksite is too rough for normal operation of the machine, flatten the terrain before operating the machine. Make sure that the ground of the worksite is not soft as it may cause hazards during operation.
- If the worksite is a marshy place (e.g., shallow river, large or small lake, swamp, etc), check the conditions and the depth of marshy areas and the flow rate before driving or operating the machine. Do not operate the machine underwater.
- When operating the machine in water or when crossing shallow, check the bed soil condition and depth and flow speed of water, then proceed taking care that water is not above upper rollers.
- Do not operate the machine on cliffs or at the end of a road on soft ground as the machine may overturn. If operation of the machine on such terrain is unavoidable, keep the track perpendicular to the end, place the driving motor at the rear to facilitate escape from the machine in the event of an emergency situation.
- When operating the machine in areas with pedestrian or vehicle traffic, or in a zone in the vicinity of such an area, appoint workers exclusively responsible for controlling the traffic, or install fences or blocking wall to separate the worksite from the traffic area. Prevent unauthorized workers or machines from accessing the worksite.



### Instructions before operating the machine

- The machine shall be operated by authorized and skilled operators only.
- The operator should wear clothes and personal protection gear that are appropriate for the work environment.
- Do not operate the machine while under the influence of alcohol or drugs or while experiencing extreme fatigue or other conditions that may affect your awareness of your surroundings or your reaction time.
- The operator should read and fully understand the operator's manual before operating the machine.
- The operator should fully understand the details and procedures of the work to be performed.
- Do not perform work when a hazard is anticipated or encountered. Remove the hazard before beginning work. Failure to comply may result in serious injury or death.



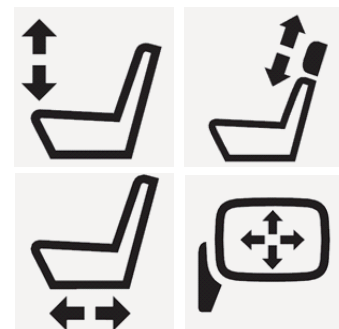
### Inspect the machine before operating the machine

- Check the machine for abnormal noise, vibration or heat, and for the leakage of engine oil, hydraulic oil, fuel or refrigerant.
- Remove any foreign substances from the engine and the battery. The buildup of such substances may cause a fire.
- Do not operate a machine until any necessary repairs are completed.
- Do not operate the machine until all regular inspection and service recommended in the operator's manual have been executed.

- Adjust the operator's seat to suit the physical condition of the operator. Check the seatbelt for damage, and replace it if damaged. Do not store unnecessary objects or tools in the cabin.
- Keep clean all parts related to visibility, such as the windshield and rearview mirror. Adjust the rearview mirror to ensure that the operator's field of vision is clear.

Check the acoustic alarms (e.g., the horn and warning

- signal when driving backward or moving) for normal operation.



## During Operation of the Machine

### Getting on and off

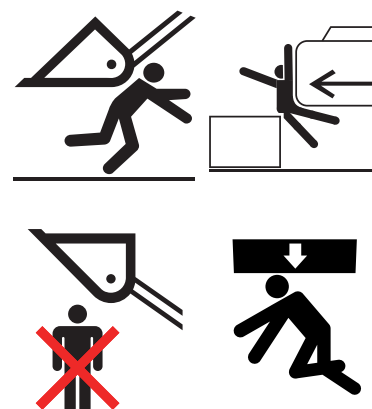
- Do not jump on or off the machine.
- Do not try to get on or off the machine while it is moving.
- Get on or off the machine using the handrail and step (or stepladder, if any). Always keep the handrail and step clean and free from mud or oil.
- Wear anti-slip shoes.
- Comply with the principle of three-point contact\* by contacting the machine with either both hands and one foot or vice versa when getting on or off the machine.
- Do not sit on any part of the machine not intended for sitting.

※ **Three-point contact means making contact with the machine with both hands and one foot, or with one hand and both feet.**



### During operation

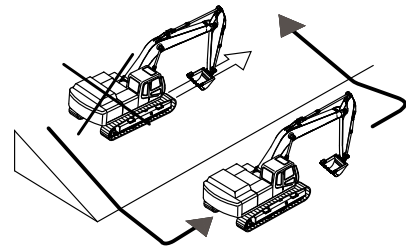
- The operator should start the engine only after sitting on the operator's seat. Make sure that all levers are shifted to the neutral position before starting the engine.
- Pay close to any obstacles when operating the machine, particularly when turning or moving backward, to prevent collision. Failure to comply may result in serious injury or death.
- Do not exceed the recommended size and weight of an object when lifting a load. Do not lift a heavy object with slings by suspending the slings on the tooth of the bucket.
- Do not allow anyone to stand under the bucket.



## Operation on a slope

When operating the machine on a slope, failure to comply with these instructions could result in the machine tipping over, which may lead to serious injury or death.

- Do not work on slopes of 10° or more.
- Do not exceed the maximum climbing angle of 30°.
- If operation of the machine on a slope is unavoidable, perform the work after flattening the ground.
- When operating the machine laterally on a slope, there is a high risk of machine overturning or slipping. Do not operate the machine in such conditions.
- Do not operate the machine on a slope covered with wet grass or a thick layer of dead leaves, as the machine may slip.
- Do not park or stop the machine on a slope.  
If parking or stopping the machine on a slope is unavoidable, bring the bucket down to the ground, and support the wheels with wheel chocks.



- When traveling up a slope, operate the machine at a slow speed with the attachment extended forward to keep the machine balanced, and with the bucket raised at least 20 ~30 cm (1 ft) from the ground.
- When traveling down a slope, reduce the engine speed with the travel lever kept in the vicinity of the neutral position. Keep the bucket 20~30 cm (1 ft) above the ground, and use the bucket as a brake in an emergency situation.
- If the engine suddenly stalls, immediately bring the bucket to the ground.
- If the fuel gauge reaches the red zone while operating the machine, immediately refill with fuel. (If the machine operates on a slope under these conditions, air may be introduced into the engine, causing it to stall suddenly.)



### Operations to be avoided or prohibited

- Pay attention when operating the machine in an enclosed space as this may result in the risk of a buildup of hazardous gases.

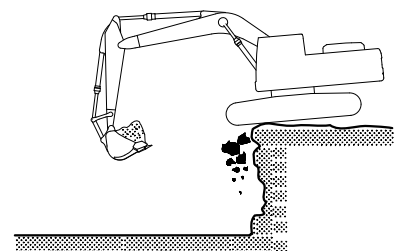


- If the machine is operated in the vicinity of a high-voltage line, there is a risk of death or serious injury.
- Be aware of the height and working radius of the machine, and maintain the minimum safety distance.

Voltage	Minimum safety distance
6.6 kV	3 m (10 ft)
33.0 kV	4 m (13 ft)
66.0 kV	5 m (16 ft)
154.0 kV	8 m (26 ft)
275.0 kV	10 m (33 ft)



- In the event of contact with a high-voltage line, keep sitting on the operator's seat until the electric current has been shut down.
- Warn any workers on the ground in the vicinity of the machine not to make contact with the machine.
- If leaving the machine is unavoidable, jump down to a place free from any contact with the machine.
- Avoid operating the machine on soft ground, a slope or cliff as there is a risk that it may overturn. Pay special attention when it is raining as the rainfall may soften the ground.
- When operating or driving the machine in water, check the floor conditions, depth of water and flow rate, and make sure that the top roller and axle housing are not immersed in water.
- Do not operate the machine under adverse weather conditions caused by overcast skies, snow and rainfall.
- Do not turn or travel with the machine when the bucket is stuck in the ground.



## Cautions when operating in specific areas

### Operating in extremely cold environments

- Do not attempt to start, stop or turn the machine suddenly as this may cause it to slip. There is potential for the machine to slip.
- Snow-covered or frozen ground may be slippery and dangerous.
- Idle operation of the machine may be required to elevate the engine temperature during startup.
- An impact resulting from a sudden movement of the boom or the attachments at an extremely low temperature may cause serious damage to the machine.
- The working cycle or loading weight might be reduced to lower than those under normal conditions.
- Follow these instructions when operation in cold environments:
  - Warm up the engine for 3~4 seconds when starting up the engine.
  - Always fully charge the battery. A discharged battery will freeze earlier than a fully charged battery.
  - Use engine oil and fuel that are appropriate for the temperature.
  - Keep the fuel tank full.
  - Remove any moisture from the fuel tank, and change the fuel filter regularly.
  - If the fuel filter is frozen, the flow of fuel may be blocked.
  - Pour the proper volume of antifreeze into the coolant.
  - Wait until the various parts of the machine reach the operating temperature after starting the engine.
  - Make sure that every controller and function of the machine operates normally.
  - Remove any dirt, snow and ice from the machine after completing the operation.



### Operating in extremely hot environments

- Continuous operation of the machine for a long period of time may cause the machine to overheat. Pay special attention to prevent overheating of parts such as the engine and the hydraulic system. Stop the machine and take a break if necessary.

Check the following conditions frequently:

- Check the level of the coolant in the radiator.
- Check the radiator grill for clogging by any debris, and remove them, if any.
- Check the level of the battery electrolyte.
- If the battery will not be used for a long period of time, store it in a cool place.
- Check the hydraulic system for oil leakage.
- Check the lubrication oil on the respective parts, and lubricate as needed.
- If the paint coating of any parts has been effaced or damaged, coat the parts with paints or treat them with an anti-rust additive.
- Do not park the machine under direct light for a long period of time.
- When parking or storing the machine outdoors, use the proper cover to protect the machine from sunlight and dust.

### **Operating in dusty or sandy environments**

- Check the radiator grill for clogging by any debris, and remove any debris.
- Check the fuel system, and protect it from dust or sand when refueling.
- Inspect the air cleaner regularly, and replace it if necessary.
- If the gauge lamp on the dashboard lights up and the buzzer sounds at the same time, clean or replace the air cleaner.
- Frequently check consumables such as hydraulic oil and lubrication oil, and change them if necessary. Protect against the introduction of dust or sand when changing the consumables.
- Check the air-conditioner and the heater filters regularly, and clean or replace them if necessary.
- When parking or storing the machine outdoors, use the proper cover to protect the machine from dust and sand.

### **Operating in rainy or humid environments**

- Do not operate the machine in areas where there is heavy rainfall or thick fog.
- If operating the machine in such areas is unavoidable, perform operation after ensuring sufficient field of vision.
  - \_ Use lighting devices such as the head lamp and working light.
  - \_ Warn any workers within the radius of operation of the machine.
- Pay attention when operating the machine on smooth ground as there is a risk of it overturning.
- If the paint coating on any parts has been effaced or damaged, coat the parts with paint or treat them with an anti-rust additive.

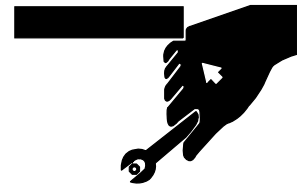
### **Operating the machine in coastal areas**

- Special care should be taken when operating the machine in coastal areas as exposed parts may be corroded easily.
- If the paint coating on any parts has been effaced or damaged, coat the parts with paint or treat them with an anti-rust additive.
- Perform inspection and maintenance of the parts promptly.

## Cautions during maintenance

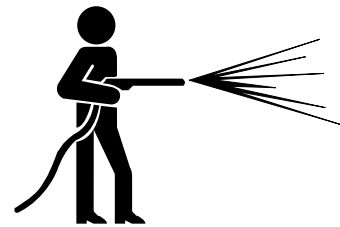
### Tools

- Use the correct tools for each type of work.
- Using improper tools may damage the machine and its parts.
- Using deteriorated or damaged tools may result in bodily injury.



### Inspection and servicing

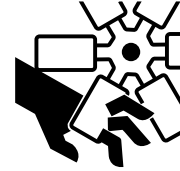
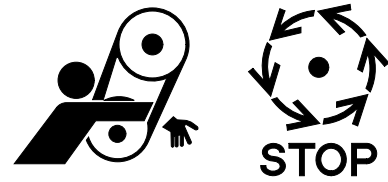
- Prevent access to the machine by all unauthorized workers.
- Prior to inspection, park the machine in a flat area and attach a 'Under Inspection' sign.
- Clean the machine before inspection or maintenance.
  - When performing inspection or maintenance on a dirty machine, it may be difficult to diagnosis or detect the cause of a problem with the machine.
  - Dust or dirt accumulated on the machine may cause a worker to slip or fall.
  - Wear protective goggles and protective clothes when cleaning the machine using a compressed water.
  - Do not spray water directly on sensors or electric connectors (sensors or electrical connection units, etc.). If water gets into the electrical system, it can cause operational problems.
- Use proper lighting devices when operating the machine in a dark area.
- Use lighting devices that are explosion-proof when handling flammable materials such as fuel and hydraulic oil.
- Never attempt to use a direct flame such as a cigarette lighter in lieu of the lighting device.
- Check the level of the cooling water after stopping and sufficiently cooling down the engine.
- Sufficiently relieve the inside pressure before opening the cooling water cap.
- The cooling system contains basic components. Use caution to prevent the skin or eyes from coming into contact with the basic materials.
- Exercise special care to protect the body from contact with hot fluid or parts.
- Replace the filters only after shutting off and sufficiently cooling down the engine.
- Slowly remove the operating oil filter plug to relieve the inside pressure.
- Relieve the pressure from the hydraulic system before disconnecting any lines and fittings.





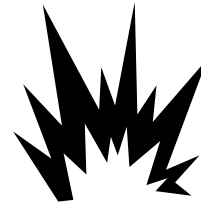
### Collision or cutting

- Never perform a maintenance while the engine is running.
- Never open or remove the engine hood while the machine is in operation.
- If an inspection is required while the engine is running, two or more workers must perform the inspection.
- Keep areas in the vicinity of rotating or moving parts clean.
- Keep articles in the vicinity of the fan clean.
  - Wear safety gloves when handling the wire cables.
  - Wear protective goggles and protective clothes



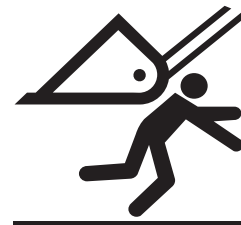
### Preventing fire and explosion

- Use caution when handling fuels, lubrication oils, and coolant mixtures to prevent fire and explosion. Failure to comply may result in serious injury or death.
- Oil that leaks on to a hot surface or electronic components may cause a fire.
- Keep all fuels and lubrication oils in adequate containers.
- Do not smoke while refueling or while adding any fluids to the machine. Do not smoke near the fuel tank at anytime.
- Do not smoke in a space where battery electrolyte and other flammable materials are handled.
- Always keep all electrical lines, connectors, and clamps clean, and check whether they are securely connected on a regular basis.
- If any electrical wire or connector is loose or damaged, repair it immediately.
- Do not weld or cut with gas cutter pipes or tubes that contains flammable fluids.



### Cautions on decoupling the attachments

- Do not allow unauthorized workers to access the machine.
- Place the machine in a safe position.
- Install safety fences around the machine.



### Repair by welding

- Only weld in an area where adequate facilities for welding are available.
- Welding work may be subject to risks of gas leak, flame and electric shock.  
Welding should be performed only by a qualified welder.
- Take the following precautions when welding to avoid serious injury or death:
  - Separate and remove the battery to prevent battery explosion.
  - Perform direct heating in a place free from the risk of explosion.
  - Cover parts such as rubber hoses subject to damage by welding with flame-resistant materials.
  - Wear a welding helmet, protective clothes, protective gloves, and safety shoes.
  - Perform welding work in a well-ventilated place.
  - Remove all inflammable materials from areas in the vicinity of welding work.
  - Provide fire extinguishers.



### Precautions to take when working on the machine

- There is a risk of falling when working on the machine.
- Keep the area around the workers' feet clean and tidy.
- Do not spill oil or grease.
- Do not leave tools lying on the floor.
- Be careful on the floor when moving.
- Never jump from the machine.
- When getting off the machine, use the step or handrail and get off the machine while keeping to the principle of three-point contact.
- Wear protective clothes if necessary.
- Do not perform maintenance work in an area where no anti-slipping pads have been installed.
- Replace anti-slipping pads and step treads with new ones if they have deteriorated or no longer function.



### **Cautions when working with the high-pressure line or hose**

- Make sure that the internal pressure is released before replacing or checking the high-pressure line or hose.
- If the internal pressure is not released, serious injury may result.
- Take the following precautions to avoid serious injury or death:
  - Always check to make sure a working fire extinguisher is nearby
  - Leaked oil may penetrate the skin or cause serious injury.
  - Never check for oil leaks with your bare hands.
  - Check an oil leak using a wooden plate or cardboard.
  - Never bend or hit the high-pressure line hard.
  - Do not install a bent or damaged line or hose.
  - Make sure that all of the clamps and protective devices are properly installed.
- Check the pipes and hoses regularly and replace any damaged parts if necessary.



### **Cautions on inspecting the counterweight**

- Failure to comply with these instructions may lead to serious injury or death.
- Never stand beneath the counterweight when installing or removing it.
- Make sure the condition of the lifting device is rated for the weight being lifted.
- Make sure lifting device is in good working order and free of damage or defects.



## Battery

- The battery contains flammable materials.
- Never smoke in the vicinity of the battery.
- The battery electrolyte is strong acid. Pay attention to prevent the skin and eyes from coming into contact with the electrolyte.
- If the battery electrolyte accidentally comes into contact with the body or clothes, immediately wash off the electrolyte with water.
- If the battery electrolyte is frozen, do not use other devices to start the engine up.
- Always wear protective goggles and protective gloves when working on the battery.
- Always keep the switch in the 'OFF' position when working on the battery.
- Securely fasten the battery cap.
- Always disconnect the battery from the machine before charging the battery.
- Disconnect the cathode (-) first when removing the battery.
- Connect the anode (+) first when connecting the battery.
- Follow the safety procedures when jump starting or charging the battery. Improper connection of the cable may result in an explosion and serious injury.
- Use a voltmeter when inspecting the charging system.
- Regularly inspect the battery cable, and replace it if damaged.
- A battery cable with exposed wires may cause a short if it comes into contact with the grounding surface.
- A short circuit of the battery cable may cause heat from the battery current and result in a fire.
- If the wires of the ground cable are exposed between the battery and the master switch, the exposed wires make contact with the grounding surface and the current may bypass to the master switch. This may destabilize the machine operation.

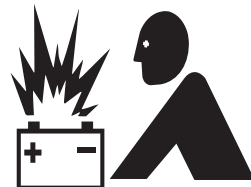
Repair or replace the part before operating the machine.

### Battery disconnection switch

- Do not turn off the battery disconnect switch while engine is running. There is a risk of damaging electrical system.
- The battery disconnect switch can be found under the left-hand door of the machine.
- Make sure to turn off the battery disconnect switch when welding or servicing electrical systems, and before clocking out.

### Switchboard

- The relay and fuse can be found on the switchboard at the rear of the cab.
- Do not use the fuse that has a higher amperage than indicated on the decal. There is a risk of damaging electric circuits or catching fire.



## Parking and Storage

### Cautions on parking

- Park the machine on flat ground.
- If parking the machine on a slope is unavoidable, use wheel chocks to prevent the machine from moving.
- Bring the bucket down and make firm contact with ground.
- Make sure that all of the switches are turned to the 'OFF' position.
- Do not turn off battery disconnect until led lamp at the disconnect goes off.
- Make sure that all of the controllers are turned to the neutral position.
- Stop the engine, and withdraw the ignition key.
- Close and lock the windshield, door and all covers.
- Install fences around the machine when parking it on a public road, and put up a warning sign.

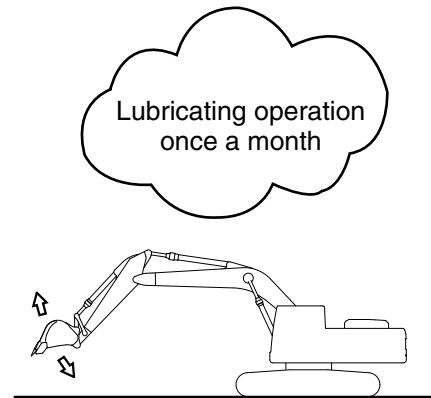
### Cautions on storage for a long period of time

- Park the machine in accordance to any state and local laws.
- When storing the machine for a month or longer, follow these instructions to prevent deterioration of the machine performance :
  - Thoroughly clean the machine before storing.
  - Inject sufficient lubrication oil and grease into the injection ports.
  - If any of the machines fluids are low top them off. If any fluids are close to or in need of changing, do so before storing.
  - Oils and coolant may deteriorate during storage based on the length of storage. Please take this into consideration before using the machine.
  - The density of the oil may drop during storage.
  - Apply an anti-rust additive to the exposed area of the piston rod of the cylinder in areas where it is likely to rust quickly.
  - Keep the master switch mounted in the power box (or the toolbox on the left of the rear frame of the machine) turned 'OFF'.
  - Keep the machine in a dry indoor environment.  
If storing the machine outdoors is unavoidable, store it on a wooden pallet.
  - Keep all cylinders collapse so that the cylinder rods are not exposed.
  - Bring the attachments right down to the ground, and keep the tracks immobile by placing wheel chocks.



### Regular lubrication (during storage)

- Breaking the lubrication film on parts may cause abnormal abrasion during the next operation.
- Check the level of the engine oil and coolant when starting the engine up, and top them up if necessary.
- Thoroughly wipe off any oil from cylinder rod before operating machine as it will attract dust and debris.
- Start up the engine once a month, perform all functions. Operate machine utilizing all functions for a minimum of 15 minutes. Apply lubrication oil to every part.
- Fully charge and store the battery.
- If storing the excavator for longer than 6 months, disconnect the battery negative (-) terminal.



## **Visibility**

Before you start the machine, perform a walk-around inspection in order to ensure that there are no hazards around the machine.

While the machine is in operation, constantly survey the area around the machine in order to identify potential hazards as hazards become visible around the machine.

Your machine may be equipped with visual aids. Some examples of visual aids are Closed Circuit Television(CCTV), AAVM(Advanced Around View Monitoring) and mirrors. Before operating the machine, ensure that the visual aids are in proper working condition and that the visual aids are clean.

If may not be possible to provide direct visibility on large machines to all areas around the machine, appropriate job site organization is required in order to minimize hazards that are caused by restricted visibility. Job site organization is a collection of policies and procedures that coordinates machines and people that work together in the same area.

Examples of job site organization include the following:

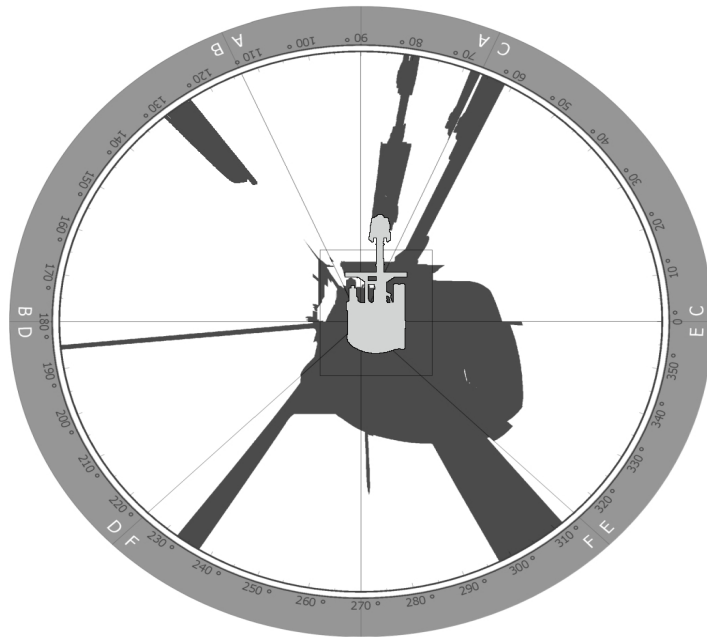
- Safety instructions
- Controlled patterns of machine movement and vehicle movement
- Workers that direct traffic to move when it is safe
- Restricted areas
- Operator training
- Warning symbols or warning signs on machines or on vehicles
- A system of communication
- Communication between workers and operators prior to approaching the machine

Modifications of the machine configuration by the user could result in a restriction of the machine visibility. In this case, a new risk assessment must be performed according to ISO 5006:2017.

## **Restricted Visibility**

The size and the configuration of this machine may result in areas that cannot be seen when the operator is seated. The following illustration of visual map provides an approximate visual indication of areas of significant restricted visibility. This illustration indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside a radius of 12.00m (40 ft) from the operator on a machine only with the use of right side mirror and left side mirror installed. (without the use of optional visual aids.) This illustration provide areas of restricted visibility for distances outside a radius of 12.00m (40 ft).

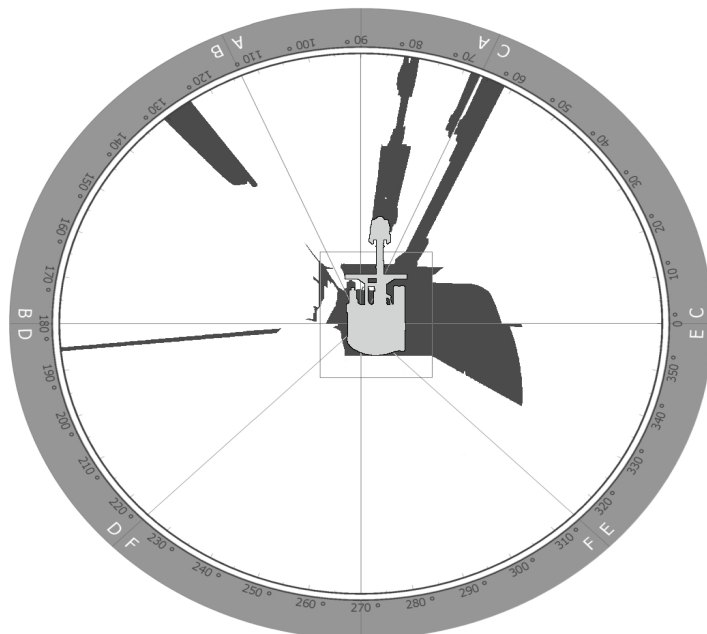
This machine may be equipped with optional visual aids (CCTV or AAVM) that may provide visibility to some of the restricted visibility areas. For areas that are not covered by the optional visual aids, the job site organization must be utilized to minimize hazards associated with this restricted visibility.



< Top view of the machine at ground level visibility without use of optional visual aids >

- ※ The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.  
(Radius = 12 m / 34 ft)

There is restricted visibility to the area directly behind the machine with no optional visual aids. Failure to make sure the area is clear could result in serious injury or death. Make sure that the area is clear before you start the reverse movement.



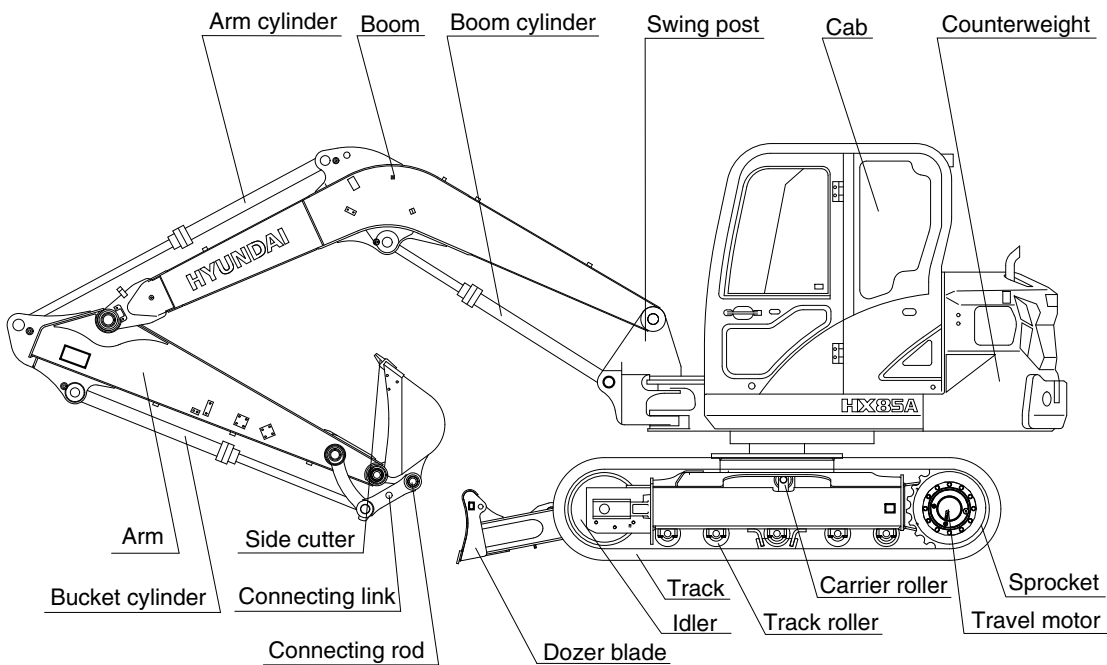
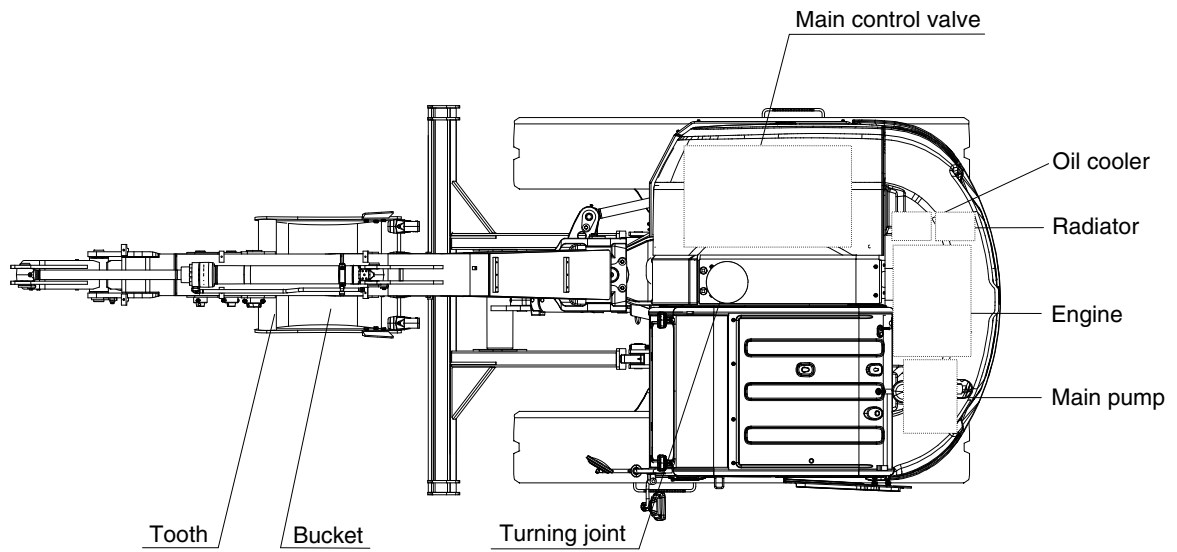
< Top view of the machine at ground level visibility with use of optional visual aids >

- ※ The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.  
(Radius = 12 m / 34 ft)



# SPECIFICATIONS

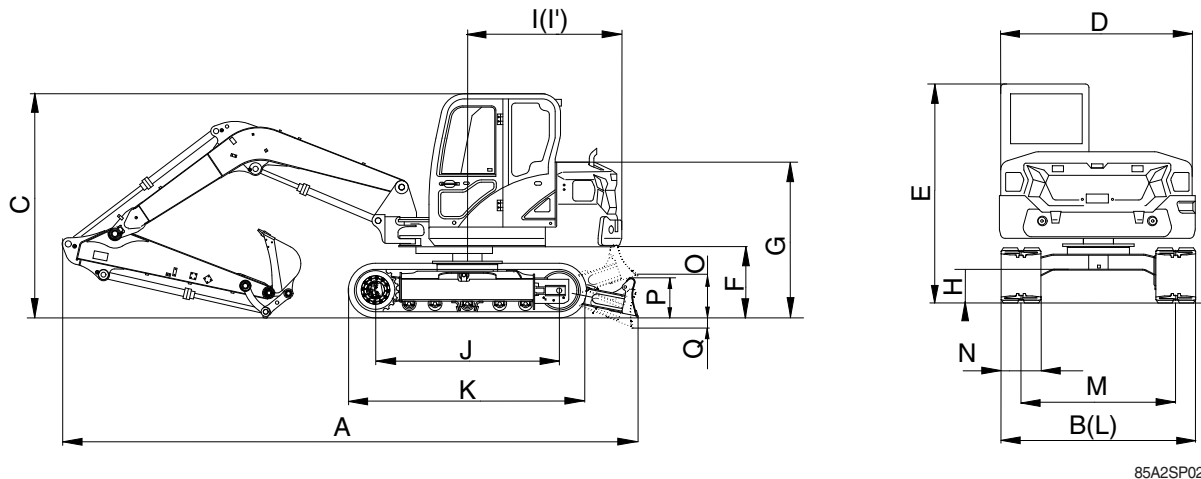
## 1. MAJOR COMPONENT



856A2SP01

## 2. SPECIFICATIONS

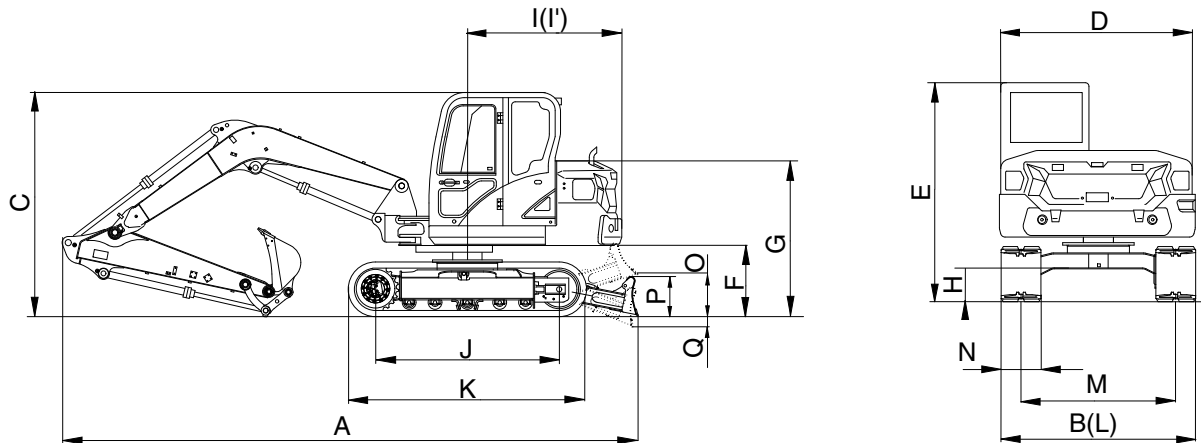
### 1) 3.55 m (11' 8") MONO BOOM, 1.75 m (5' 9") ARM WITH BOOM SWING SYSTEM



85A2SP02

Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	8530 (18810)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m³ (yd³)	0.25 (0.33)
Overall length	A	mm (ft-in)	6585 ( 21' 7")
Overall width, with 450 mm shoe	B		2300 ( 7' 7")
Overall height	C		2560 ( 8' 5")
Superstructure width	D		2300 ( 7' 7")
Overall height of cab	E		2560 ( 8' 5")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		745 ( 2' 5")
Engine cover height	G		1750 ( 5' 9")
Minimum ground clearance	H		260 ( 1' 0")
Rear-end distance	I		1600 ( 5' 3")
Rear-end swing radius	I'		1645 ( 5' 5")
Distance between tumblers (Steel)	J		2280 ( 7' 6")
Distance between tumblers (Rubber)			2270 ( 7' 5")
Undercarriage length (Steel)	K		2906 ( 9' 6")
Undercarriage length (Rubber)			2900 ( 9' 6")
Undercarriage width	L		2300 ( 7' 7")
Track gauge	M		1850 ( 6' 1")
Track shoe width, standard	N		450 ( 1' 6")
Height of blade	O		460 ( 1' 6")
Ground clearance of blade up	P		430 ( 1' 4")
Depth of blade down	Q		410 ( 1' 3")
Travel speed (Low/high)		km/hr (mph)	2.7/5.2 (1.7/3.2)
Swing speed		rpm	9.5
Gradeability		Degree (%)	30 (58)
Ground pressure (450 mm shoe)		kgf/cm² (psi)	0.38 (5.42)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	7580 (16700)

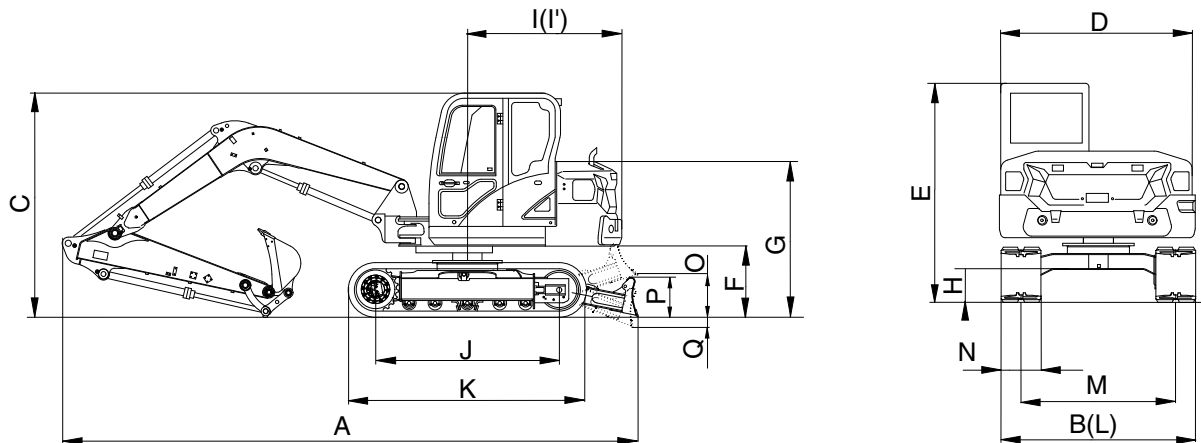
## 2) 3.55 m (11' 8") MONO BOOM, 2.1 m (6' 11") ARM WITH BOOM SWING SYSTEM



85A2SP02

Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	8610 (18980)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m³ (yd³)	0.25 (0.33)
Overall length	A	mm (ft-in)	6655 ( 21' 10")
Overall width, with 450 mm shoe	B		2300 ( 7' 7")
Overall height	C		2560 ( 8' 5")
Superstructure width	D		2300 ( 7' 7")
Overall height of cab	E		2560 ( 8' 5")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		745 ( 2' 5")
Engine cover height	G		1750 ( 5' 9")
Minimum ground clearance	H		360 ( 1' 2")
Rear-end distance	I		1600 ( 5' 3")
Rear-end swing radius	I'		1645 ( 5' 5")
Distance between tumblers (Steel)	J		2280 ( 7' 6")
Distance between tumblers (Rubber)			2270 ( 7' 5")
Undercarriage length (Steel)	K		2906 ( 9' 6")
Undercarriage length (Rubber)			2900 ( 9' 6")
Undercarriage width	L		2300 ( 7' 7")
Track gauge	M		1850 ( 6' 1")
Track shoe width, standard	N		450 ( 1' 6")
Height of blade	O		460 ( 1' 6")
Ground clearance of blade up	P		400 ( 1' 4")
Depth of blade down	Q		280 ( 0' 11")
Travel speed (Low/high)		km/hr (mph)	2.7/5.2 (1.7/3.2)
Swing speed		rpm	9.5
Gradeability		Degree (%)	30 (58)
Ground pressure (450 mm shoe)		kgf/cm² (psi)	0.38 (5.47)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	7580 (16700)

### 3) 3.92 m (12' 1") 2PCS BOOM, 1.75 m (5' 9") ARM WITH BOOM SWING SYSTEM

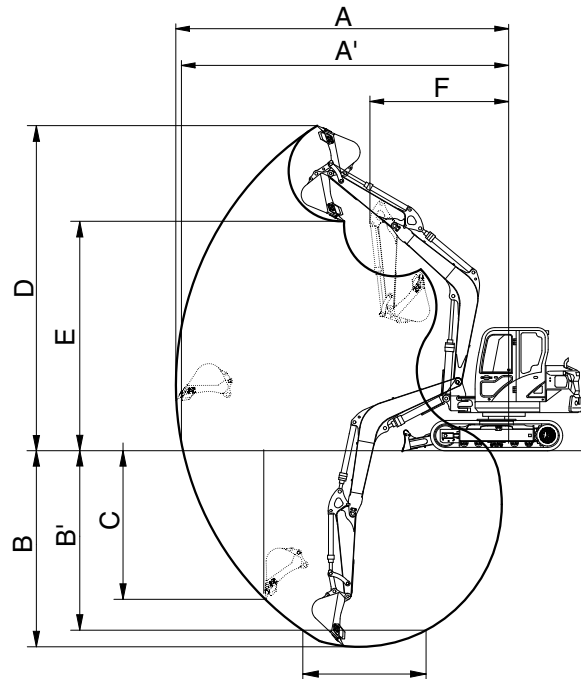


85A2SP02

Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	9000 (19840)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m³ (yd³)	0.25 (0.33)
Overall length	A	mm (ft-in)	6790 ( 22' 3")
Overall width, with 450 mm shoe	B		2300 ( 7' 7")
Overall height	C		2560 ( 8' 5")
Superstructure width	D		2300 ( 7' 7")
Overall height of cab	E		2560 ( 8' 5")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		745 ( 2' 5")
Engine cover height	G		1750 ( 5' 9")
Minimum ground clearance	H		360 ( 1' 2")
Rear-end distance	I		1600 ( 5' 3")
Rear-end swing radius	I'		1645 ( 5' 5")
Distance between tumblers (Steel)	J		2280 ( 7' 6")
Distance between tumblers (Rubber)			2270 ( 7' 5")
Undercarriage length (Steel)	K		2906 ( 9' 6")
Undercarriage length (Rubber)			2900 ( 9' 6")
Undercarriage width	L		2300 ( 7' 7")
Track gauge	M		1850 ( 6' 1")
Track shoe width, standard	N		450 ( 1' 6")
Height of blade	O		460 ( 1' 6")
Ground clearance of blade up	P		400 ( 1' 4")
Depth of blade down	Q		280 ( 0' 11")
Travel speed (Low/high)		km/hr (mph)	2.7/5.2 (1.7/3.2)
Swing speed		rpm	9.5
Gradeability		Degree (%)	30 (58)
Ground pressure (450 mm shoe)		kgf/cm² (psi)	0.40 (5.72)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	7580 (16700)

### 3. WORKING RANGE

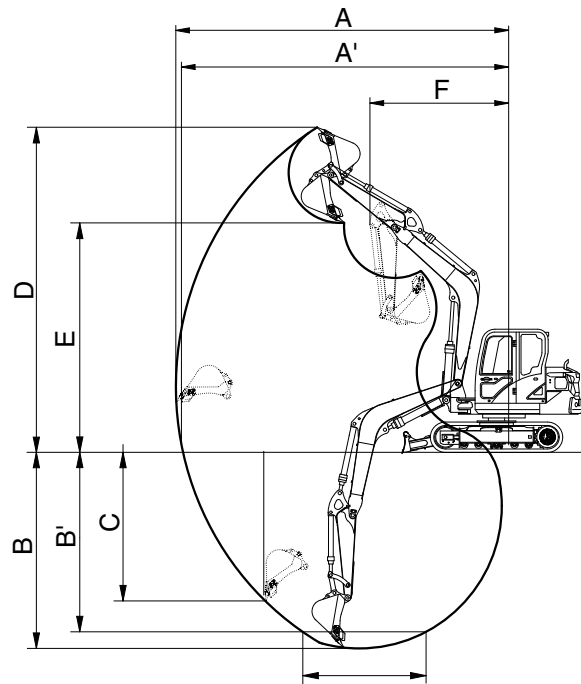
#### 1) HX85A, MONO BOOM



85A0SP03

Description	m (ft-in)	Boom	3.55 (11' 8")	
		Arm	1.75 (5' 9")	2.10 (6' 11")
Max digging reach	mm (ft-in)	A	7090 (23' 3")	7420 (24' 4")
Max digging reach on ground		A'	6940 (22' 8")	7280 (23' 9")
Max digging depth		B	4240 (13' 9")	4590 (15' 0")
Max digging depth (8 ft level)		B'	3880 (12' 7")	4270 (14' 0")
Max vertical wall digging depth		C	3660 (12' 0")	4010 (13' 2")
Max digging height		D	7035 (23' 0")	7290 (23' 9")
Max dumping height		E	5000 (16' 4")	5250 (17' 3")
Min swing radius		F	2560 ( 8' 4")	2770 ( 9' 10")
Boom swing radius (left/right)		70°/60°		
Bucket digging force	kN	SAE	52.9	52.9
	kgf		5389	5389
	lbf		11882	11882
	kN	ISO	61.5	61.5
	kgf		6268	6268
	lbf		13819	13819
Arm digging force	kN	SAE	39.7	35.8
	kgf		4042	3646
	lbf		8911	8038
	kN	ISO	41.4	37.1
	kgf		4222	3787
	lbf		9307	8348

## 2) HX85A, 2PCS BOOM



85A0SP03

Description	m (ft-in)	Boom	3.92 (12' 10")	
		Arm	1.75 (5' 9")	2.10 (6' 11")
Max digging reach	mm (ft-in)	A	7550 (24' 8")	7890 (25' 9")
Max digging reach on ground		A'	7400 (24' 3")	7750 (25' 5")
Max digging depth		B	4260 (13' 9")	4610 (15' 2")
Max digging depth (8 ft level)		B'	4100 (13' 5")	4460 (14' 7")
Max vertical wall digging depth		C	3840 (12' 6")	4185 (13' 8")
Max digging height		D	7910 (25' 9")	8230 (27' 0")
Max dumping height		E	5870 (19' 3")	6195 (20' 4")
Min swing radius		F	2470 (8' 10")	2780 (9' 2")
Boom swing radius (left/right)		70°/60°		
Bucket digging force	kN	SAE	52.9	52.9
	kgf		5389	5389
	lbf		11882	11882
	kN	ISO	61.5	61.5
	kgf		6268	6268
	lbf		13819	13819
Arm digging force	kN	SAE	39.7	35.8
	kgf		4042	3646
	lbf		8911	8038
	kN	ISO	41.4	37.1
	kgf		4222	3787
	lbf		9307	8348

## 4. WEIGHT

Item	kg	lb
Upperstructure assembly		
· Main frame weld assembly	790	1740
· Engine assembly	270	600
· Main pump assembly	32	70
· Main control valve assembly	90	200
· Swing motor assembly	80	170
· Hydraulic oil tank assembly	76	168
· Fuel tank assembly	57	126
· Boom swing post	225	500
· Counterweight	1006	2220
· Cab assembly	332	730
Lower chassis assembly		
· Track frame weld assembly	858	1890
· Swing bearing	155	340
· Travel motor assembly	85	190
· Turning joint	26	57
· Track recoil spring	123	271
· Idler	130	290
· Carrier roller	14	31
· Track roller	160	360
· Track-chain assembly (450 mm standard triple grouser shoe)	858	1890
· Dozer blade assembly	337	740
Front attachment assembly (3.55 m boom, 1.75 m arm, 0.25 m <sup>3</sup> SAE heaped bucket)		
· 3.55 m boom assembly	405	890
· 1.75 m arm assembly	167	370
· 0.25 m <sup>3</sup> SAE heaped bucket	188	410
· Boom cylinder assembly	113	249
· Arm cylinder assembly	67	150
· Bucket cylinder assembly	60	130
· Dozer cylinder assembly	64	141
· Bucket control link assembly	80	180
· Boom swing cylinder assembly	66	150
· Angle dozer cylinder assembly	63	139
· Dozer cylinder assembly (for angle)	64	141
· Adjust cylinder assembly	65	143
· Angle blade assembly	485	1070

※ This information is different with operating and transportation weight because it is not including harness, pipe, oil, fuel so on.

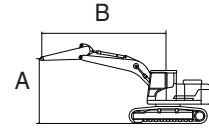
※ Refer to Transportation for actual weight information and Specifications for operating weight.











## 5. LIFTING CAPACITIES

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
MONO BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3550	1750	1000	450	-	Down	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m	kg									*2280	*2280	3.21
(19.7 ft)	lb									*5030	*5030	(10.5)
4.5 m	kg					*1890	1860			*1910	1540	5.02
(14.8 ft)	lb					*4170	4100			*4210	3400	(16.5)
3.0 m	kg			*2970	*2970	*2140	1800			*1820	1210	5.81
(9.8 ft)	lb			*6550	*6550	*4720	3970			*4210	2670	(19.1)
1.5 m	kg					*2620	1700	*1970	1120	*1930	1100	6.06
(4.9 ft)	lb					*5780	3750	*4340	2470	*4250	2430	(19.9)
Ground	kg			3620	2960	*2870	1630			*2010	1130	5.87
Line	lb			7980	6530	*6330	3590			*4430	2490	(19.2)
-1.5 m	kg	*3910	*3910	4210	2990	*2590	1630			*2040	1360	5.16
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*8620	*8620	9280	6590	*5710	3590			*4500	3000	(16.9)
-3.0 m	kg			*2290	*2290					*1750	*1750	3.57
(-9.8 ft)	lb			*5050	*5050					*3860	*3860	(11.7)

### ※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

### ※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

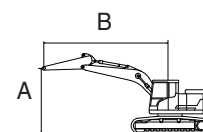
**▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.**













Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3550	1750	1000	450	-	Up	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*2280 *5030	*2280 *5030	3.21 (10.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1890 *4170	1710 3770			1720 3790	1420 3130	5.02 (16.5)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2970 *6550	*2970 *6550	2020 4450	1660 3660			1340 2950	1110 2450	5.81 (19.1)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb					1910 4210	1560 3440	1240 2730	1030 2270	1220 2690	1010 2230	6.06 (19.9)
Ground Line	kg lb			3460 7630	2680 5910	1840 4060	1500 3310			1260 2780	1040 2290	5.87 (19.2)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3910 *8620	*3910 *8620	3490 7690	2710 5970	1840 4060	1490 3280			1520 3350	1240 2730	5.16 (16.9)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2290 *5050	*2290 *5050					*1750 *3860	*1750 *3860	3.57 (11.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

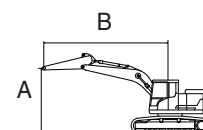
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3550	1750	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m	kg									*2280	*2280	3.21
(19.7 ft)	lb									*5030	*5030	(10.5)
4.5 m	kg					*1890	*1890			*1910	1620	5.02
(14.8 ft)	lb					*4170	*4170			*4210	3570	(16.5)
3.0 m	kg			*2970	*2970	*2140	1880			*1820	1270	5.81
(9.8 ft)	lb			*6550	*6550	*4720	4140			*4010	2800	(19.1)
1.5 m	kg					*2620	1780	*1970	1180	*1930	1160	6.06
(4.9 ft)	lb					*5780	3920	*4340	2600	*4250	2560	(19.9)
Ground	kg			*3620	3110	*2870	1720			*2010	1190	5.87
Line	lb			*7980	6860	*6330	3790			*4430	2620	(19.2)
-1.5 m	kg	*3910	*3910	*4210	3130	*2590	1710			*2040	1430	5.16
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*8620	*8620	*9280	6900	*5710	3770			*4500	3150	(16.9)
-3.0 m	kg			*2290	*2290					*1750	*1750	3.57
(-9.8 ft)	lb			*5050	*5050					*3860	*3860	(11.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

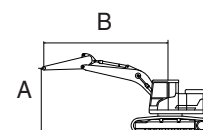
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3550	1750	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m	kg									*2280	*2280	3.21
(19.7 ft)	lb									*5030	*5030	(10.5)
4.5 m	kg					*1890	1790			1800	1490	5.02
(14.8 ft)	lb					*4170	3950			3970	3280	(16.5)
3.0 m	kg			*2970	*2970	2110	1740			1400	1170	5.81
(9.8 ft)	lb			*6550	*6550	4650	3840			3090	2580	(19.1)
1.5 m	kg					2000	1640	1310	1090	1290	1070	6.06
(4.9 ft)	lb					4410	3620	2890	2400	2840	2360	(19.9)
Ground	kg			*3620	2820	1930	1580			1330	1100	5.87
Line	lb			*7980	6220	4250	3480			2930	2430	(19.2)
-1.5 m	kg	*3910	*3910	3660	2850	1930	1570			1590	1310	5.16
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*8620	*8620	8070	6280	4250	3460			3510	2890	(16.9)
-3.0 m	kg			*2290	*2290					*1750	*1750	3.57
(-9.8 ft)	lb			*5050	*5050					*3860	*3860	(11.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

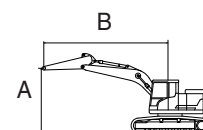
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3550	2100	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m	kg									*1930	*1930	3.88
(19.7 ft)	lb									*4250	*4250	(12.7)
4.5 m	kg					*1660	*1660			*1630	1430	5.43
(14.8 ft)	lb					*3660	*3660			*3590	3150	(17.8)
3.0 m	kg			*2480	*2480	*1950	1900	*1760	1210	*1560	1150	6.15
(9.8 ft)	lb			*5470	*5470	*4300	4190	*3880	2670	*3440	2540	(20.2)
1.5 m	kg			*4440	3250	*2480	1790	*1890	1170	*1650	1060	6.39
(4.9 ft)	lb			*9790	7170	*5470	3950	*4170	2580	*3640	2340	(21.0)
Ground	kg			*3720	3090	*2830	1710	*1960	1140	*1860	1090	6.21
Line	lb			*8200	6810	*6240	3770	*4320	2510	*4100	2400	(20.4)
-1.5 m	kg	*3290	*3290	*4490	3090	*2690	1690			*1910	1270	5.56
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*7250	*7250	*9900	6810	*5930	3730			*4210	2800	(18.2)
-3.0 m	kg			*2950	*2950					*1810	*1810	4.16
(-9.8 ft)	lb			*6500	*6500					*3990	*3990	(13.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

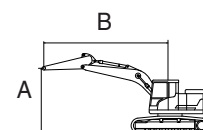
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3550	2100	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m	kg									*1930	*1930	3.88
(19.7 ft)	lb									*4250	*4250	(12.7)
4.5 m	kg					*1660	*1660			1590	1320	5.43
(14.8 ft)	lb					*3660	*3660			3510	2910	(17.8)
3.0 m	kg			*2480	*2480	*1950	1750	1340	1110	1280	1070	6.15
(9.8 ft)	lb			*5470	*5470	*4300	3860	2950	2450	2820	2360	(20.2)
1.5 m	kg			3790	2960	2010	1650	1300	1080	1180	980	6.39
(4.9 ft)	lb			8360	6530	4430	3640	2870	2380	2600	2160	(21.0)
Ground	kg			3620	2800	1920	1570	1270	1050	1210	1000	6.21
Line	lb			7980	6170	4230	3460	2800	2310	2670	2200	(20.4)
-1.5 m	kg	*3290	*3290	3620	2800	1900	1550			1420	1170	5.56
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*7250	*7250	7980	6170	4190	3420			3130	2580	(18.2)
-3.0 m	kg			*2950	2890					*1810	1790	4.16
(-9.8 ft)	lb			*6500	6370					*3990	3950	(13.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

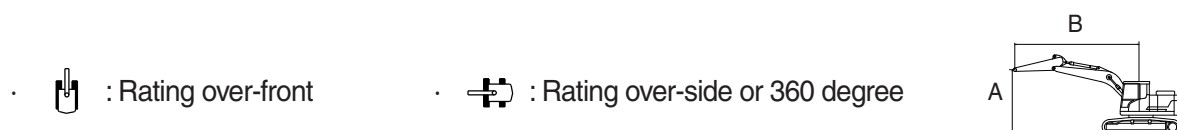
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.









The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3917	1750	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m	kg	*2750	*2750					*2450	2120	4.11
(19.7 ft)	lb	*6060	*6060					*5400	4670	(13.5)
4.5 m	kg	*2580	*2580	*2150	1860			*1960	1270	5.58
(14.8 ft)	lb	*5690	*5690	*4740	4100			*4320	2800	(18.3)
3.0 m	kg			*2410	1760	*1860	1120	*1790	1030	6.29
(9.8 ft)	lb			*5310	3880	*4100	2470	*3950	2270	(20.6)
1.5 m	kg			*2720	1630	*1900	1070	*1680	950	6.52
(4.9 ft)	lb			*6000	3590	*4190	2360	*3700	2090	(21.4)
Ground	kg			*2660	1550	*1770	1050	*1550	970	6.34
Line	lb			*5860	3420	*3900	2310	*3420	2140	(20.8)
-1.5 m	kg	*2910	2890	*2110	1550			*1300	1140	5.71
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*6420	6370	*4650	3420			*2870	2510	(18.7)
-3.0 m	kg									
(-9.8 ft)	lb									

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

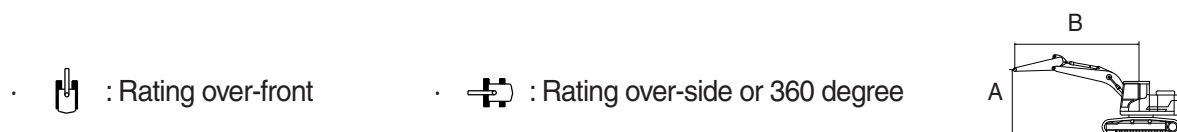
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.









The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3917	1750	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg	*2750	*2750					2400	1950	4.11
	lb	*6060	*6060					5290	4300	(13.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg	*2580	*2580	2090	1710			1430	1170	5.58
	lb	*5690	*5690	4610	3770			3150	2580	(18.3)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg			1990	1620	1250	1020	1150	940	6.29
	lb			4390	3570	2760	2250	2540	2070	(20.6)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg			1850	1490	1210	980	1060	860	6.52
	lb			4080	3280	2670	2160	2340	1900	(21.4)
Ground Line	kg			1770	1410	1180	950	1090	890	6.34
	lb			3900	3110	2600	2090	2400	1960	(20.8)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg	*2910	2600	1770	1410			1280	1040	5.71
	lb	*6420	5730	3900	3110			2820	2290	(18.7)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg									
	lb									

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

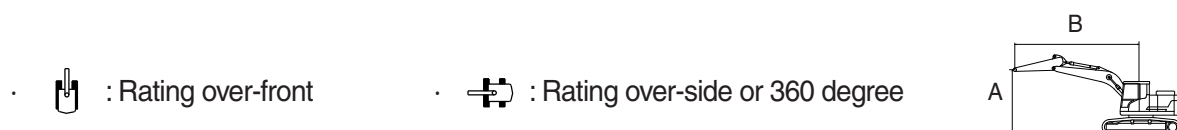
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.









The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
2 PCS BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3917	2100	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m	kg			*2110	1860			*2070	1730	4.68
(19.7 ft)	lb			*4650	4100			*4560	3810	(15.3)
4.5 m	kg			*1990	1880			*1690	1140	5.99
(14.8 ft)	lb			*4390	4140			*3730	2510	(19.6)
3.0 m	kg			*2280	1780	*1790	1120	*1600	940	6.64
(9.8 ft)	lb			*5030	3920	*3950	2470	*3530	2070	(21.8)
1.5 m	kg			*2640	1640	*1870	1070	*1560	870	6.86
(4.9 ft)	lb			*5820	3620	*4120	2360	*3440	1920	(22.5)
Ground	kg			*2690	1540	*1820	1030	*1450	890	6.69
Line	lb			*5930	3400	*4010	2270	*3200	1960	(22.0)
-1.5 m	kg	*3350	2830	*2270	1530	*1360	1040	*1250	1020	6.10
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*7390	6240	*5000	3370	*3000	2290	*2760	2250	(20.0)
-3.0 m	kg	*1670	*1670	*1100	*1100			*750	*750	4.90
(-9.8 ft)	lb	*3680	*3680	*2430	*2430			*1650	*1650	(16.1)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

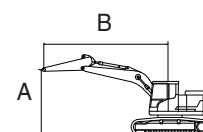
▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.











Type	Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	3917	2100	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m	kg			2090	1710			1940	1590	4.68
(19.7 ft)	lb			4610	3770			4280	3510	(15.3)
4.5 m	kg			*1990	1740			1270	1040	5.99
(14.8 ft)	lb			*4390	3840			2800	2290	(19.6)
3.0 m	kg			2020	1640	1260	1030	1050	860	6.64
(9.8 ft)	lb			4450	3620	2780	2270	2310	1900	(21.8)
1.5 m	kg			1860	1500	1210	980	980	790	6.86
(4.9 ft)	lb			4100	3310	2670	2160	2160	1740	(22.5)
Ground	kg			1760	1400	1160	940	1000	810	6.69
Line	lb			3880	3090	2560	2070	2200	1790	(22.0)
-1.5 m	kg	*3350	2550	1750	1390	1170	940	1150	930	6.10
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*7390	5620	3860	3060	2580	2070	2540	2050	(20.0)
-3.0 m	kg	*1670	*1670	*1100	*1100			*750	*750	4.90
(-9.8 ft)	lb	*3680	*3680	*2430	*2430			*1650	*1650	(16.1)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

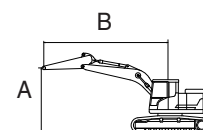
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3550	1750	1000	450	-	Down	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*2280 *5030	*2280 *5030	3.21 (10.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1890 *4170	1870 4120			*1910 *4210	1550 3420	5.02 (16.5)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2970 *6550	*2970 *6550	*2140 *4720	1810 3990			*1820 *4010	1220 2690	5.81 (19.1)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb					*2620 *5780	1710 3770	*1970 *4340	1130 2490	*1930 *4250	1110 2450	6.06 (19.9)
Ground Line	kg lb			*3620 *7980	2980 6570	*2870 *6330	1650 3640			*2010 *4430	1140 2510	5.87 (19.2)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3910 *8620	*3910 *8620	*4210 *9280	3000 6610	*2590 *5710	1640 3620			*2040 *4500	1370 3020	5.16 (16.9)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2290 *5050	*2290 *5050					*1750 *3860	*1750 *3860	3.57 (11.7)

#### ※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

#### ※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.



Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

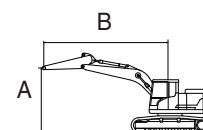
The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.











Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3550	1750	1000	450	-	Up	-	-	-

-  : Rating over-front
  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*2280 *5030	*2280 *5030	3.21 (10.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1890 *4170	1740 3840			1740 3840	1450 3200	5.02 (16.5)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2970 *6550	*2970 *6550	2040 4500	1690 3730			1360 3000	1130 2490	5.81 (19.1)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb					1940 4280	1590 3510	1260 2780	1050 2310	1240 2730	1030 2270	6.06 (19.9)
Ground Line	kg lb			3510 7740	2730 6020	1870 4120	1520 3350			1280 2820	1060 2340	5.87 (19.2)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3910 *8620	*3910 *8620	3540 7800	2750 6060	1860 4100	1520 3350			1540 3400	1270 2800	5.16 (16.9)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2290 *5050	*2290 *5050					*1750 *3860	*1750 *3860	3.57 (11.7)

※ Note

- Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
- Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
- The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
- \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

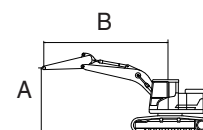
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3550	1750	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*2280 *5030	*2280 *5030	3.21 (10.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1890 *4170	*1890 *4170			*1910 *4210	1630 3590	5.02 (16.5)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2970 *6550	*2970 *6550	*2140 *4720	1900 4190			*1820 *4010	1280 2820	5.81 (19.1)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb					*2620 *5780	1800 3970	*1970 *4340	1190 2620	*1930 *4250	1170 2580	6.06 (19.9)
Ground Line	kg lb			*3620 *7980	3130 6900	*2870 *6330	1730 3810			*2010 *4430	1200 2650	5.87 (19.2)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3910 *8620	*3910 *8620	*4210 *9280	3150 6940	*2590 *5710	1720 3790			*2040 *4500	1440 3170	5.16 (16.9)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2290 *5050	*2290 *5050					*1750 *3860	*1750 *3860	3.57 (11.7)

#### ※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

#### ※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

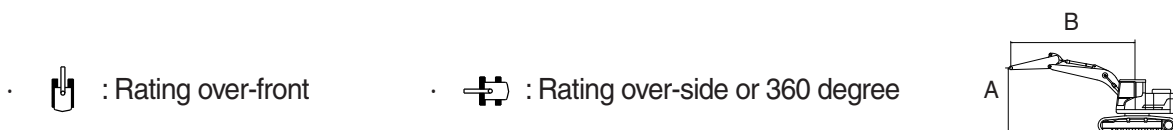
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.











The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

**▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.**

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3550	1750	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*2280 *5030	*2280 *5030	3.21 (10.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1890 *4170	1820 4010			1820 4010	1520 3350	5.02 (16.5)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2970 *6550	*2970 *6550	2130 4700	1770 3900			1420 3130	1190 2620	5.81 (19.1)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb					2030 4480	1670 3680	1330 2930	1100 2430	1300 2870	1090 2400	6.06 (19.9)
Ground Line	kg lb			*3620 *7980	2870 6330	1960 4320	1600 3530			1350 2980	1120 2470	5.87 (19.2)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3910 *8620	*3910 *8620	3710 8180	2890 6370	1950 4300	1600 3530			1620 3570	1330 2930	5.16 (16.9)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2290 *5050	*2290 *5050					*1750 *3860	*1750 *3860	3.57 (11.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

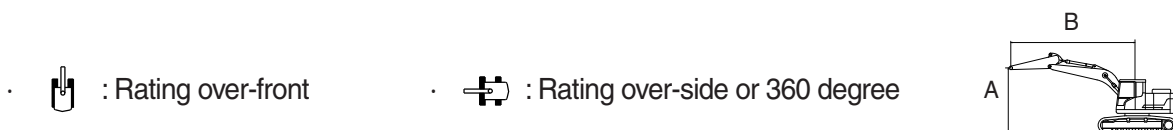
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.











The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3550	2100	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*1930 *4250	*1930 *4250	3.88 (12.7)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1660 *3660	*1660 *3660			*1630 *3590	1440 3170	5.43 (17.8)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2480 *5470	*2480 *5470	*1950 *4300	1910 4210	*1760 *3880	1220 2690	*1560 *3440	1160 2560	6.15 (20.2)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb			*4440 *9790	3270 7210	*2480 *5470	1800 3970	*1890 *4170	1180 2600	*1650 *3640	1070 2360	6.39 (21.0)
Ground Line	kg lb			*3720 *8200	3110 6860	*2830 *6240	1720 3790	*1960 *4320	1150 2540	*1860 *4100	1100 2430	6.21 (20.4)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3290 *7250	*3290 *7250	*4490 *9900	3110 6860	*2690 *5930	1700 3750			*1910 *4210	1280 2820	5.56 (18.2)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2950 *6500	*2950 *6500					*1810 *3990	*1810 *3990	4.16 (13.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on SAE ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

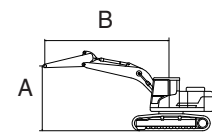
Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.











▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outtriger	
MONO BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3550	2100	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height		Load radius								At max. reach		
		1.5 m (4.9 ft)		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
												m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg lb									*1930 *4250	*1930 *4250	3.88 (12.7)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg lb					*1660 *3660	*1660 *3660			1610 3550	1340 2950	5.43 (17.8)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2480 *5470	*2480 *5470	*1950 *4300	1780 3920	1360 3000	1130 2490	1300 2870	1080 2380	6.15 (20.2)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg lb			3840 8470	3000 6610	2040 4500	1670 3680	1320 2910	1100 2430	1200 2650	1000 2200	6.39 (21.0)
Ground Line	kg lb			3670 8090	2850 6280	1950 4300	1590 3510	1290 2840	1070 2360	1230 2710	1020 2250	6.21 (20.4)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*3290 *7250	*3290 *7250	3670 8090	2850 6280	1930 4250	1570 3460			1440 3170	1190 2620	5.56 (18.2)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg lb			*2950 *6500	2930 6460					*1810 *3990	*1810 *3990	4.16 (13.7)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

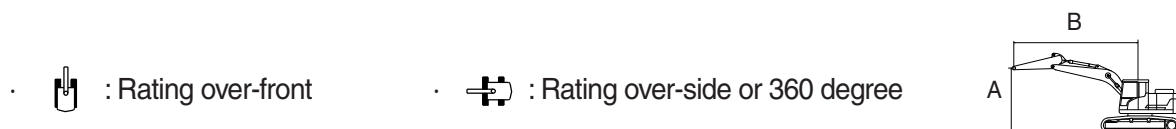
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.









The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3917	1750	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg	*2750	*2750					*2450	2160	4.11
	lb	*6060	*6060					*5400	4760	(13.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg	*2580	*2580	*2150	1900			*1960	1310	5.58
	lb	*5690	*5690	*4740	4190			*4320	2890	(18.3)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg			*2410	1800	*1860	1140	*1790	1050	6.29
	lb			*5310	3970	*4100	2510	*3950	2310	(20.6)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg			*2720	1670	*1900	1100	*1680	970	6.52
	lb			*6000	3680	*4190	2430	*3700	2140	(21.4)
Ground Line	kg			*2660	1590	*1770	1070	*1550	1000	6.34
	lb			*5860	3510	*3900	2360	*3420	2200	(20.8)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg	*2910	*2910	*2110	1600			*1300	1170	5.71
	lb	*6420	*6420	*4650	3530			*2870	2580	(18.7)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg									
	lb									

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

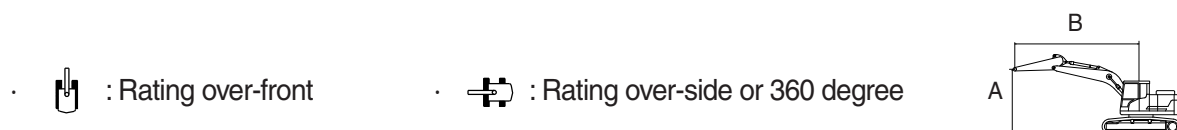
The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.









Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

**▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.**



Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3917	1750	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg	*2750	*2750					2450	2010	4.11
	lb	*6060	*6060					5400	4430	(13.5)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg	*2580	*2580	2130	1760			1460	1210	5.58
	lb	*5690	*5690	4700	3880			3220	2670	(18.3)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg			2030	1670	1280	1060	1180	970	6.29
	lb			4480	3680	2820	2340	2600	2140	(20.6)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg			1890	1540	1230	1020	1090	900	6.52
	lb			4170	3400	2710	2250	2400	1980	(21.4)
Ground Line	kg			1810	1460	1200	990	1120	920	6.34
	lb			3990	3220	2650	2180	2470	2030	(20.8)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg	*2910	2690	1810	1470			*1300	1080	5.71
	lb	*6420	5930	3990	3240			*2870	2380	(18.7)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg									
	lb									

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

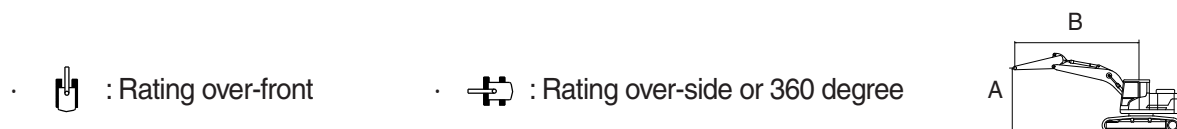
Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.









The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3917	2100	1150	450	-	Down	-	-	-



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m	kg			*2110	1900			*2070	1760	4.68
(19.7 ft)	lb			*4650	4190			*4560	3880	(15.3)
4.5 m	kg			*1990	1920			*1690	1170	5.99
(14.8 ft)	lb			*4390	4230			*3730	2580	(19.6)
3.0 m	kg			*2280	1820	*1790	1150	*1600	960	6.64
(9.8 ft)	lb			*5030	4010	*3950	2540	*3530	2120	(21.8)
1.5 m	kg			*2640	1680	*1870	1100	*1560	890	6.86
(4.9 ft)	lb			*5820	3700	*4120	2430	*3440	1960	(22.5)
Ground	kg			*2690	1580	*1820	1060	*1450	910	6.69
Line	lb			*5930	3480	*4010	2340	*3200	2010	(22.0)
-1.5 m	kg	*3350	2900	*2270	1570	*1360	1060	*1250	1050	6.10
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*7390	6390	*5000	3460	*3000	2340	*2760	2310	(20.0)
-3.0 m	kg	*1670	*1670	*1100	*1100			*750	*750	4.90
(-9.8 ft)	lb	*3680	*3680	*2430	*2430			*1650	*1650	(16.1)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ **Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.**

**Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.**

**The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.**

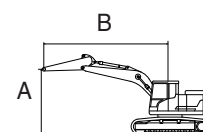
**Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.**









**▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.**

Type		Boom	Arm	Counterweight	Shoe	Wheel	Dozer		Outrigger	
2 PCS BOOM	ANGLE BLADE	Length [mm]	Length [mm]	weight [kg]	width [mm]	width [mm]	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		3917	2100	1150	450	-	Up	-	-	-

·  : Rating over-front

·  : Rating over-side or 360 degree



Load point height								At max. reach		
		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.8 ft)		6.0 m (19.7 ft)		Capacity		Reach
										m (ft)
6.0 m (19.7 ft)	kg			*2110	1760			1980	1640	4.68
	lb			*4650	3880			4370	3620	(15.3)
4.5 m (14.8 ft)	kg			*1990	1790			1300	1080	5.99
	lb			*4390	3950			2870	2380	(19.6)
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg			2050	1690	1280	1060	1070	890	6.64
	lb			4520	3730	2820	2340	2360	1960	(21.8)
1.5 m (4.9 ft)	kg			1900	1550	1230	1010	1000	820	6.86
	lb			4190	3420	2710	2230	2200	1810	(22.5)
Ground Line	kg			1800	1450	1190	970	1020	840	6.69
	lb			3970	3200	2620	2140	2250	1850	(22.0)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg	*3350	2640	1780	1440	1200	980	1170	960	6.10
	lb	*7390	5820	3920	3170	2650	2160	2580	2120	(20.0)
-3.0 m (-9.8 ft)	kg	*1670	*1670	*1100	*1100			*750	*750	4.90
	lb	*3680	*3680	*2430	*2430			*1650	*1650	(16.1)

※ Note

1. Lifting capacity are based on ISO 10567.
2. Lifting capacity of the HX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
3. The lift-point is bucket pivot mounting pin on the arm (without bucket mass).
4. \*indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.

※ Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

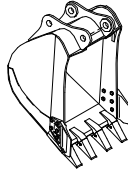
The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult with your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause serious injury, death, or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

## 6. BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE

### 1) GENERAL BUCKET



0.25, 0.28 m<sup>3</sup> SAE heaped bucket

Capacity		Width		Weight	Tooth	Recommendation			
						3.55 m (11' 8") Mono boom		3.92 m (12' 10") Mono boom	
SAE heaped	CECE heaped	Without side cutter	With side cutter			1.75 m arm (5' 9")	2.10 m arm (6' 11")	1.75 m arm (5' 9")	2.10 m arm (6' 11")
0.25 m <sup>3</sup> (0.33 yd <sup>3</sup> )	0.21 m <sup>3</sup> (0.27 yd <sup>3</sup> )	672 mm (26.5")	796 mm (31.3")	188 kg (414 lb)	4 EA	●	●	●	◐
0.28 m <sup>3</sup> (0.37 yd <sup>3</sup> )	0.25 m <sup>3</sup> (0.33 yd <sup>3</sup> )	672 mm (26.5")	830 mm (32.7")	250 kg (551 lb)	4 EA	●	◐	■	■

※ : Standard bucket

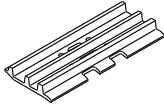
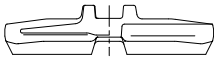
●	Applicable for materials with density of 2100 kg/m <sup>3</sup> (3540 lb/yd <sup>3</sup> ) or less
◐	Applicable for materials with density of 1800 kg/m <sup>3</sup> (3030 lb/yd <sup>3</sup> ) or less
■	Applicable for materials with density of 1500 kg/m <sup>3</sup> (2530 lb/yd <sup>3</sup> ) or less
▲	Applicable for materials with density of 1200 kg/m <sup>3</sup> (2020 lb/yd <sup>3</sup> ) or less
×	Not recommended

## 7. UNDERCARRIAGE

### 1) TRACKS

X-leg type center frame is integrally welded with reinforced box-section track frames. The design includes dry tracks, lubricated rollers, idlers, sprockets, hydraulic track adjusters with shock absorbing springs and assembled track-type tractor shoes with triple grousers.

### 2) TYPES OF SHOES

Shapes		Triple grouser		Rubber track
				
Shoe width	mm (in)	450 (18)	600 (24)	450 (18)
Operating weight	kg (lb)	8530 (18810)	8700 (19810)	8480 (18700)
Ground pressure	kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (psi)	0.38 (5.42)	0.29 (4.15)	0.38 (5.38)
Overall width	mm (ft-in)	2300 (7' 7")	2390 (7' 10")	2300 (7' 7")

### 3) NUMBER OF ROLLERS AND SHOES ON EACH SIDE

Item	Quantity
Carrier rollers	1 EA
Track rollers	5 EA
Track shoes	40 EA

## 8. SPECIFICATIONS FOR MAJOR COMPONENTS

### 1) ENGINE

Item	Specification
Model	Yanmar 4TNV98C
Type	4-cycle diesel engine, low emission
Cooling method	Water cooling
Number of cylinders and arrangement	4 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	98 × 110 mm (3.86" × 4.33")
Piston displacement	3319 cc (203 cu in)
Compression ratio	18.3:1
Rated gross horse power (SAE J1995)	66.9 Hp at 2400 rpm (49.9 kW at 2400 rpm)
Maximum torque at 1350 rpm	24.6 kgf · m (178 lbf · ft)
Engine oil quantity	10.5 ℓ (2.8 U.S. gal)
Dry weight	278 kg (610 lb)
High idling speed	2550 ± 50 rpm
Low idling speed	1000 ± 50 rpm
Rated fuel consumption	233 g/Hp · hr at 2400 rpm
Starting motor	12 V-3 kW
Alternator	12 V-100 A
Battery	1 × 12 V × 100 Ah

### 2) MAIN PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement piston pumps
Capacity	72 cc/rev
Maximum pressure	280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (3980 psi)
Rated oil flow	144 ℓ /min (38 U.S.gpm)
Rated speed	2000 rpm

### 3) GEAR PUMP (P4)

Item	Specification
Type	Fixed displacement gear pump single stage
Capacity	8 cc/rev
Maximum pressure	34 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (479 psi)
Rated oil flow	16 ℓ /min (4.5 U.S.gpm/3.5 U.K.gpm)

### 4) MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Item	Specification
Type	9 spools sectional inline
Operating method	Hydraulic pilot system
Main relief valve pressure	280 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (3980psi)
Overload relief valve pressure	310 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (4410psi)

### 5) SWING MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Axial piston motor
Capacity	43.4 cc/rev
Relief pressure	245 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (3485 psi)
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Braking torque	17 kgf · m (123 lbf · ft)
Brake release pressure	25~50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (356~711 psi)
Reduction gear type	2 - stage planetary

### 6) TRAVEL MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement axial piston motor
Relief pressure	286 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (4068 psi)
Reduction gear type	2 stage planetary
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Brake release pressure	6.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (91 psi)
Braking torque	18.5 kgf · m (134 lbf · ft)

## 7) CYLINDER

Item		Specification
Boom cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø120 × Ø70 × 865 mm
	Cushion	Extend only
Arm cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø100 × Ø60 × 860 mm
	Cushion	Extend and retract
Bucket cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø90 × Ø55 × 685 mm
	Cushion	Extend only
Dozer cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø130 × Ø70 × 190 mm
	Cushion	-
Boom swing cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø110 × Ø60 × 707 mm
	Cushion	-
Angle dozer cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	Ø140 × Ø70 × 180 mm
	Cushion	Ø100 × Ø60 × 461 mm

※ Discoloration of cylinder rod can occur when the friction reduction additive of lubrication oil spreads on the rod surface.

※ Discoloration does not cause any harmful effect on the cylinder performance.

※ 2PCS Boom cylinder / Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke / Ø95 × Ø55 × 550 mm

## 8) SHOE

Item	Width	Ground pressure	Link quantity	Overall width
Steel	450 mm (18")	0.38 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (5.42 psi)	40	2300 mm ( 7' 7")
	600 mm (24")	0.29 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (4.15 psi)	40	2390 mm ( 7' 10")
Rubber	450 mm (18")	0.38 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> (5.38 psi)	-	2300 mm ( 7' 7")

## 9) BUCKET

Item	Capacity		Tooth quantity	Width	
	SAE heaped	CECE heaped		Without side cutter	With side cutter
STD	0.25 m <sup>3</sup> (0.33yd <sup>3</sup> )	0.21 m <sup>3</sup> (0.27yd <sup>3</sup> )	4	730 mm (28.7")	800 mm (31.5")



## 9. RECOMMENDED OILS

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils have been developed to offer the best performance and service life for your equipment. These oils have been tested according to the specifications of HD Hyundai Construction Equipment and, therefore, will meet the highest safety and quality requirements.

We recommend that you use only HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils and grease officially approved by HD Hyundai Construction Equipment.

Service point	Kind of fluid	Capacity ℓ (U.S. gal)	Ambient temperature °C ( °F)								
			-50 (-58)	-30 (-22)	-20 (-4)	-10 (14)	0 (32)	10 (50)	20 (68)	30 (86)	40 (104)
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	10.5 (2.8)	★SAE 5W-40					SAE 30			
			SAE 10W								
			SAE 10W-30								
			SAE 15W-40								
Final drive	Gear oil	1.1×2 (0.3×2)	★SAE 75W-90					SAE 80W-90			
Hydraulic tank	Hydraulic oil	Tank; 56 (14.8)  System; 109 (28.8)	★ISO VG 15								
			ISO VG 32								
			ISO VG 46, HBHO VG 46★ <sup>3</sup>								
			ISO VG 68								
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel★ <sup>1</sup>	115 (30.4)	★ASTM D975 NO.1					ASTM D975 NO.2			
Fitting (grease nipple)	Grease	As required	★NLGI NO.1								
			NLGI NO.2								
Radiator (reservoir tank)	Mixture of antifreeze and water 50 : 50★ <sup>2</sup>	13 (3.4)	Ethylene glycol base permanent type								
			★Ethylene glycol base permanent type (60 : 40)								

**SAE** : Society of Automotive Engineers

**API** : American Petroleum Institute

**ISO** : International Organization for Standardization

**NLGI** : National Lubricating Grease Institute

**ASTM** : American Society of Testing and Material

★ : Cold region (Russia, CIS, Mongolia)

★<sup>1</sup> : Ultra low sulfur diesel

- sulfur content ≤ 15 ppm

★<sup>2</sup> : Soft water : City water or distilled water

★<sup>3</sup> : HD Hyundai Construction Equipment  
Bio Hydraulic Oil

※ Using any lubricating oils other than HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine products may lead to a deterioration of performance and cause damage to major components.

※ Do not mix HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine oil with any other lubricating oil as it may result in damage to the systems of major components.

※ Do not use any engine oil other than that specified above, as it may clog the diesel particulate filter(DPF).

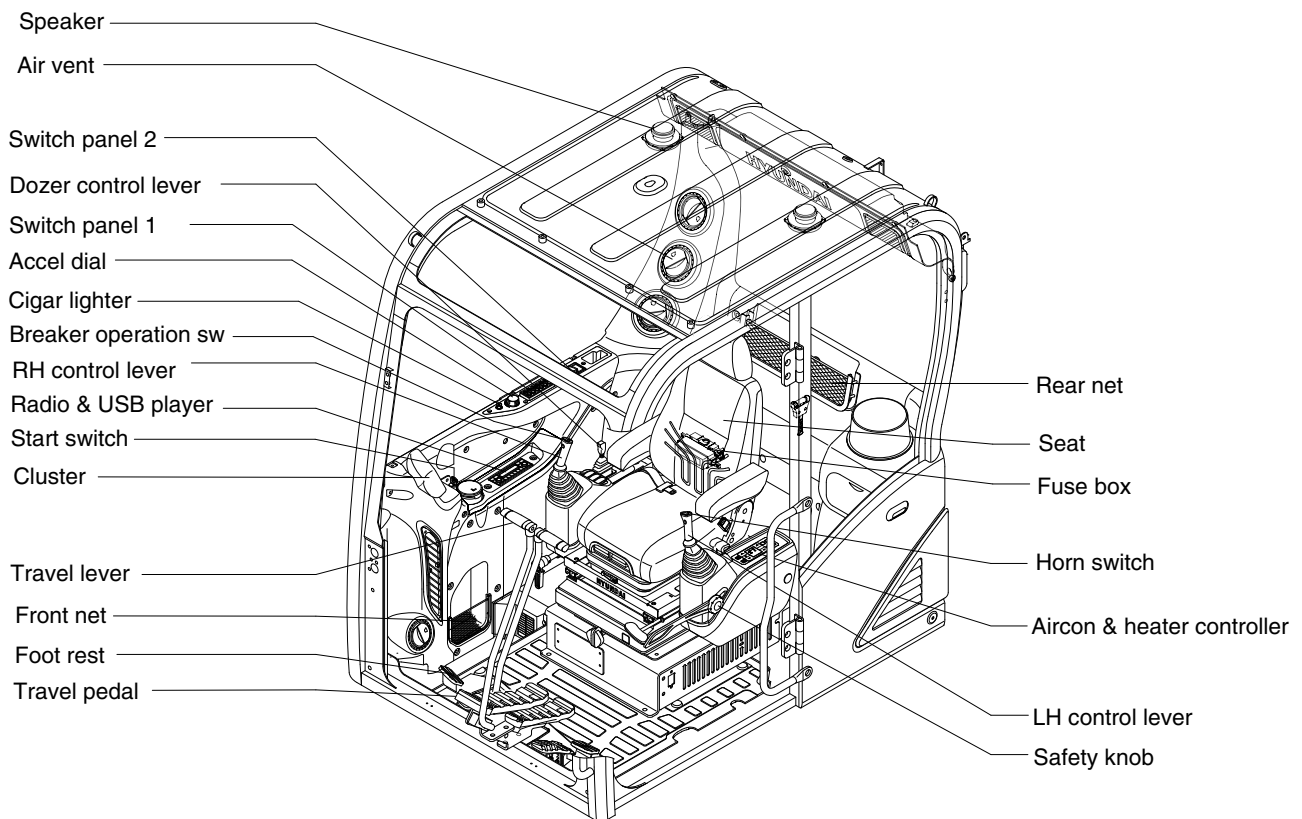
※ For HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils and grease for use in regions with extremely low temperatures, please contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer.

## 1. CAB DEVICES

- 1) The ergonomically designed console box and suspension type seat provide the operator with comfort.

## 2) ELECTRONIC MONITOR SYSTEM

- (1) The centralized electronic monitor system allows the status and conditions of the machine to be monitored at a glance.
- (2) It is equipped with a warning system for early detection of machine malfunction.



85A3CD04

## 2. CLUSTER (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : -#0490)

### 1) STRUCTURE

The cluster consists of LCD and switches as shown below. The LCD is to warn the operator in case of abnormal machine operation or conditions for the appropriate operation and inspection. The LCD is to set and display for modes, monitoring and utilities with the switches.

The switches or touch screen are to set the machine operation modes.

- ※ **The cluster installed on this machine does not entirely guarantee the condition of the machine. Daily inspection should be performed according to chapter 6, Maintenance.**
- ※ **When the cluster provides a warning immediately check the problem, and perform the required action.**



85A3CD100

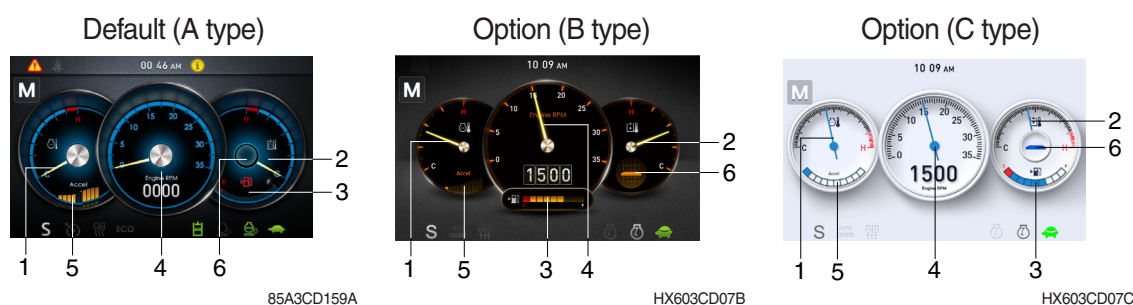
- ※ **The warning lamp pops up, lights ON (on the left-top side) and the buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.**

The warning lamp lights ON until the problem is cleared. Refer to page 3-5 for details.

## 2) GAUGE

### (1) Operation screen

When you first turn starting switch ON, the operation screen will appear.



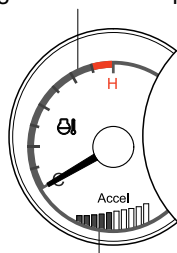
- |                             |                    |              |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 Engine coolant temp gauge | 3 Fuel level gauge | 5 Accel dial |
| 2 Hydraulic oil temp gauge  | 4 Engine rpm       | 6 Clinometer |

※ Operation screen type can be set by the screen type menu of the display.

Refer to page 3-20 for details.

### (2) Engine coolant temperature gauge

Engine coolant temp gauge





Accel dial gauge

85A3CD101

① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.

- Black range : 43°C (104°F) or more and below 110 °C (239 °F)
- Red range : Above 110°C (239°F) or more

② If the indicator is in the red range or  lamp lights up in red, turn OFF the engine and check the engine cooling system.

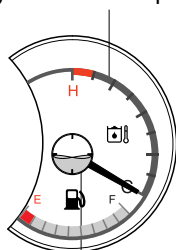
※ If the gauge indicates the red range or  lamp lights up in red even though the machine is in the normal condition range, check the electric device as this can be caused by poor connection of sensor.

③ Accel dial gauge

Displays the levels (0~9) of the accel dial.

### (3) Hydraulic oil temperature gauge

Hydraulic oil temp gauge





Clinometer

85A3CD102

① This gauge indicates the temperature of hydraulic oil.

- Black range : 40-105°C (104-221°F)
- Red range : Above 105°C (221°F)

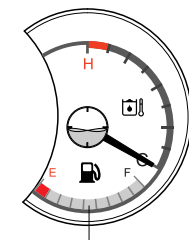
② If the indicator is in the red range or  lamp lights up in red, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and check the cause of the problem.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or  lamp lights up in red even though the machine is in the normal condition range, check the electric device as this can be caused by poor connection of sensor.

③ Clinometer



Displays the gradient information of the machine.

#### (4) Fuel level gauge

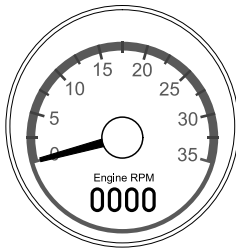


Fuel level gauge

85A3CD103

- ① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.
- ② Fill the fuel when the red range, or  lamp lights up in red.
- ※ If the gauge indicates the red range or  lamp lights up in red even though the machine is in the normal condition range, check the electric device as this can be caused by poor connection of sensor.

#### (5) Engine rpm display

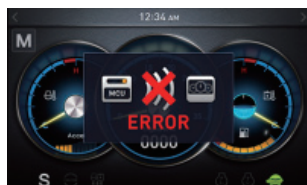


HX603CD35

- ① This displays the engine revolution per minute.

### 3) COMMUNICATION ERROR AND LOW VOLTAGE WARNING POP-UP

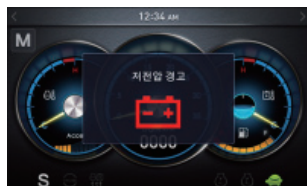
#### (1) Communication error pop-up



HX603CD30

- ① Cluster displays this communication error pop-up when it has communication error with MCU.
- ② Communication error pop-up displays at operation screen only. Just buzzer alarm at the other screen.
- ③ If communication with MCU become normal state, it will disappear automatically.

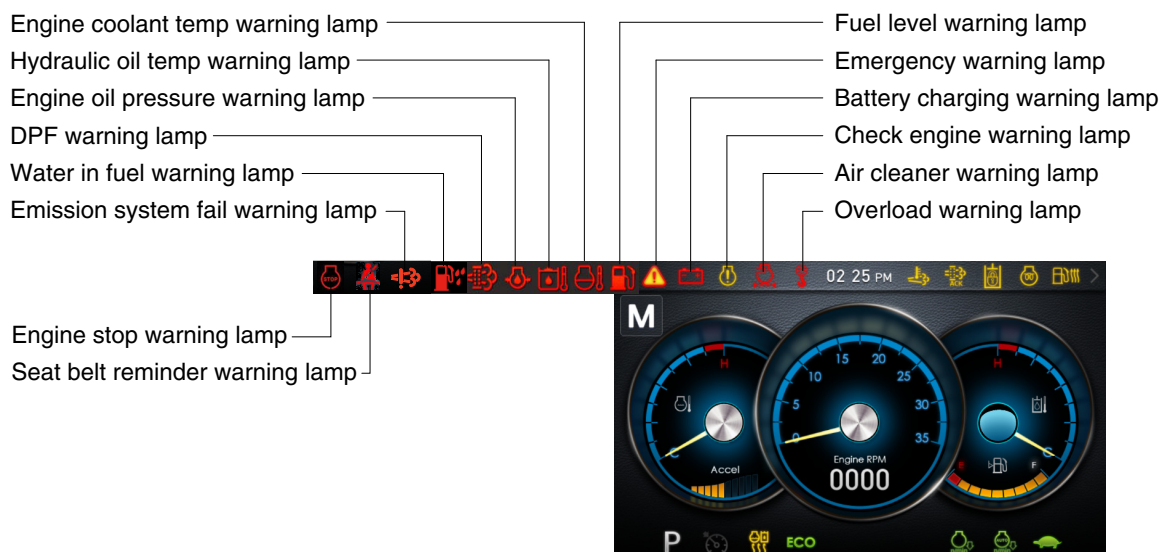
#### (2) Low voltage warning pop-up



HX603CD31

- ① Cluster displays this low voltage warning pop-up when the battery voltage is low.
- ② Low voltage warning pop-up displays at operation screen only. Just buzzer alarm at the other screen.
- ③ This pop-up will disappear with using touch screen or buzzer stop switch. While the battery voltage is low, buzzer sounds every minute.
- ④ When the battery voltage is higher than 11.5 V, the pop-up off.

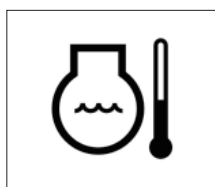
#### 4) WARNING LAMPS






85A3CD104

- ※ Each warning lamp on the left-top of the LCD pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the each warning is happened. The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and lights ON when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or the pop-up is touched. And the buzzer stops. Refer to page 3-12 for the switch.
- ※ When the warning lamps light ON more than 6, you can check all lamps with next page button( ◀ , ▶ ) near the warning lamps.

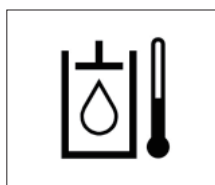
##### (1) Engine coolant temperature warning lamp






290F3CD61

- ① The  lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the engine coolant temperature is over 110°C or more.
- ② The pop-up  lamp moves to the original position and lights up when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or pop-up is touched. Also, the buzzer stops and  lamp keeps ON.
- ③ Check the cooling system when the lamp keeps ON.

##### (2) Hydraulic oil temperature warning lamp

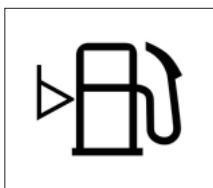


290F3CD62

- ① The  lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the hydraulic oil temperature is over 105°C or more.
- ② The pop-up  lamp moves to the original position and lights up when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or pop-up is touched. Also, the buzzer stops and  lamp keeps ON.
- ③ Check the hydraulic oil level and hydraulic oil cooling system.



### (3) Fuel level warning lamp



290F3CD63

- ① This warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds when the level of fuel is below 9%.
- ② Fill the fuel immediately when the lamp is ON.

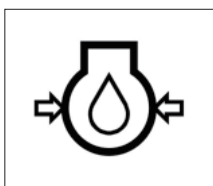
### (4) Emergency warning lamp



290F3CD64

- ① This lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when each of the below warnings occurs.
  - MCU input voltage abnormal
  - Accel dial circuit abnormal or open
- ※ **The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and lights up when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or pop-up is touched. The buzzer will stop.**  
**This is same as following warning lamps.**
- ② When this warning lamp lights up, machine must be checked and serviced immediately.

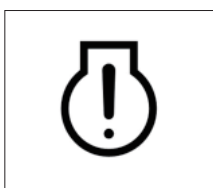
### (5) Engine oil pressure warning lamp



290F3CD65

- ① This lamp lights up when the engine oil pressure is low.
- ② If the lamp lights up, shut OFF the engine immediately. Check oil level.

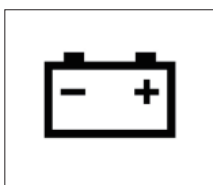
### (6) Check engine warning lamp



290F3CD66

- ① This lamp lights up when the communication between MCU and engine ECM on the engine is abnormal, or if the cluster received any fault code from the engine ECM.
- ② Check the communication line between the two.  
If the communication line is OK, then check the fault codes on the cluster.
- ③ Also, this lamp pops up when the level of DPF soot is high.
- ※ Refer to the page 3-7 for the DPF warning lamp.

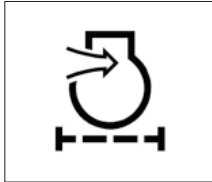
### (7) Battery charging warning lamp



290F3CD67

- ① This lamp lights up when the battery charging voltage is low.
- ② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp is up.

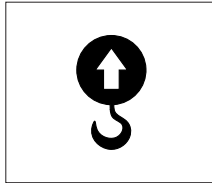
### (8) Air cleaner warning lamp



290F3CD68

- ① This lamp lights up when the air cleaner is clogged.
- ② Check, clean or replace filter.

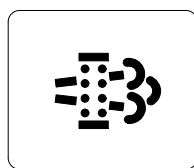
### (9) Overload warning lamp (opt)



HX603CD80

- ① When the machine is overloaded, the overload warning lamp lights up when the overload switch is ON. (if equipped)
- ② Reduce the machine load.

### (10) DPF (diesel particulate filter) warning lamp






2609A3CD19

- ① This warning lamp lights up or go off when the regeneration is needed.
- ② This warning lamp lights up while DPF regeneration inhibit switch is in "Regeneration inhibited" state, when stationary regeneration is permitted.
- ③ This warning lamp lights up during reset regeneration standby or in back up mode.
- ④ This warning lamp blinks during reset regeneration standby DPF regeneration inhibit switch is in "Regeneration inhibited" state.

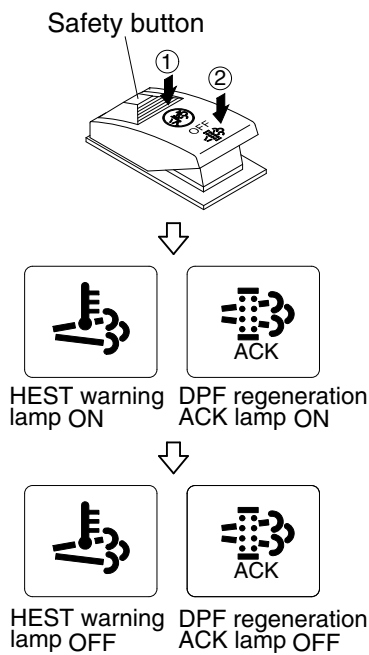
#### ※ Consequences of delaying regeneration

- Poor performance caused by increasing exhaust gas pressure.
- Higher fuel consumption
- Shorter filter lifetime

Condition	Warning lamp			Remedy
	DPF 	Check engine  (pop up)	Stop engine  (pop up)	
Normal	Off	Off	Off	• Automatic regeneration
Soot low	On	Off	Off	• Push DPF switch to OFF position if DPF switch is in inhibit position. (see 3-39 page) • Engine power may be reduced automatically (soot medium)
Soot medium	Blink	Off	Off	
Soot high	On	On	Off	• Engine power and speed will be reduced automatically • Initiate a manual regeneration
Stop	On	Off	On	• Stop the engine immediately. • Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.



### ※ Manual regeneration method of DPF



559A3CD143

※ **Manual regeneration must be operated in a fireproof area.**

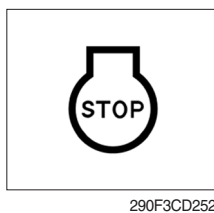
- ① Stop and park the machine.
- ② The accel dial to the lowest position and operate the engine in idling.
- ③ Pull the safety button and push the switch to position ② to initiate the manual regeneration of DPF.

※ **Refer to page 3-28 for the switch operation.**

※ **The engine speed may increase gradually to high idle rpm and DPF regeneration begins and it will take approximately 25~30 minutes.**

- ④ When the manual regeneration starts, the DPF warning lamp light go off and the regeneration acknowledge lamp and HEST warning lamp will light up while the regeneration function is operating.
- ⑤ The regeneration acknowledge lamp and HEST warning lamp will light OFF when the regeneration function is completed.

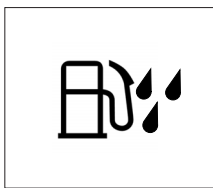
### (11) Stop engine warning lamp



290F3CD252

- ① If the lamp lights up, stop the engine immediately and check the engine.
  - ② Check the fault codes on the monitor.
- ※ **Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.**

### (12) Water in fuel warning lamp



HX60A3CD110

- ① This warning lamp lights up when water is in fuel.
- ② Check the water separator.

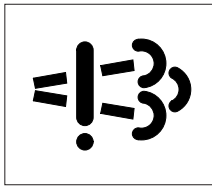
### (13) Seat belt reminder warning lamp



290F3CD252

- ① When operator does not fasten the operator's seat belt, the seat belt reminder warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- ② Fasten the seat belt.
- ③ The warning lamp lights up until fasten the seat belt and the buzzer sounds for 30 seconds.

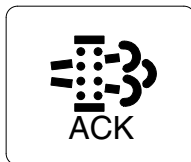
#### (14) Emission system fail warning lamp



300A3CD15

- ① This warning lamp indicates there are faults related to the emission system.
- ② The lamp lights up when each of the below warnings is happened.
  - a. The EGR valve malfunctions.
  - b. Electrical malfunction of the EGR control sensors. (disconnection, short)
  - c. Tampering with the EGR control sensors.
- ③ **This warning lamp can be shown together with DPF warning lamp or engine fail lamp or engine stop warning lamp when DPF system is diagnosed.**
- ※ **Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.**

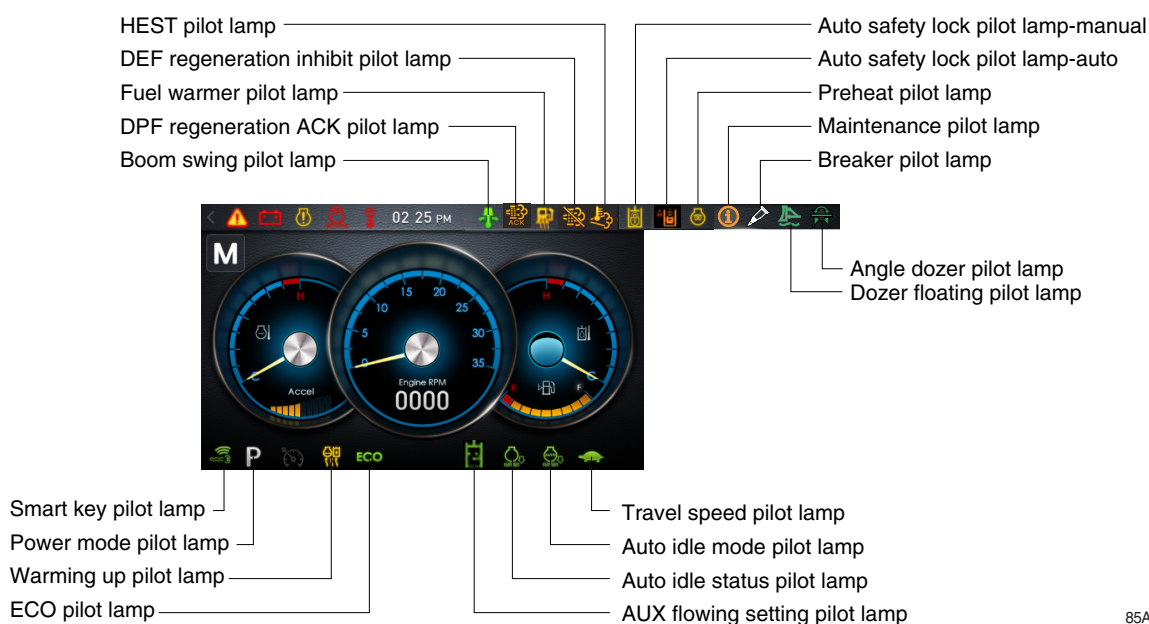
#### (15) DPF regeneration acknowledge warning lamp



559A3CD10

- ① This warning lamp lights up stationary regeneration is in process.
- ② This warning lamp lights up, when stationary regeneration is in process after DPF regeneration request switch is pressed and hold for more than 3 seconds.
- ③ This warning lamp blinks when stationary regeneration standby or regeneration interlock switch is in "regeneration permitted (interlock enabled) status.
- ④ This warning lamp blinks while stationary regeneration standby or back mode, when DPF regeneration inhibit switch in "Regeneration permitted" status and regeneration interlock switch is in regeneration permitted status.

## 5) PILOT LAMPS



※ When the pilot lamps light up more than 3, you can check all lamps with next page button (◀, ▶).

### (1) Mode pilot lamps

No	Mode	Pilot lamp	Selected mode
1	Power mode		Heavy duty power work mode
			Standard power mode
2	Travel mode		Low speed traveling
			High speed traveling
3	Auto idle mode		Auto idle mode
			Auto idle status

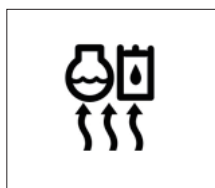
### (2) Preheat pilot lamp



290F3CD79

- ① Turning the start key switch to the ON position starts preheating in cold weather.
- ② Start the engine after this lamp goes OFF.

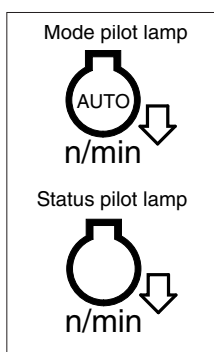
### (3) Warming up pilot lamp



290F3CD80

- ① This lamp lights up when the coolant temperature is below 30°C (86°F).
- ② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30°C (86°F), or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

### (4) Auto idle status/mode pilot lamp



85A3CD106

- ① The auto idle mode pilot lamp will light up when the idle mode is selected.
- ② The auto idle status pilot lamp will light up when all levers and pedals are at neutral position and the auto idle mode is selected.
- ③ One of the lever or pedal is operated, the status lamp will go off and the engine speed returns to the previous conditions.

### (5) Maintenance pilot lamp

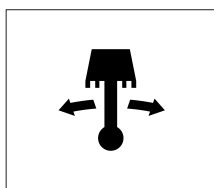


85A3CD110

- ① This lamp lights up when consumable parts are in need of replacement. It means that the change or replacement interval of parts is 30 hours from the required change interval.
- ② Check the message in maintenance information of main menu. Also, this lamp lights up for 3 minutes when the start switch is switched to the ON position

※ Refer to page 3-27.

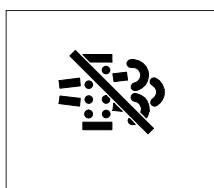
### (6) Boom swing pilot lamp



HX603CD82

- ① This lamp lights up when the boom offset switch is pressed.
- ※ Refer to page 3-42-1.

### (7) DPF regeneration inhibit warning lamp

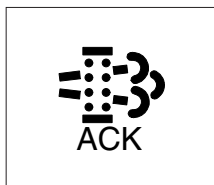


85A3CD107

- ① This warning lamp indicates, when illuminated, the DPF switch is pushed inhibit position, therefore automatic and manual regeneration can not occur.

※ Refer to page 3-39 for the DPF switch.

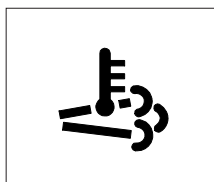
(8) DPF regeneration acknowledge warning lamp



85A3CD108

- ① This warning lamp will light up while the regeneration function is operating.
- ② Also, this lamp will go off when the regeneration function is completed.

(9) HEST (High exhaust system temperature) warning lamp



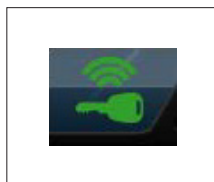
85A3CD109

- ① This warning lamp indicates, when illuminated, that exhaust temperatures are high due to regeneration of the DPF.
- ② The lamp will also illuminate during a manual regeneration.
- ③ When this lamp is illuminated, be sure the exhaust pipe outlet is not directed at any surface or material that can melt, burn, or explode.

**▲ When this lamp is illuminated, the exhaust gas temperature could reach 600°C [1112°F], which is hot enough to ignite or melt common materials, and to burn people.**

**※ The lamp does not signify the need for any kind of equipment or engine service; It merely alerts the equipment operator to high exhaust temperatures. It is common for the lamp to illuminate on and off during normal equipment operation as the engine completes regeneration cycles.**

(10) Smart key pilot lamp (opt)



300A3CD36

- ① This lamp will light up when the engine is started by the start button.
- ② This lamp is red when the authentication fails, it will be green when authentication is successful.

**※ Refer to the page 3-21.**

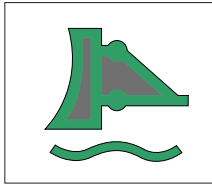
(11) ECO pilot lamp



85A3CD111

- ① This lamp will light up when the ECO switch is pressed.
- ② The machine will be operated in economy conditions.

#### (12) Dozer floating pilot lamp

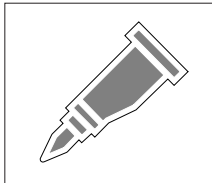


85A3CD112

- ① This lamp will be light up when the dozer floating lever is pressed.

※ Refer to page 3-42-1.

#### (13) Breaker pilot lamp



85A3CD116

- ① This lamp will be light up as conditions below.

- The breaker selection switch is pressed on the membrane switch.
- The AUX switch is pressed to OFF positions.

※ Refer to pages 3-37 and 3-39.

#### (14) Angle dozer pilot lamp (opt)

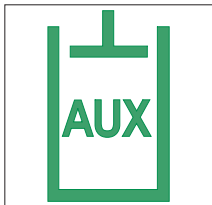


85A3CD113

- ① This lamp will be light up when the AUX switch is pressed to ANGLE DOZER positions.

※ Refer to page 3-39.

#### (15) AUX flowing setting pilot lamp



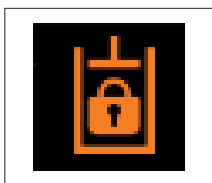
85A3CD114

- ① This lamp will be light up as conditions below.

- The AUX flow setting is selected Enables in the cluster.
- The AUX switch is pressed to AUX positions.

※ Refer to pages 3-32 and 3-39.

#### (16) Auto safety lock pilot lamp-manual



85A3CD114

- ① This lamp will be light up when the safety knob is in the lock positions.

※ Refer to page 3-42.

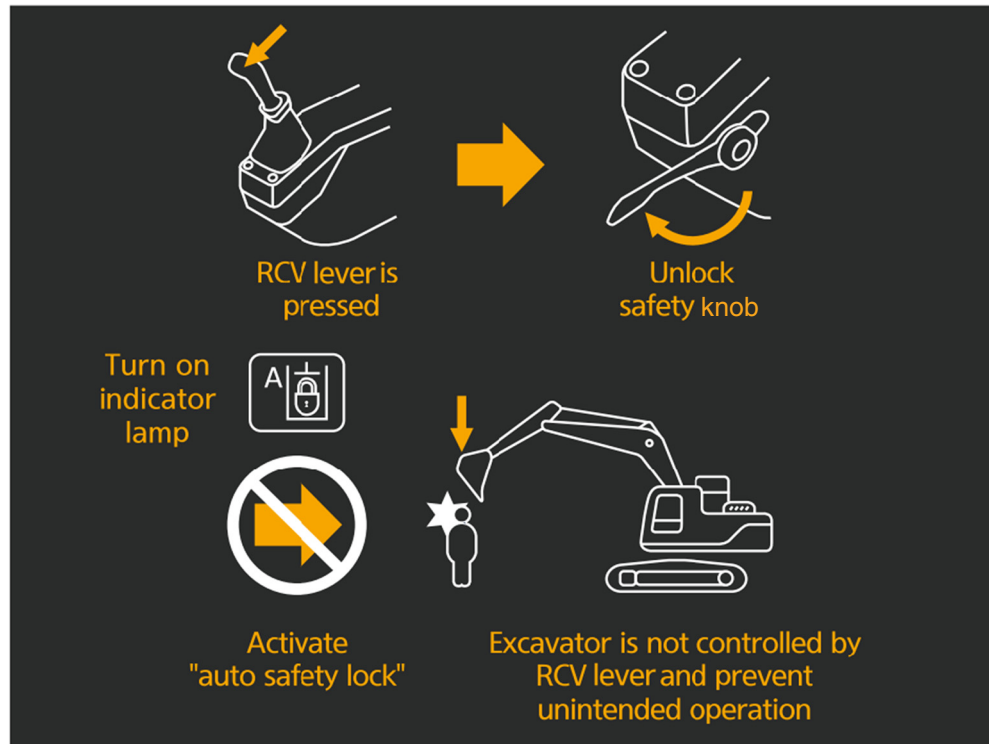
### (17) Auto safety lock pilot lamp-auto



300A3CD37

- ① Auto safety lock system prevents unintended operation of the machine in order to improve safety.
- ② Engine will only start if safety knob is locked.
- ③ If operator unlock safety knob when RCV lever is pressed, machine is not controlled by RCV lever.

**⚠ If operator unlocks safety knob while any control/function is being operated, the machine will move violently. This could cause serious injury, death or damage to property.**



300A3CD38A

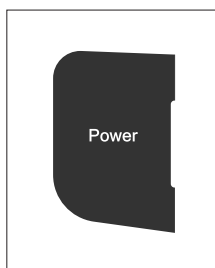
## 6) SWITCHES



85A3CD117

※ When the switches are selected, the pilot lamps are displayed on the LCD. Refer to the page 3-10 for details.

### (1) Power mode switch



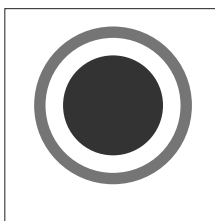
85A3CD117A

① This switch is to select the machine power mode and when pressed, the power mode pilot lamp will be displayed on the section of the monitor.

- P : Heavy duty power work.
- S : Standard power work.

② The pilot lamp changes S → P → S in this order.

### (2) Select switch



85A3CD117B

① This switch is used to select or change the menu and input value.

② Knob push

- Long (over 2 sec) : Return to the operation screen
- Medium (0.5~2 sec) : Return to the previous screen
- Short (below 0.5 sec) : Select menu

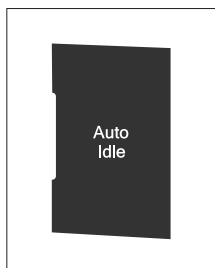
③ Knob rotation

This knob changes menu and input value.

- Right turning : Down direction / Increase input value
- Left turning : Up direction / Decreased input value



### (3) Auto idle/ buzzer stop switch



85A3CD117C

① This switch is used to activate or cancel the auto idle function.

※ **Refer to page 3-11 for details.**

② The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.

In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared.

### (4) Buzzer stop switch

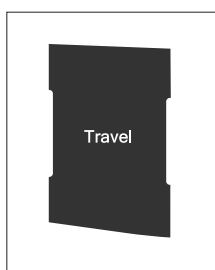


85A3CD117D

① The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.



In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared.

### (5) Travel speed control switch

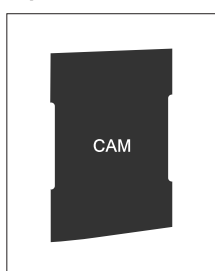


85A3CD117E

① This switch is used to select the travel speed alternatively.

-  : Low speed
-  : High speed

### (6) Escape/ Camera switch

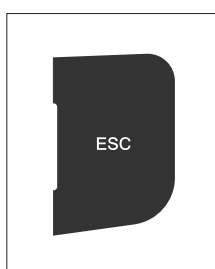


85A3CD117F

① In the operation screen, pushing this switch will display the view of the camera on the machine (if equipped).

※ **Please refer to page 3-32 for the camera.**

### (7) Escape switch



85A3CD117G

① This switch is used to return to the previous menu or parent menu.

## 7) MAIN MENU

### · Operation screen



85A3CD159



HX603CD32B



HX603CD32C

Tap  
M or  
Press  
ESC/  
CAM

### Main menu screen



85A3CD118

### Sub menu screen



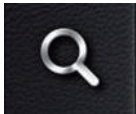



85A3CD119



85A3CD120

※ Please refer to select switch, page 3-15 for selection and change of menu and input value.

## (1) Structure

No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description
1	 Monitoring 55I3CD51AK	Active fault - Machine Active fault - Engine Logged fault - Machine Logged fault - Engine Monitoring (Analog) Monitoring (Digital) - Input Monitoring (Digital) - Output	MCU ECU MCU ECU Machine information Switch status Output status
2	 Management 55I3CD51BK	ESL mode setting Automatic engine shutdown Change password AUX flow setting Option attach Maintenance information Machine Information A/S phone number Service menu	ESL mode setting, Smart key setting One time, Always, Disabled Password change 2 way, 4 way Setting option attachment Replacement, Change interval oils and filters Cluster, MCU, Engine, Machine A/S phone number, A/S phone number change Delete logged faults, Software download, Operating hour, power shift DPF filter replacement, AVCU setting
3	 Display 55I3CD51CK	Clock Screen type Brightness setting Unit setting Language Calibration	Clock A type, B type, C type Manual, Auto Temperature, Pressure 12 language Calibrating the touch screen
4	 Utilities 55I3CD51DK	Camera setting Mode Video	Number of active, Display order, Camera No. Operation mode select Play music and video file

## (2) Monitoring

### ① Active fault - Machine



- The active faults of the MCU can be checked by this menu.

### ② Active fault - Engine



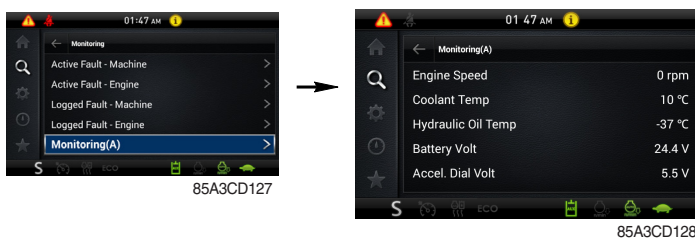
- The active faults of engine ECU can be checked by this menu.

### ③ Logged fault - Machine/Engine



- The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECU can be checked by this menu.
- Only for the service person.

### ④ Monitoring (Analog)



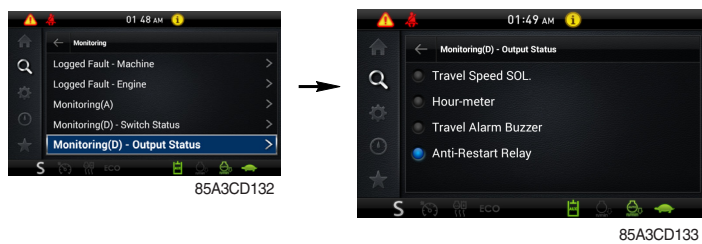
- The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.

### ⑤ Monitoring (Digital) - Input



- The switch status can be confirmed by this menu.
- The activated switches are blue light up.

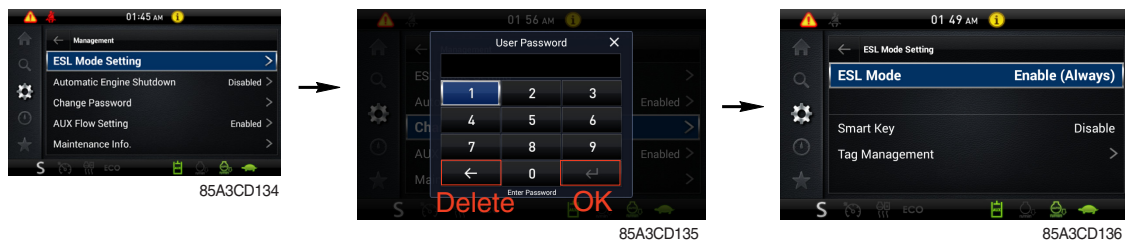
### ⑥ Monitoring (Digital) - Output



- The output status can be confirmed by this menu.
- The output pilot lamps are blue light up.

### (3) Management

#### ① ESL mode setting



#### · ESL mode setting

- ESL : Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is designed to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- When you Enable the ESL mode, the password will be required when the starting switch is turned to the on position.
- **Disable** : ESL function is disabled and password is not required to start engine.
- **Enable (always)** : The password is required whenever the operator starts engine.
- **Enable (Interval)** : The password is required when the operator starts engine first.  
But the operator can restart the engine within the interval time without inputting the password.  
The interval time can be set maximum 2 days.

※ **Default password** : 00000

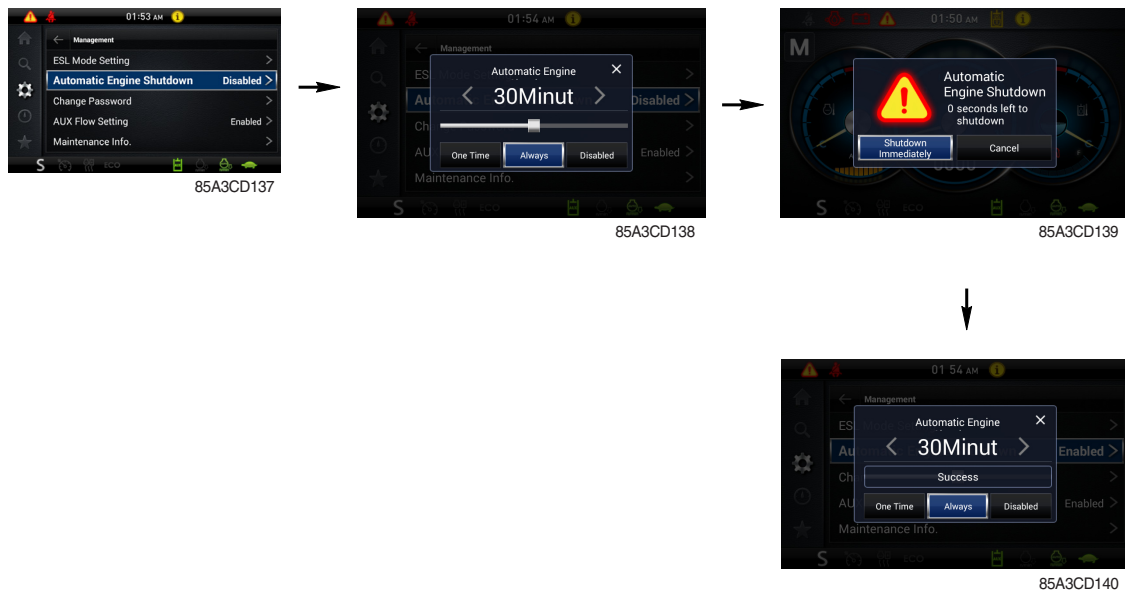
※ **Password length** : 5~10 digit

- **Smart key (option)** : Smart key is registered when equipped with optional smart key. If smart key is not inside of the cabin, authentication process fails and the password is needed.

#### ※ **Engine Starting Condition**

Case	ESL Mode	Smart Key	Condition
1	Disable	Disable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started without password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started without password input.
2	Disable	Enable	If Smart Key is enabled, ESL Mode is automatically enabled. This Case 2 work the same as the Case 4.
3	Enable	Disable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started with password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started with password input.
4	Enable	Enable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started without password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started with password input.

## ② Automatic engine shutdown



The automatic engine shutdown function can be set by this menu.

### a. Once (one time)

- Automatic shutdown function set Once when key-on or engine operation condition.
  - Key-off when the shutdown button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
  - Shift automatic shutdown function to Disable when the cancel button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
- Keep Disable for the automatic shutdown function when key-off after key-on again or start engine.

### b. Always (continuous use)

- Automatic shutdown function set Always when key-on or engine operation condition.
  - Key-off when the shutdown button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
  - Shift automatic shutdown function to Disable when when the cancel button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
- Keep Always for the automatic shutdown function when key-off after key-on again or start engine.

### c. Disable

- Disable the engine automatic shutdown function.

### ③ Change password

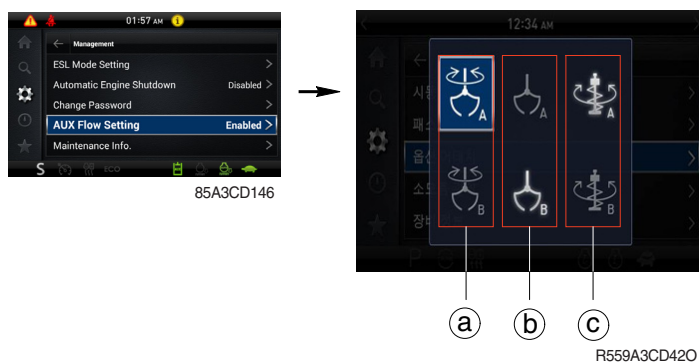
- The password is 5~10 digits.



※ Before first use, please set user password and owner password in advance for machine security.

### ④ AUX flow setting

#### a. Option attach selection



- Three kinds of option attachment can be selected by this menu.

① Rotary Grapple (Equipped with 4 way option)

② Grapple (Equipped with 2 or 4 way option)

③ Auger (Equipped with 2 or 4 way option)

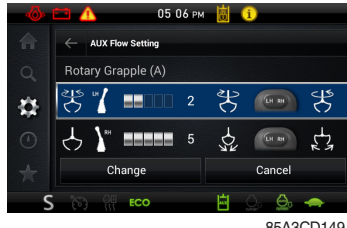
※ There are two user modes (type A or B) in each option attach.



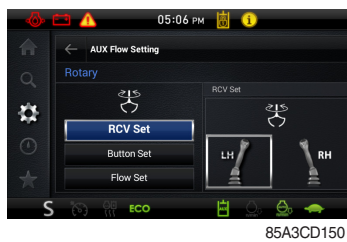
## b. Proportional flow control setting

User can set preferable value of each option attachment by this menu.

### a) Rotary setting



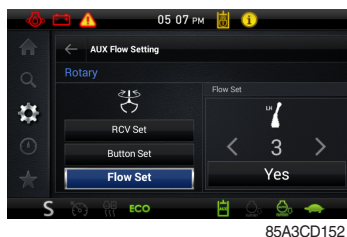
- Select Rotary  
RCV, button and flow can be set by this menu



- RCV setting
  - Enable set LH or RH RCV for rotary operation.
  - Example :  
Select LH for rotary ->  
RH set for grapple automatically.

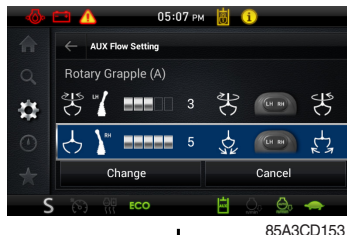


- Button setting (CW rotation)
  - Enable set LH or RH button for CW or CCW rotation.
  - Example :  
Select LH for CW rotation ->  
RH set for CCW rotation automatically



- Flow setting
  - Enable set from level 1 to level 5.
  - Example :  
Select level 3.
  - Press Yes after flow setting.

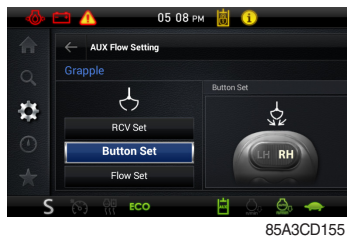
## b) Grapple setting



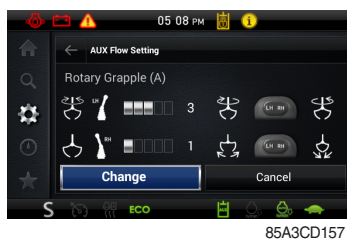
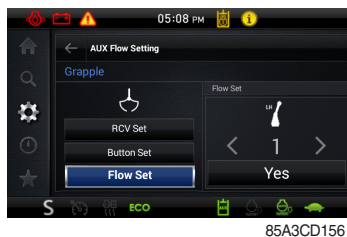
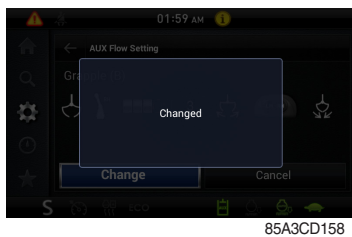
- Select grapple  
RCV, button and flow can be set by this menu



- RCV setting
  - Enable set LH or RH RCV for grapple operation.
  - Example :  
Select RH for grapple ->  
LH set for rotary automatically.



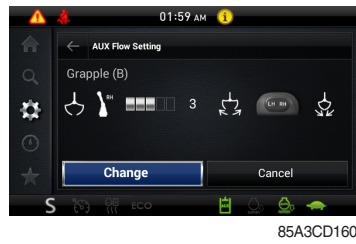
- Button setting (Close)
  - Enable set LH or RH button for close or open.
  - Example :  
Select RH for Close ->  
LH set for open automatically



- Flow setting
  - Enable set from level 1 to level 5.
  - Example :  
Select level 1.
  - Press Yes after flow setting.
- Save setting value
  - Enable save setting value by pressing change (Change) button.

- Setting value saved once, it memorized in each icon and the last setting value is activated.
- Saved setting can be used by pressing Icon button only.
- There are two kinds (A and B) in each option attach setting and six kinds of option attach setting can be saved totally (2 of 4 way, 4 of 2 way).

### c. Confirmation



Previous setting value can be checked by following procedure.


- Menu > Management > AUX flow setting

a) Rotary setting

- Rotary RCV : LH
- Rotary flow level : 3
- CW rotation : LH
- CCW rotation : RH

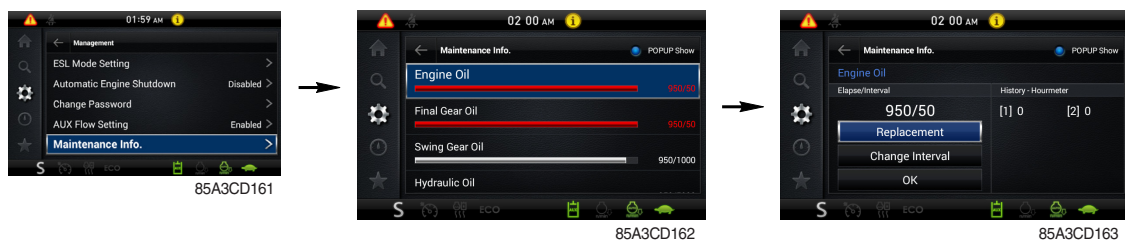
b) Grapple setting

- Grapple RCV : RH
- Grapple flow level : 3
- Open : LH
- Close : RH

AUX flowing setting pilot lamp (  ) is activated on the lower side of the main screen as below conditions.

- The AUX switch is pressed to the AUX position and the AUX flow setting is selected Enabled.

## ⑤ Maintenance information

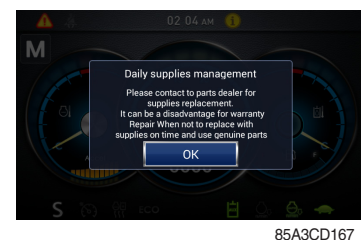


- Elapse : Maintenance elapsed time.
  - Interval : The change intervals can be changed in hour increments of 50.
  - History-Hour : Maintenance replacement history.
  - Replacement : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).
- ※ Refer to section, Maintenance chart for further information of maintenance interval.

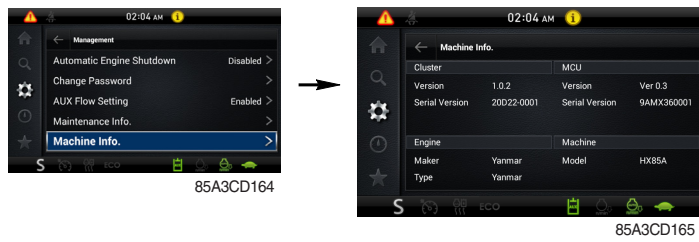
- User can be set to pop-up the replacement parts that residual time is less than 50 hours based on the replacement interval.
  - Pop-up the replacement parts list once when start switch is key-on.



- Please contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer for supplies replacement. It can be a disadvantage for warranty repair when not to replace with supplies on time and use genuine parts.



## ⑥ Machine Information



- This can confirm the identification of the cluster, MCU, engine and machine.

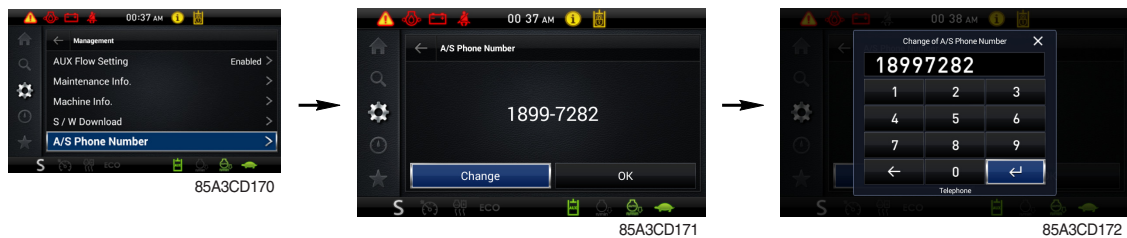
## ⑦ S/W download



- Display and update software version about operating system, application, image and font through this menu.

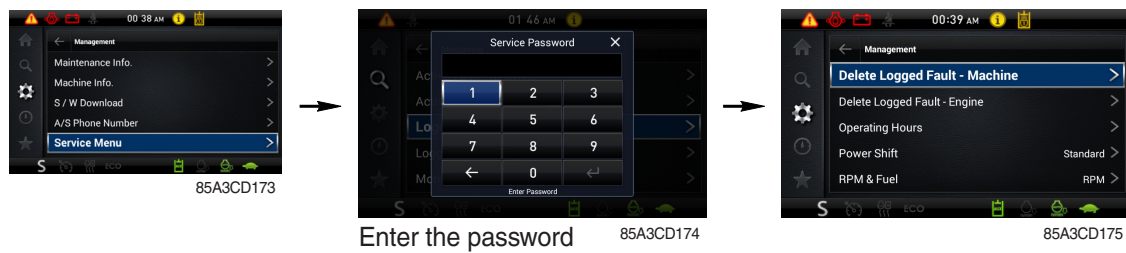
※ Do not turn off the start switch when update process is proceeding.

## ⑧ A/S phone number



- The A/S phone number can be checked and changed.

## ⑨ Service menu



- Delete logged fault : Logged faults of MCU or engine ECU can be deleted. (only when the engine is stopped)
- Operating hours : Operating hours since the machine line out can be checked.
- Power shift : Set power shift mode (standard/option)
- RPM & Fuel : The engine rpm or fuel gauge can be display on the center of the cluster operation screen.
- PRM number : The engine rpm number can be display or not on the center of the cluster operation screen.
- DPF filter replacement : Engine ECM parameter can be initialized when the DPF cleaning process is finished.
- AVCU setting : Selection of the 2 way, 4 way, angle dozer can be set when the machine line out.

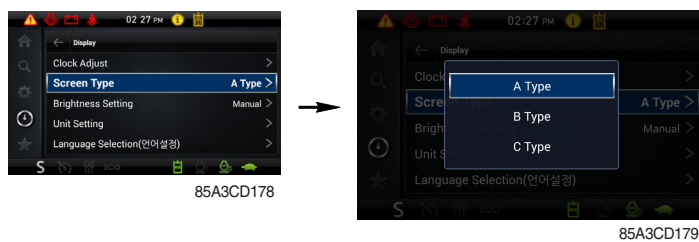
#### (4) Display

##### ① Clock



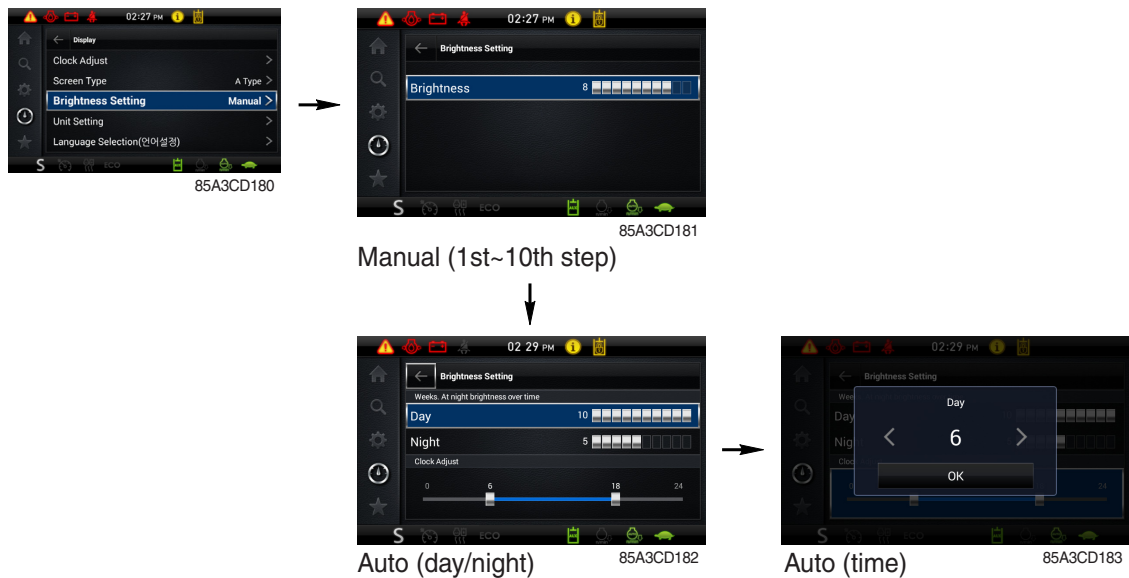
- The first row of boxes indicate Year/Month/Day.
- The second row shows the current time. (AM, PM/0:00~12:59)

##### ② Screen type



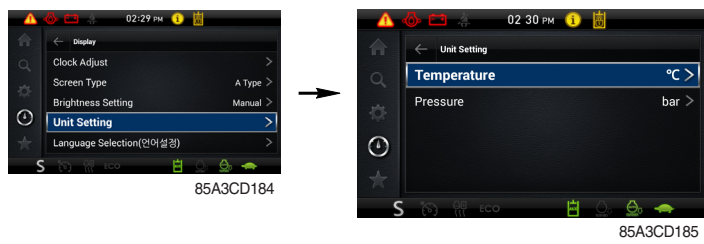
- The screen type (A,B,C) of the LCD can be selected by this menu.

##### ③ Brightness setting calibration



- If "Auto" is chosen, brightness for day and night can be set accordingly. Also, users can define which an operation interval belongs to day and night.

#### ④ Unit setting



- Temperature : °C ↔ °F
- Pressure : bar ↔ MPa ↔ kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> ↔ psi

#### ⑤ Language



- User can select preferable language and all displays are changed to the selected language.



## (5) Utilities

### ① Camera setting

- Three cameras can be installed on the machine and the display order can be set by this menu.
- If the camera was not equipped, this menu is not useful.



- In the operation screen, if the ESC/CAM switch is pushed, rear view camera display or stop.
- Turning the select switch in clockwise direction, the next ordered will be shown and in counter-clockwise direction, the previously ordered will be shown. Also, you can change camera channel using touch the screen.
- Push the select switch or touch the screen, the displayed screen will be enlargement.



### ② Mode



- When this cluster's buttons are not work, you can control using touch screen instead of these buttons.
- You can only control in this mode screen.

### ③ Video

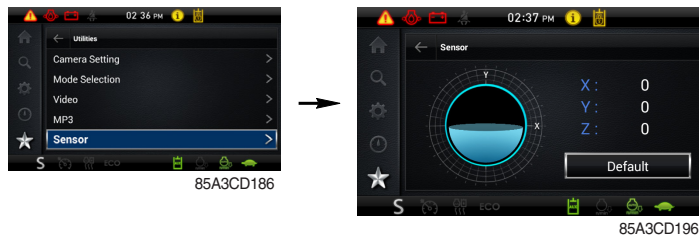
- Play MP4 or codec file of external hard disk through USB port.
- The USB port is located under the cluster.



- Over 1100 engine rpm, the screen turns into the operation screen with MP4 or codec file playing for the safety.

No.	Function	Control	No.	Function	Control
1	Display list	Touch	6	After 10 sec	Touch
2	Before 10 sec	Touch	7	Stop	ESC switch or touch
3	Previous track	Touch	8	Mute	Touch
4	Play/pause	Touch	9	Sound volume	Select switch or touch
5	Next track	Touch	10	Playing time	-

#### ④ Clinometer



- When the machine is on the flatland, if you touch "initialization" on cluster, the values of X, Y will reset to "0".
- You can confirm tilt of machine in cluster's operating screen.

#### ⑤ Manual



- You can read the manual of the cluster on the monitor.

## 2. CLUSTER (MAHCINE SERIAL NO. : #0491-)

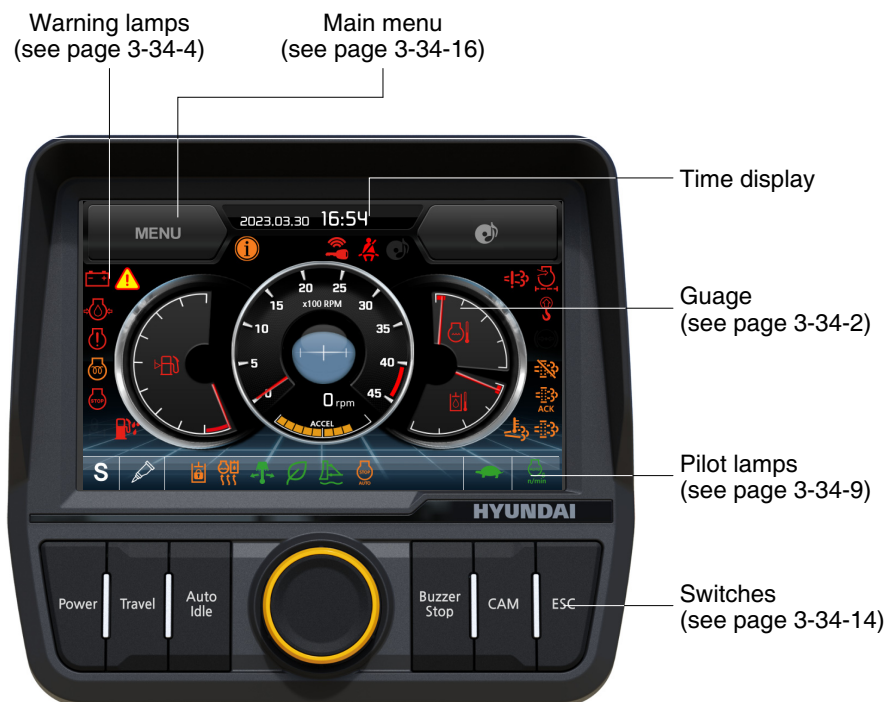
### 1) STRUCTURE

The cluster consists of LCD and switches as shown below. The LCD is to warn the operator in case of abnormal machine operation or conditions for the appropriate operation and inspection.

Also, The LCD is to set and display for modes, monitoring and utilities with the switches.

The switches or touch screen are to set the machine operation modes.

- ※ The cluster installed on this machine does not entirely guarantee the condition of the machine. Daily inspection should be performed according to chapter 6, Maintenance.
- ※ When the cluster provides a warning immediately check the problem, and perform the required action.



85A3CD216

- ※ The warning lamp pops up, lights ON (on the left-top side) and the buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.  
The warning lamp lights ON until the problem is cleared. Refer to page 3-34-4 for details.

## 2) GAUGE

### (1) Operation screen

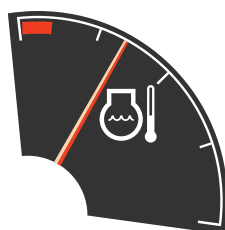
When you first turn starting switch ON, the operation screen will appear.





HX60A3CD101A

- |                             |                    |              |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 Engine coolant temp gauge | 3 Fuel level gauge | 5 Accel dial |
| 2 Hydraulic oil temp gauge  | 4 Engine rpm gauge | 6 Clinometer |

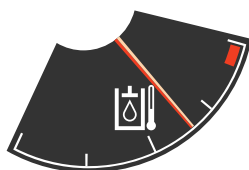
### (2) Engine coolant temperature gauge





290F3CD53

- ① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.
  - Black range : General state
  - Red range : Engine overheated state
- ② If the indicator is in the red range or  lamp lights ON in red, turn OFF the engine and check the engine cooling system.
- ※ If the gauge indicates the red range or  lamp lights ON even though the machine is in the normal condition range, check the electric device as this can be caused by poor connection of sensor or connector, and poor grounding of the instrument, etc.

### (3) Hydraulic oil temperature gauge





290F3CD54

- ① This gauge indicates the temperature of hydraulic oil.
  - Black range : 40-105°C (104-221°F)
  - Red range : Above 105°C (221°F)
- ② If the indicator is in the red range or  lamp lights ON in red, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and check the cause of the problem.
- ※ If the gauge indicates the red range or  lamp lights ON in red even though the machine is in the normal condition range, check the electric device as this can be caused by poor connection of sensor.

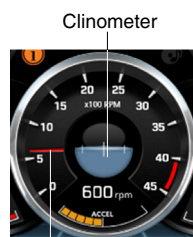
#### (4) Fuel level gauge



HX60A3CD55A

- ① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.
  - Black range : 11% or more
  - Red range : below 11%
- ② Fill the fuel when in the red range, or  lamp lights ON in red.
- ※ If the gauge indicates the red range or  lamp lights ON in red even though the machine is in the normal condition range, check the electric device as this can be caused by poor connection of sensor.

#### (5) Engine rpm gauge and clinometer



Engine rpm

HX60A3CD105K

- ① This displays the engine speed.
- ② This displays the tilt of machine.

#### (6) Accel dial gauge



290F3CD59

- ① This gauge indicates the level of accel dial from 0 to 10 step.

### 3) COMMUNICATION ERROR AND LOW VOLTAGE WARNING POP-UP

#### (1) Communication error pop-up



HX60A3CD107A

- ① Cluster displays this communication error pop-up when it has communication error with MCU.
- ② Communication error pop-up displays at operation screen only. Just buzzer alarm at the other screen.
- ③ If communication with MCU become normal state, it will disappear automatically.

#### (2) Low voltage warning pop-up



HX60A3CD108

- ① Cluster displays this low voltage warning pop-up when the battery voltage is low.
- ② Low voltage warning pop-up displays at operation screen only. Just buzzer alarm at the other screen.
- ③ This pop-up will disappear with using touch screen or buzzer stop switch. While the battery voltage is low, buzzer sounds every minute.
- ④ When the battery voltage is higher than 11.5 V, the pop-up off.

#### 4) WARNING LAMPS






85A3CD218

※ Each warning lamp on the left-top of the LCD pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the each warning is happened. The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and lights up when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or the pop-up is touched. And the buzzer stops. Refer to page 3-34-15 for the switch.

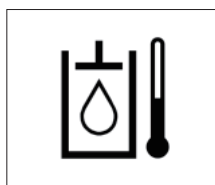
##### (1) Engine coolant temperature warning lamp





290F3CD61

- ① The  lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the engine coolant temperature is over 110°C or more.
- ② The pop-up  lamp moves to the original position and lights up when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or pop-up is touched. Also, the buzzer stops and  lamp keeps ON.
- ③ Check the cooling system when the lamp keeps ON.

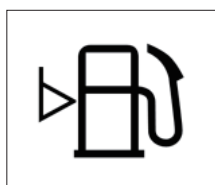
##### (2) Hydraulic oil temperature warning lamp



290F3CD62

- ① This warning lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the hydraulic oil temperature is over 105°C.
- ② The pop-up  lamp moves to the original position and lights ON when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or pop-up is touched. Also, the buzzer stops and  lamp keeps ON.
- ③ Check the hydraulic oil level and hydraulic oil cooling system.

##### (3) Fuel level warning lamp



290F3CD63

- ① This warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds when the level of fuel is below 11%.
- ② Fill the fuel immediately when the lamp is ON.



#### (4) Emergency warning lamp



290F3CD64

① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when each of the below warnings occurs.

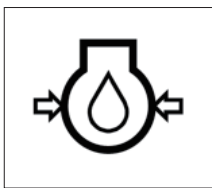
- MCU input voltage abnormal
- Accel dial circuit abnormal or open

※ The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and lights ON when the buzzer stop switch is pushed or pop-up is touched. Also the buzzer will stop.

This is same as following warning lamps.

② When this warning lamp lights up, machine must be checked and serviced immediately.

#### (5) Engine oil pressure warning lamp



290F3CD65

① This lamp lights up when the engine oil pressure is low.

② If the lamp lights up, shut OFF the engine immediately. Check oil level.

#### (6) Check engine warning lamp

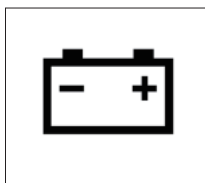


290F3CD66

① Warning lamp is turned ON when the engine must be checked.

※ When the warning lamp is turned ON, stop the machine and find the cause for repair.

#### (7) Battery charging warning lamp

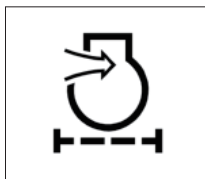


290F3CD67

① This warning lamp lights up when the battery charging voltage is low.

② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp lights up.

#### (8) Air cleaner warning lamp



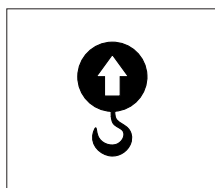
290F3CD68

① This warning lamp lights up when the air cleaner is clogged.

② Check, clean or replace the filter.



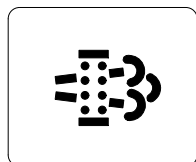
### (9) Overload warning lamp (opt)



HX603CD80

- ① When the machine is overloaded, the overload warning lamp lights up when the overload switch is ON. (if equipped)
- ② Reduce the machine load.

### (10) DPF (diesel particulate filter) warning lamp






2609A3CD19

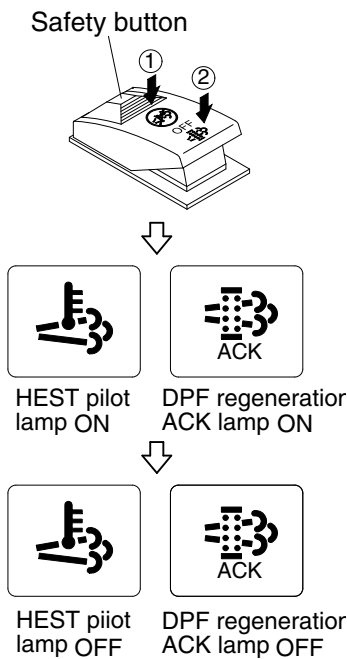
- ① This warning lamp lights up or go off when the regeneration is needed.
- ② This warning lamp lights up while DPF regeneration inhibit switch is in "Regeneration inhibited" state, when stationary regeneration is permitted.
- ③ This warning lamp lights up during reset regeneration standby or in back up mode.
- ④ This warning lamp blinks during reset regeneration standby DPF regeneration inhibit switch is in "Regeneration inhibited" state.

#### ※ Consequences of delaying regeneration

- Poor performance caused by increasing exhaust gas pressure.
- Higher fuel consumption
- Shorter filter lifetime

Condition	Warning lamp			Remedy
	DPF 	Check engine  (pop up)	Stop engine  (pop up)	
Normal	Off	Off	Off	· Automatic regeneration
Soot low	On	Off	Off	· Push DPF switch to OFF position if DPF switch is in inhibit position. (see 3-39 page) · Engine power may be reduced automatically (soot medium)
Soot midium	Blink	Off	Off	
Soot high	On	On	Off	· Engine power and speed will be reduced automatically · Initiate a manual regeneration
Stop	On	Off	On	· Stop the engine immediatary. · Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.

## ※ Manual regeneration method of DPF



85A3CD213

※ **Manual regeneration must be operated in a fireproof area.**

① Stop and park the machine.

② The accel dial to the lowerest position and operate the engine in idling.

③ Pull the safety button and push the switch to position ② to initiate the manual regeneration of DPF.

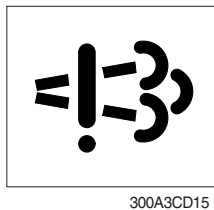
※ **Refer to page 3-39 for the switch operation.**

※ **The engine speed may increase gradually to high idle rpm and DPF regeneration begins and it will take approximately 25~30 minutes.**

④ When the manual regeneration starts, the DPF warning lamp light go off and the regeneration acknowledge lamp and HEST warning lamp will light up while the regeneration function is operating.

⑤ The regeneration acknowledge lamp and HEST warning lamp will light OFF when the regeneration function is completed.

## (11) Emission system fail warning lamp



① This warning lamp indicates there are faults related to the emission system.

② The lamp lights up when each of the below warnings is happened.

a. The EGR valve malfunctions.

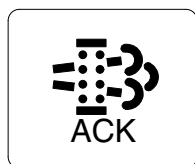
b. Electrical malfunction of the EGR control sensors.  
(disconnection, short)

c. Tampering with the EGR control sensors.

③ **This warning lamp can be shown together with DPF warning lamp or engine fail lamp or engine stop warning lamp when DPF system is diagnosed.**

※ **Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.**

## (12) DPF regeneration acknowledge warning lamp



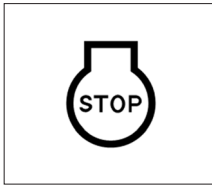
① This warning lamp lights up stationary regeneration is in process.

② This warning lamp lights up, when stationary regeneration is in process after DPF regeneration request switch is pressed and hold for more than 3 seconds.

③ This warning lamp blinks when stationary regeneration standby or regeneration interlock switch is in "regeneration permitted (interlock enabled) status.

④ This warning lamp blinks while stationary regeneration standby or back mode, when DPF regeneration inhibit switch in "Regeneration permitted" status and regeneration interlock switch is in regeneration permitted status.

### (13) Stop engine warning lamp



290F3CD252

- ① If this warning lamp lights up, stop the engine immediately and check the engine.
  - ② Check the fault codes on the monitor.
- ※ **Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.**

### (14) Water in fuel warning lamp



HX60A3CD110

- ① This warning lamp lights up when the water separator is full of water or malfunctioning.
- ② When this lamp lights up, stop the machine and drain water from the water separator.

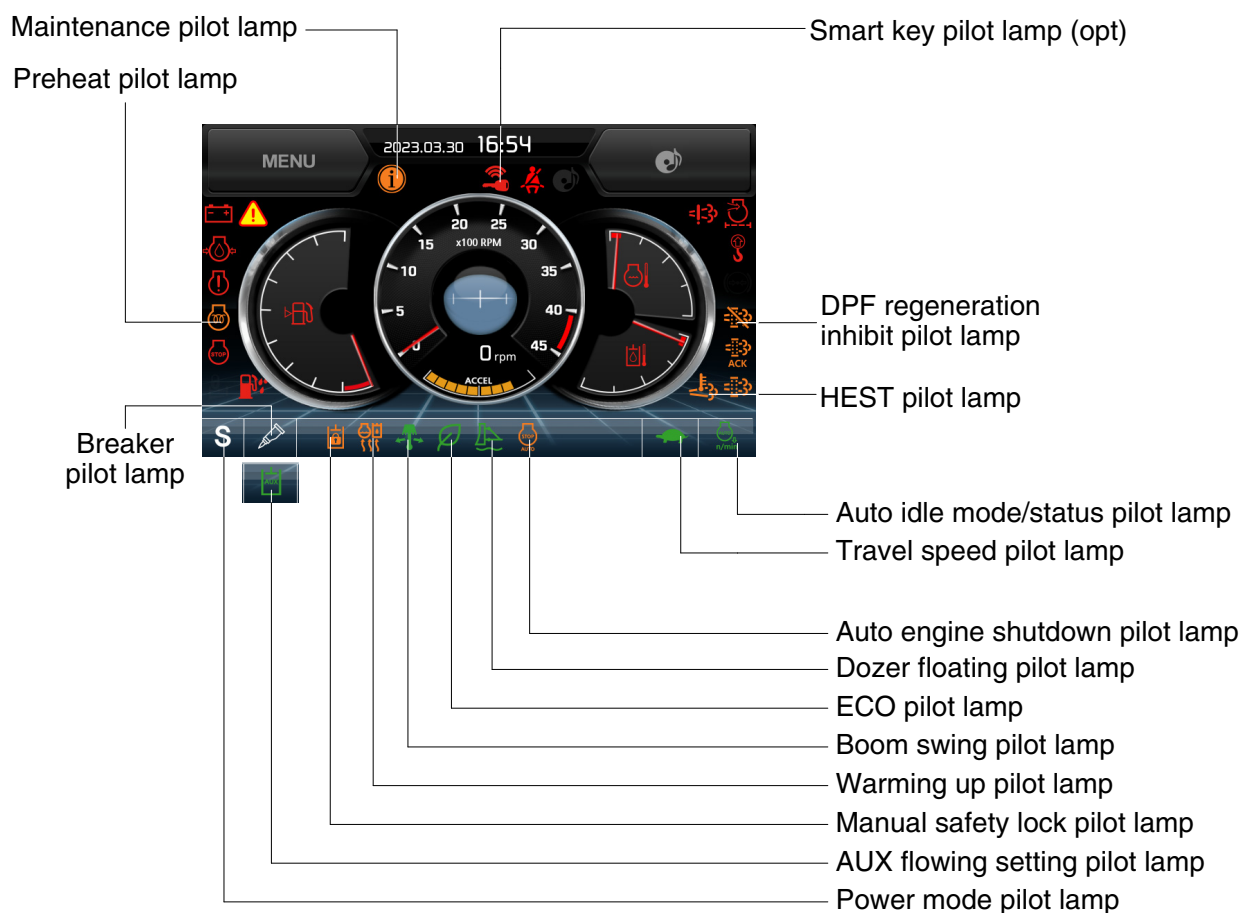
### (15) Seat belt reminder warning lamp



300A3CD25

- ① When operator does not fasten the operator's seat belt, the seat belt reminder warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds.
- ② Fasten the seat belt.

## 5) PILOT LAMPS



85A3CD217

### (1) Mode pilot lamps

No	Mode	Pilot lamp	Selected mode
1	Power mode		Heavy duty power work mode
			Standard power mode
2	Travel mode		Low speed traveling
			High speed traveling
3	Auto idle mode		Auto idle mode
			Auto idle status

### (2) Preheat pilot lamp



290F3CD79

- ① Turning the start key switch to the ON position starts preheating in cold weather.
- ② Start the engine after this lamp goes OFF.

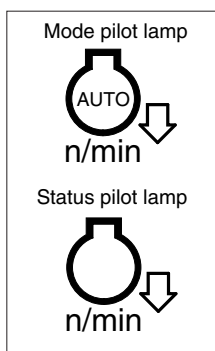
### (3) Warming up pilot lamp



290F3CD80

- ① This lamp lights up when the coolant temperature is below 30°C (86°F).
- ② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30°C (86°F), or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

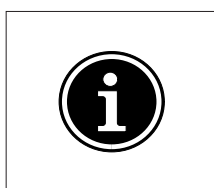
### (4) Auto idle mode/status pilot lamp



85A3CD106

- ① The auto idle mode pilot lamp will light up when the idle mode is selected.
- ② The auto idle status pilot lamp will be ON when all levers and pedals are in the neutral position, and the auto idle mode is selected.
- ③ One of the lever or pedal is operated, the status lamp will go OFF and the engine speed returns to the previous conditions.

### (5) Maintenance pilot lamp

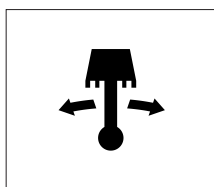


HX60A3CD116

- ① This lamp lights up when consumable parts are in need of replacement. It means that the change or replacement interval of parts is 30 hours from the required change interval.
- ② Check the message in maintenance information of main menu. Also, this lamp lights up for 3 minutes when the start switch is switched to the ON position.

※ Refer to page 3-34-20.

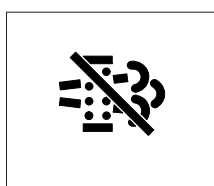
### (6) Boom swing pilot lamp



HX603CD82

- ① This lamp lights up when the boom offset switch is pressed.

### (7) DPF regeneration inhibit pilot lamp

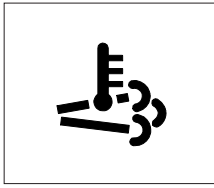


85A3CD107

- ① This pilot lamp indicates, the DPF switch is pushed to the inhibit position, therefore automatic and manual regeneration can not occur.

※ Refer to page 3-39 for the DPF switch.

**(8) HEST (High exhaust system temperature) pilot lamp**



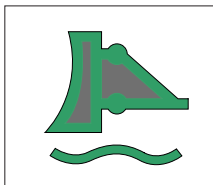
85A3CD109

- ① This pilot lamp indicates, when illuminated, that exhaust temperatures are high due to regeneration of the DPF.
- ② The lamp will also illuminate during a manual regeneration.
- ③ When this lamp is illuminated, be sure the exhaust pipe outlet is not directed at any surface or material that can melt, burn, or explode.

**⚠ When this lamp is illuminated, the exhaust gas temperature could reach 600°C [1112°F], which is hot enough to ignite or melt common materials, and to burn people.**

**※ The lamp does not signify the need for any kind of equipment or engine service; It merely alerts the equipment operator to high exhaust temperatures. It is common for the lamp to illuminate on and off during normal equipment operation as the engine completes regeneration cycles.**

**(9) Dozer floating pilot lamp**

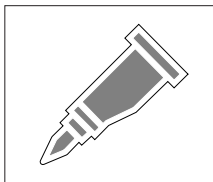


85A3CD112

- ① This lamp will be light up when the dozer floating lever is pressed.

**※ Refer to page 3-42-1.**

**(10) Breaker pilot lamp**



85A3CD116

- ① This lamp will be light up as conditions below.
  - The breaker selection switch is pressed on the membrane switch.
  - The AUX switch is pressed to OFF positions.

**※ Refer to page 3-37 and 3-38.**

**(11) AUX flowing setting pilot lamp**

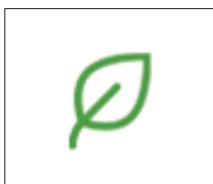


85A3CD114

- ① This lamp will be light up as conditions below.
  - The AUX flow setting is selected Enables in the cluster.
  - The AUX switch is pressed to AUX positions.

**※ Refer to page 3-34-20 and 3-39.**

**(12) ECO pilot lamp**



85A3CD111A

- ① This lamp will light up when the ECO switch is pressed.
- ② The machine will be operated in economy conditions.

### (13) Manual safety lock pilot lamp



140WA3CD37

- ① This lamp lights up when the safety knob is set to the LOCK position.

※ Refer to page 3-42 for the safety knob.

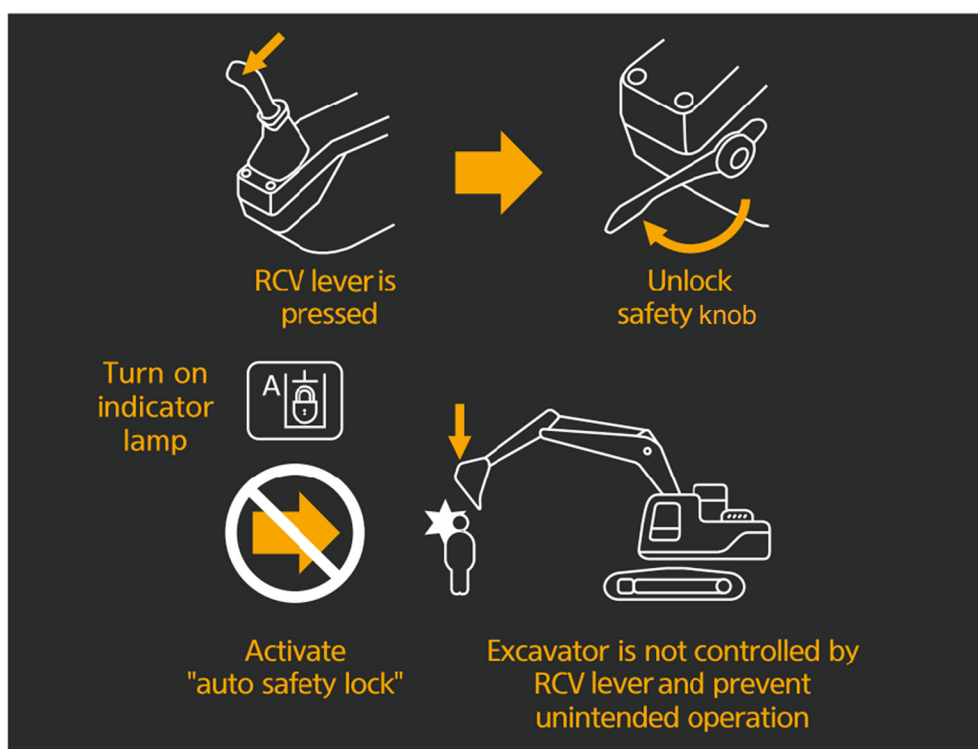
### (14) Auto safety lock pilot lamp



300A3CD37

- ① Auto safety lock system prevents unintended operation of the machine in order to improve safety.  
② Engine will only start if safety knob is locked.  
③ If operator unlock safety knob when RCV lever is pressed, machine is not controlled by RCV lever.

**⚠ If operator unlocks safety knob while any control/function is being operated, the machine will move violently. This could cause serious injury, death or damage to property.**



300A3CD38A

### (15) Auto engine shutdown pilot lamp



220A3CD202A

- ① This lamp lights up when the auto engine shutdown is activated.

※ Refer to page 3-34-25.

(16) Smart key pilot lamp (opt)

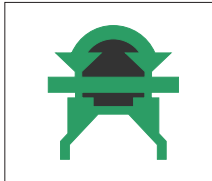


300A3CD36A

- ① This lamp lights up when the engine is started by the start button.
- ② This lamp is red when the authentication fails, it will be green when authentication is successful.

※ **Refer to page 3-34-24.**

(17) Angle dozer pilot lamp (opt)



85A3CD113

- ① This lamp will be light up when the AUX switch is pressed to ANGLE DOZER positions.

※ **Refer to page 3-39.**



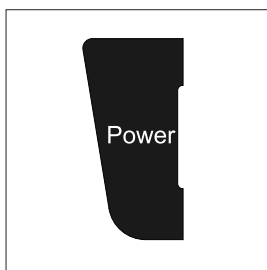
## 6) SWITCHES



85A3CD219

※ When the switches are selected, the pilot lamps are displayed on the LCD. Refer to page 3-34-9 for details.

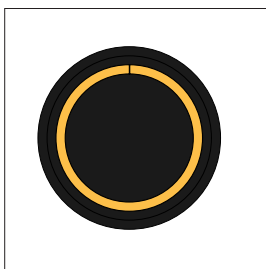
### (1) Power mode switch



HX60A3CD118

- ① This switch is to select the machine power mode and when pressed, the power mode pilot lamp will be displayed on the section of the monitor.
  - P : Heavy duty power work.
  - S : Standard power work.
- ② The pilot lamp changes S → P → S in this order.

### (2) Select switch



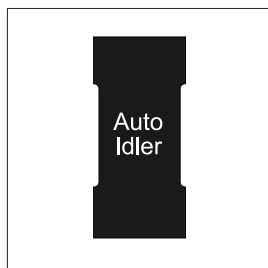
HX60A3CD119

- ① This switch is used to select or change the menu or input value.
- ② Knob push
  - Short (below 0.5 sec) : Select menu
- ③ Knob rotation
 

This knob changes menu and input value.

  - Right turning : Down direction / Increase input value
  - Left turning : Up direction / Decreased input value

### (3) Auto idle switch



HX60A3CD120

① This switch is used to activate or cancel the auto idle function.

※ Refer to page 3-34-10 for details.

### (4) Buzzer stop switch

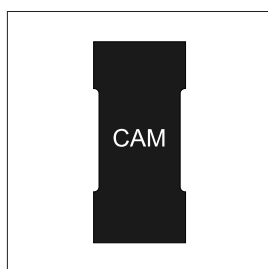


HX60A3CD121

① The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.

In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp lights up until the problem is cleared.

### (5) Camera switch

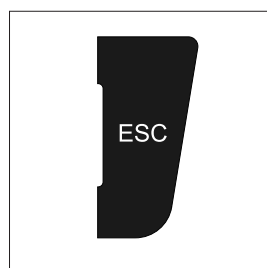


HX60A3CD122

① In the operation screen, pushing this switch will display the view of the camera on the machine (if equipped).

※ Please refer to page 3-34-32 for the camera.

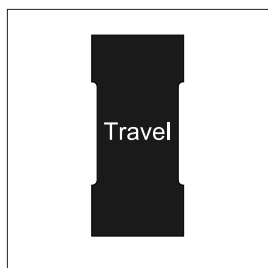
### (6) Escape switch



HX60A3CD123



① This switch is used to return to the previous menu or parent menu.

### (7) Travel speed control switch



HX60A3CD104

① This switch is used to select the travel speed alternatively.

-  : Low speed
-  : High speed

※ Do not change the setting of the travel speed switch while machine is moving. Machine stability may be adversely affected.

⚠ Serious injury or death can result from sudden changes in machine stability.

## 7) MAIN MENU

Main menu screen



HX60A3CD124A



Sub menu screen



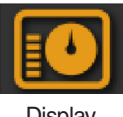



HW60AH3CD125A

※ Please refer to the select switch, page 3-34-14 for selection and change of menus and input values.

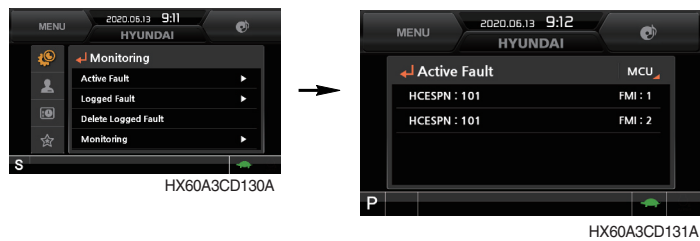
※ In the operation screen, tap MENU or press the select switch to access the sub-menu screen.

### (1) Structure

No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description
1	 Monitoring	Active fault - Machine Active fault - Engine Logged fault - Machine/engine Delete logged fault Monitoring - Machine Monitoring - Switch Monitoring - Output	MCU ECU MCU, ECU MCU, ECU Engine rpm, oil temp, voltage and pressure etc. Digital switch status Digital output status
2	 Management	Maintenance information Breaker flow level AUX flow setting  ESL mode setting Auto engine shutdown Change password Machine information A/S phone number Cluster update CAN update Service menu	Elapsed time, Change interval, Replacement etc. Breaker flow level setting Option atch selection, Proportional flow control setting, Confirmation ESL mode setting One time, Always, Disable Password change Cluster, MCU, Engine, Machine A/S phone number, A/S phone number change Application, System Program download, Update Power shift, Operating hour, Gauge type, Rpm, AVCU set, Language update etc
3	 Display	Clock Brightness Unit Language	Current time set Manual, Auto Temperature, Pressure, Flow, Distance, Volumn 22 kinds
4	 Utilities	Entertainment Camera setting  Clinometer setting Manual Emergency mode	Video/music file playing Setup of number of active cameras, display sequences, and camera numbers Initializing slope sensor Display cluster manual Back-up switch for failed cluster switch and accel dial

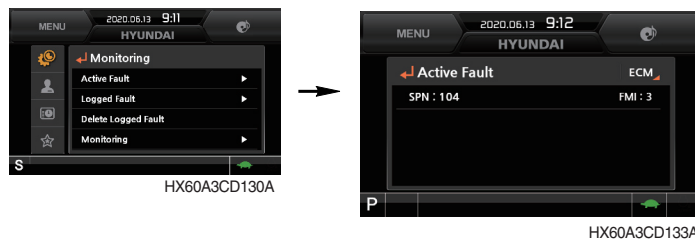
## (2) Monitoring

### ① Active fault - Machine



- The active faults of the machine MCU can be checked by this menu.

### ② Active fault - Engine



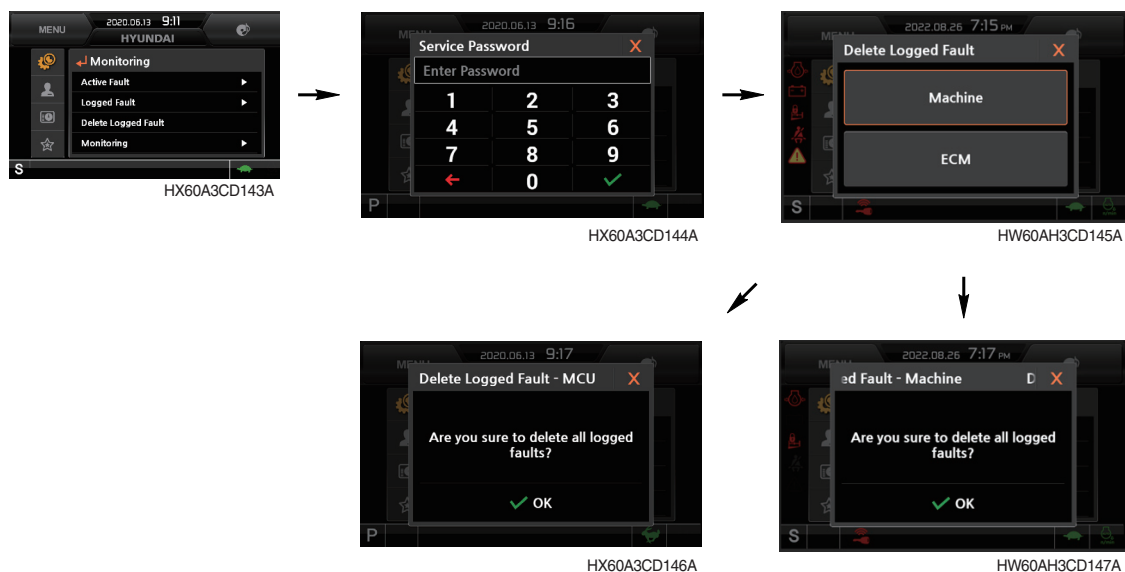
- The active faults of the engine ECU can be checked by this menu.

### ③ Logged fault - Machine/ Engine



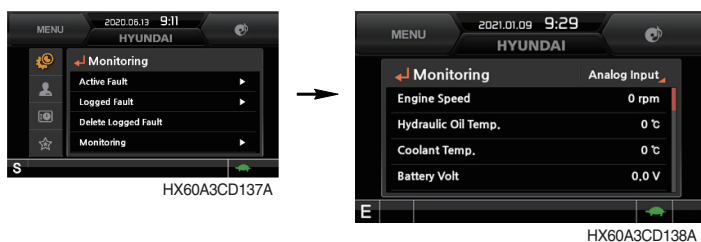
- The logged faults of the machine MCU or engine ECU can be checked by this menu.
- This menu can be used only HCE service man.

#### ④ Delete logged fault



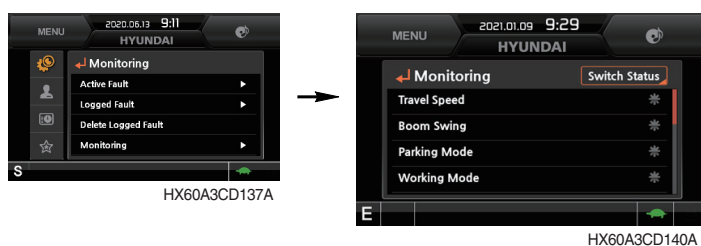
- The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECU can be deleted by this menu.  
(It is possible under the engine stop conditions)

#### ⑤ Monitoring (machine status)



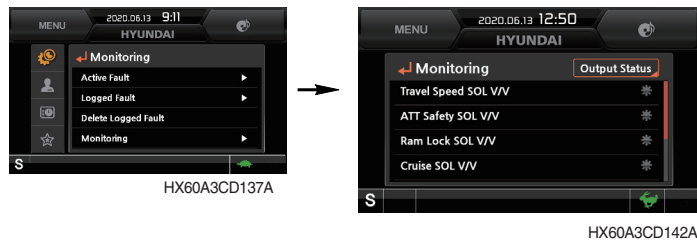
- The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.

#### ⑥ Monitoring (switch status)



- The digital switch status of the machine can be checked by this menu.
- The activated switch will display in blue color.

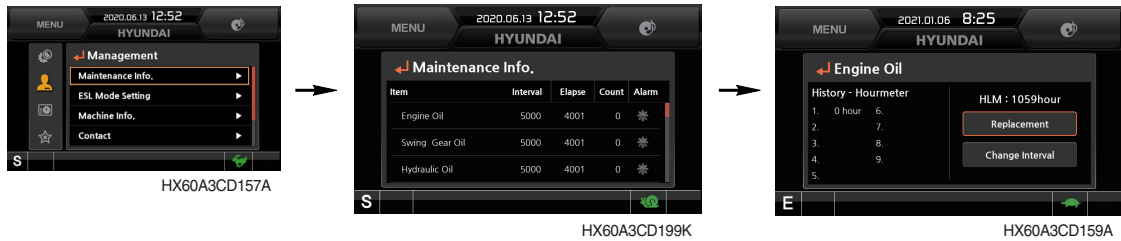
⑦ Monitoring (output status)



- The digital output status of the machine can be checked by this menu.
- The digital output status will display in blue color.

### (3) Management

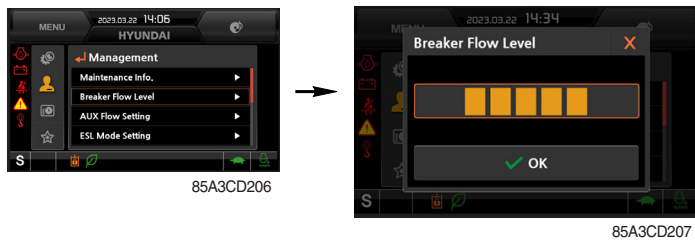
#### ① Maintenance information



- Elapsed time : Display the elapsed time after the maintenance.
- Change interval : The change intervals can be changed in hour increments of 50.
- Change history : Display the change history for the maintenance.
- Replacement : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).
- Change or replace interval

※ Refer to the page 6-16.

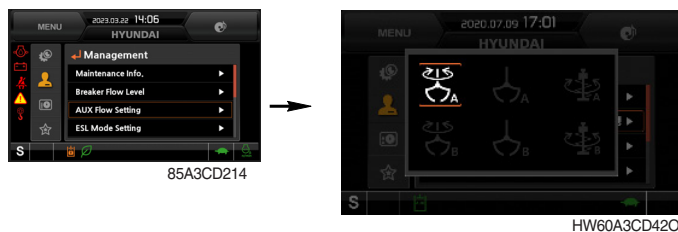
#### ② Breaker flow level



- The breaker flow level can be modulated in 1~5 steps.

#### ③ AUX flow setting

##### a. Option attach selection



- Three kinds of option attachment can be selected by this menu.

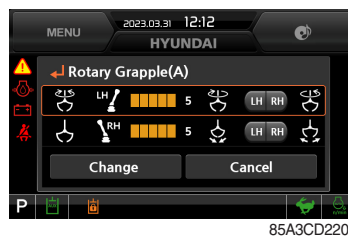
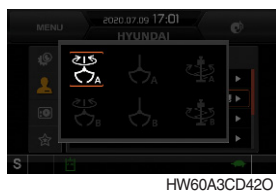
- Rotary grapple (4-way)
- Grapple (2-way)
- Auger (2-way)

※ There are two user modes (type A or B) in each option attachment.

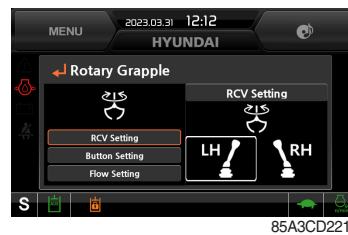
## b. Proportional flow control setting

The preferable value of each option attachment can be set by this menu.

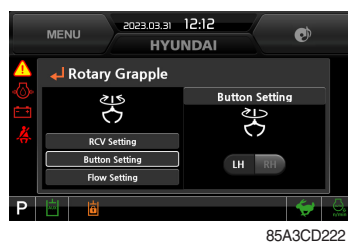
### a) Rotary setting



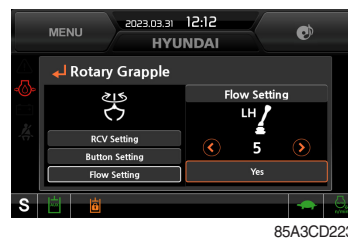
- Select rotary RCV, button and flow can be set by this menu



- RCV setting
  - Enable set LH or RH RCV for rotary operation.
  - Select LH for rotary → RH set for grapple automatically



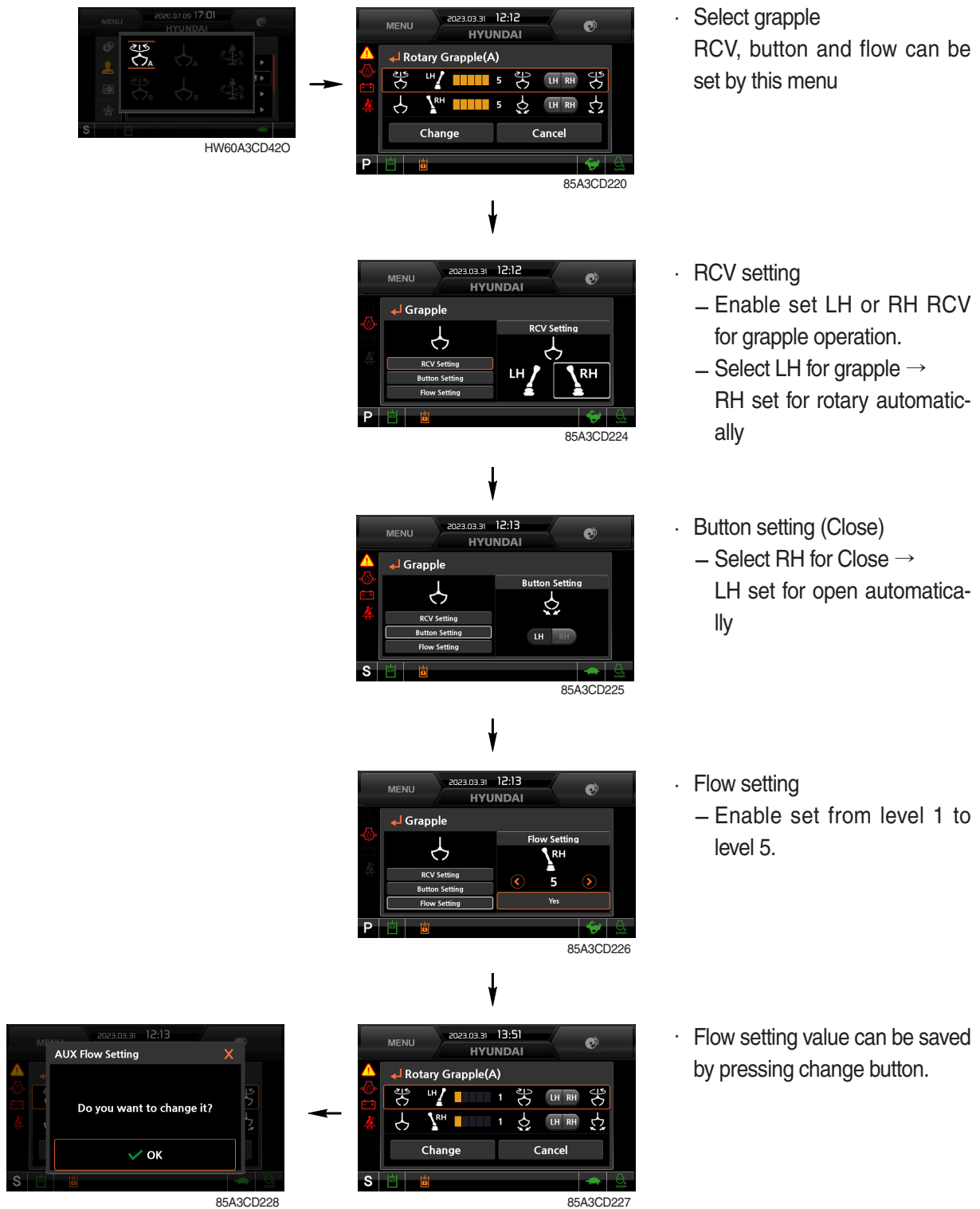
- Button setting (CW rotation)
  - Select LH for CW rotation → RH set for CCW rotation automatically



- Flow setting
  - Enable set from level 1 to level 5.

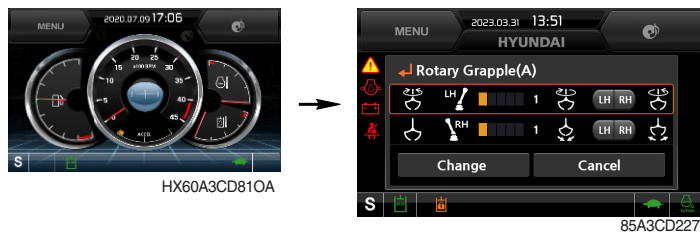



## b) Grapple setting



- ※ Setting value saved once, it memorized in each icon and the last setting value is activated.
- ※ Saved setting can be used by pressing Icon button only.
- ※ There are two kinds (A and B) in each option attach setting and six kinds of option attach setting can be saved totally (2 of 4-way, 4 of 2-way).

### c) Confirmation



- AUX flowing setting pilot lamp (  ) is activated on the lower side of the main screen as below conditions.

※ The AUX switch is pressed to the AUX position and the AUX flow setting is selected Enabled.

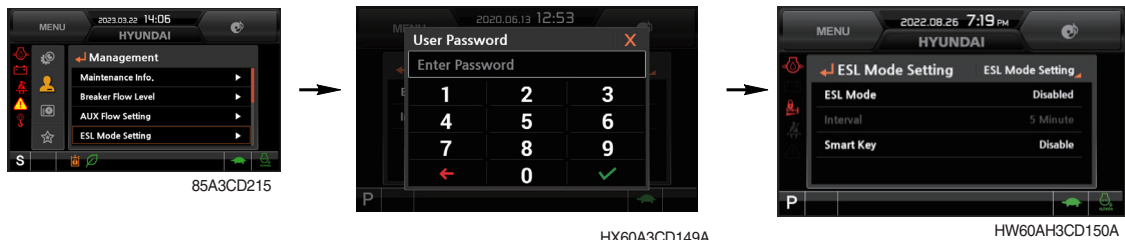
#### a) Rotary setting

- Rotary RCV : LH
- Rotary flow level : 3
- CW rotation : LH
- CCW rotation : RH

#### b) Grapple setting

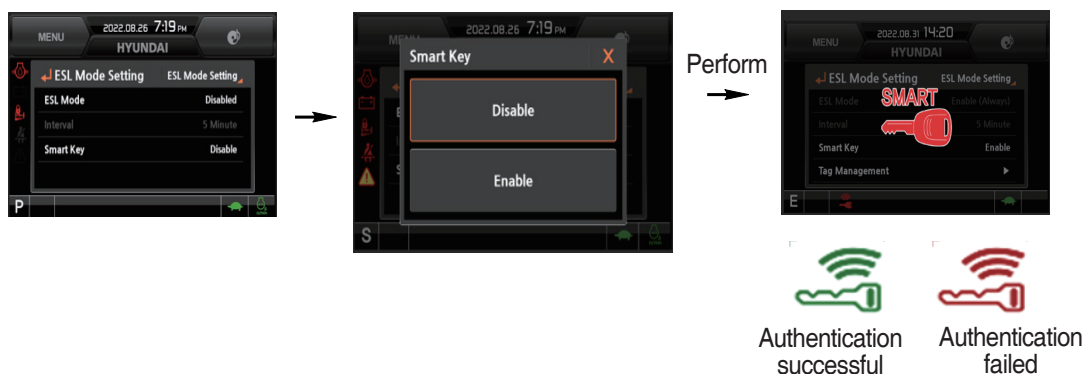
- Grapple RCV : RH
- Grapple flow level : 3
- Open : LH
- Close : RH

#### ④ ESL mode setting



- ESL : Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is designed to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- When you Enable the ESL mode, the password will be required when the starting switch is turned to the on position.
- Disable : ESL function is disabled and password is not required to start engine.
- Enable (always) : The password is required whenever the operator starts engine.
- Interval : The password is required when the operator starts engine first. But the operator can restart the engine within the interval time without inputting the password.
- ※ The interval time can be set to a maximum 4 hours.
- ※ Default password : 00000
- Password length : 5~10 digits

## Start Limit - Smart Key Setting (When smart key is installed)



### - Smart Key Exclusive

When the Smart key option (optional) is installed, Smart key menu is shown, and performance or non-performance of Smart key authentication can be set through the Smart key menu.

When the Smart key is not in the cabin, the approval procedure is rejected, and password must be entered.

## Start Limit - Tag Management

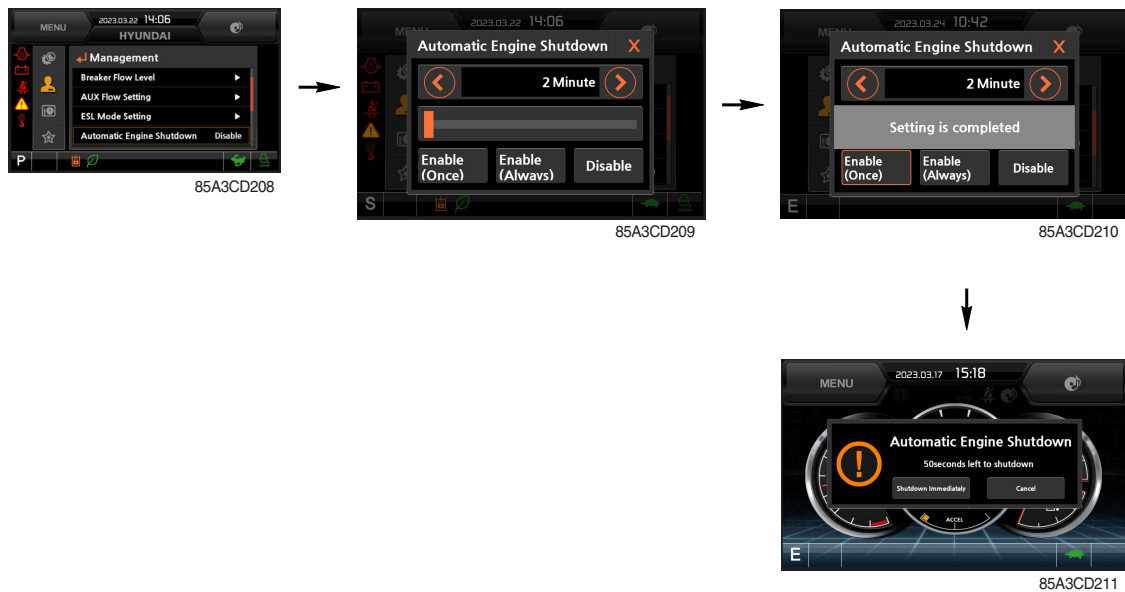


- The tag management menu is activated only when the Smart key menu is set through performance. Tag can be registered or deleted.
  - When registering the tag : Locate only the tag preferred for registration inside the cabin.
  - When deleting the tag : All registered tags are deleted.

### ※ Engine Starting Condition

Case	ESL Mode	Smart Key	Condition
1	Disable	Disable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started without password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started without password input.
2	Disable	Enable	If Smart Key is enabled, ESL Mode is automatically enabled. This Case 2 work the same as the Case 4.
3	Enable	Disable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started with password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started with password input.
4	Enable	Enable	- With registered tag : Engine can be started without password input. - Without registered tag : Engine can be started with password input.

## ⑤ Automatic engine shutdown



The automatic engine shutdown function can be set by this menu.

### a. Once (one time)

- Automatic shutdown function set Once when key-on or engine operation condition.
  - Key-off when the shutdown button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
  - Shift automatic shutdown function to Disable when the cancel button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
- Keep Disable for the automatic shutdown function when key-off after key-on again or start engine.

### b. Always (continuous use)

- Automatic shutdown function set Always when key-on or engine operation condition.
  - Key-off when the shutdown button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
  - Shift automatic shutdown function to Disable when when the cancel button clicks after pop-up the automatic stop icon.
- Keep Always for the automatic shutdown function when key-off after key-on again or start engine.

### c. Disable

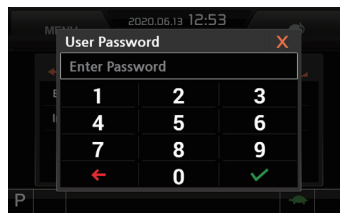
- Disable the engine automatic shutdown function.

## ⑥ Password change

– The password is 5~10 digits.

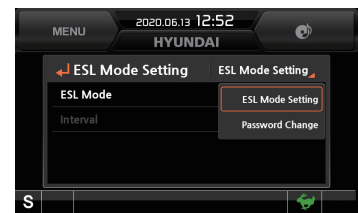


85A3CD215



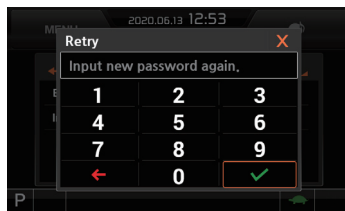
HX60A3CD149A

Enter the current password



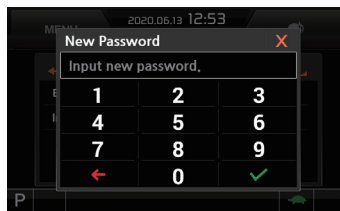
HX60A3CD153A

Select the password change



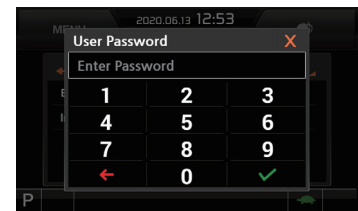
HX60A3CD156A

Saved the new password in the MCU



HX60A3CD155A

Enter the new password again



HX60A3CD149A

Enter the new password

## ⑦ Machine information



HX60A3CD160A



HX60A3CD161A



HX60A3CD162A

· The information of the cluster, machine MCU and engine and machine checked by this menu.

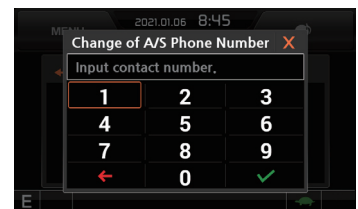
## ⑧ A/S phone number



HX60A3CD163A



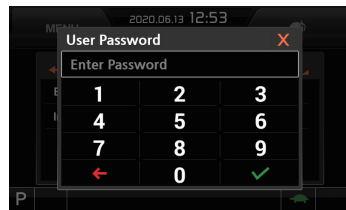
HX60A3CD164A



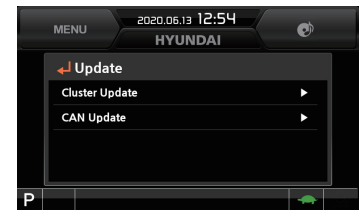
HX60A3CD165A

· The A/S phone number can be checked and changed.

## ⑨ Cluster update



Enter the user password



Select the cluster update

- The cluster and CAN device can be updated by this menu.
- ※ Do not turn power off while updating.

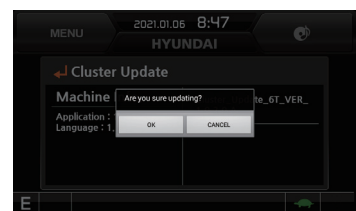
### a. Application update



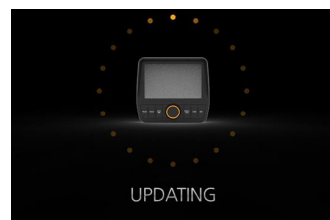
Select application item



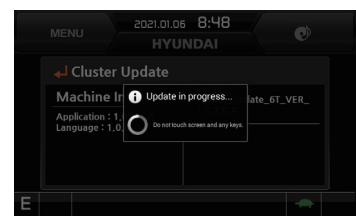
Select file to update



Select OK



Completed



In process

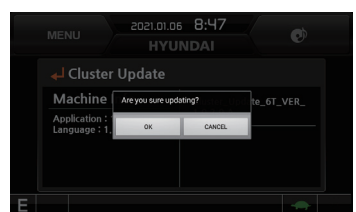
### b. System update



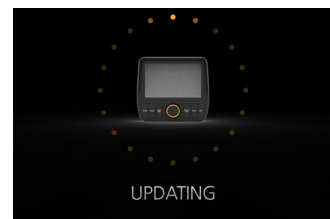
Select system item



Select file to update



Select OK

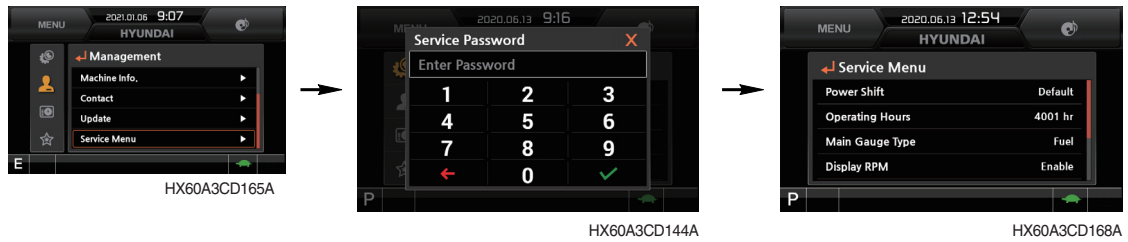


Completed



In process

## ⑩ Service menu



Enter the manager password

- Power shift : Power shift mode (default/option can be set by this menu.
- Operating hours : Operating hours in individual modes since the machine line out can be checked by this menu.
- Main gauge type : The engine rpm or fuel level gauge can be display on the main gauge of the main screen by this menu.
- Display RPM : Display the numeric value of engine rpm on the main gauge of the main screen can be set by this menu.
- AVCU setting : 2-Way or 4-Way dependent upon the machine options can be selected by this menu.
- Adding language : The language displayed on the cluster can be update by this menu when it is required to correct language.

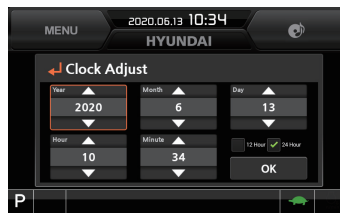
※ This menu can be used only HCE service man. Do not attempt unauthorized adjustment.

#### (4) Display

##### ① Clock adjust



HX60A3CD191A



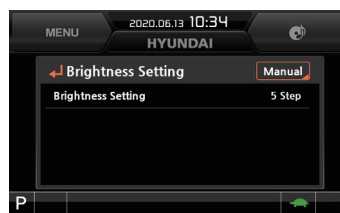
HX60A3CD192A

- The first row of boxes indicate Year/Month/Day.
- The second row shows the current time. (AM, PM/0:00~12:59)

##### ② Brightness

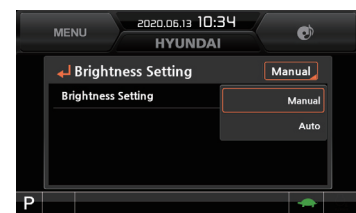


HX60A3CD193A

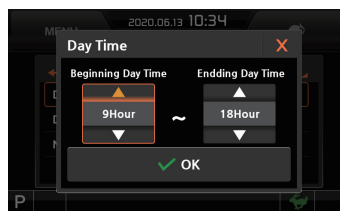


HX60A3CD194A

Manual (1st~10th step)



HX60A3CD195A



HX60A3CD197A

Auto (day/night)



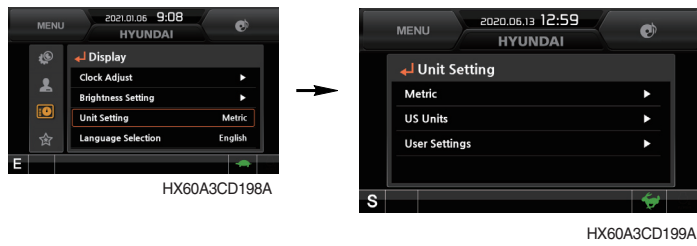
HX60A3CD196A

Auto (day time)

- If "Auto" is chosen, brightness for day and night can be set accordingly. Also, users can define which day time interval. (Set day starting time and ending time)



### ③ Unit set



- Metric units : Units change to metric units.
- US units : Units change to U.S. units
- User setting : Units change to user setting units

Item	Metric units	U.S. units	User setting
Temperature	°C	°F	°C, °F
Distance	km	mile	km, mile
Pressure	bar	Mpa	bar, Mpa, kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , psi
Flow	lpm	gpm	lpm, gpm
Volume	l	gal	l, gal

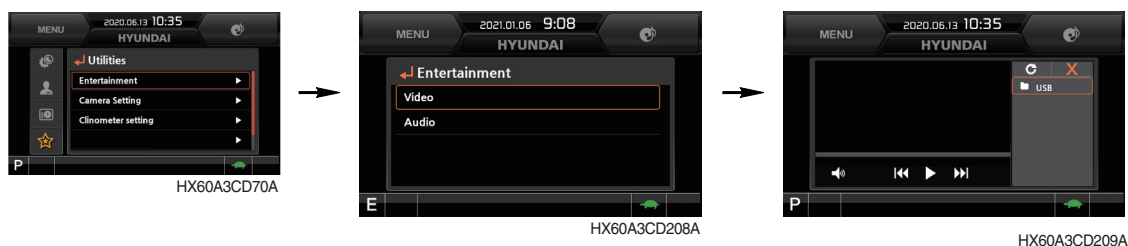
### ④ Language selection



- User can select preferable language (22 languages) and all displays are changed the selected language.

## (5) Utilities

### ① Entertainment



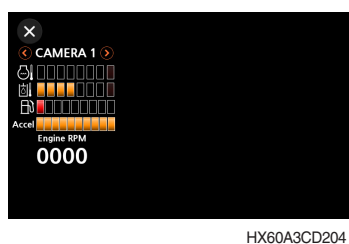
- Play MP4 or codec file of external hard disk through USB port.
- The USB port is located left side of the cluster.
- Over 1100 engine rpm, the screen turns into the operation screen with MP4 or codec file playing for the safety. The video is played again when the engine revolution is 1100 rpm or less.

**⚠ The video play is prohibited for the safety reason when the machine is operated.**

### ② Camera setting



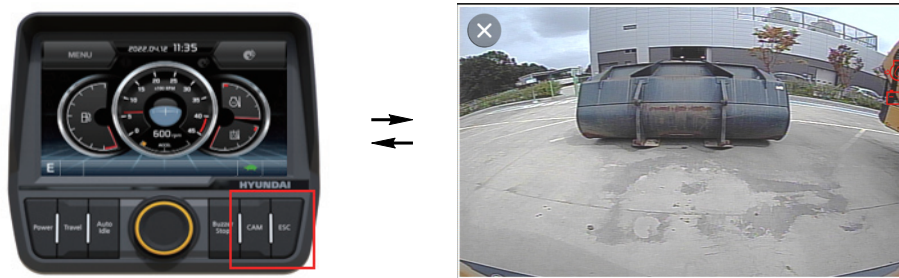
- Three cameras can be installed on the machine and display order can be set by this menu.
  - ※ If the camera is not equipped, this menu is not useful.
  - Turning the select switch in clockwise direction, the next ordered will be shown and in counter-clockwise direction, the previously ordered will be shown. Also, the camera channel can be changed by touching the screen.
  - Display change to reduction size or display is not visible by pushing the select switch or touch the screen.
- (display reduction size → hiding → display)



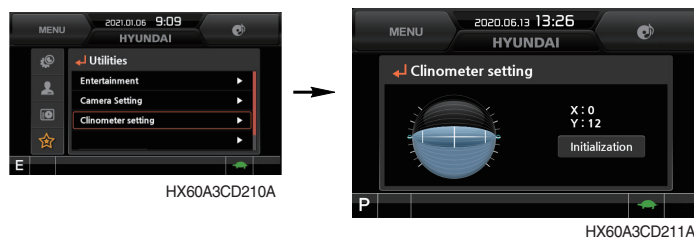
- The camera display is terminated by pressing the ESC switch or touch the X icon on the screen.

- **Camera control switch**

- Select the CAM switch to activate Rear / RH view camera from the beginning screen.
- While in that mode, select the ESC switch to return to the home screen.

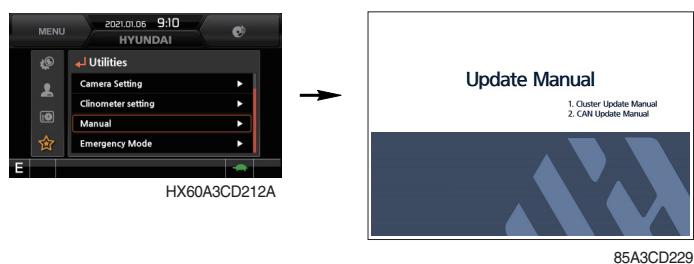


### ③ Clinometer setting



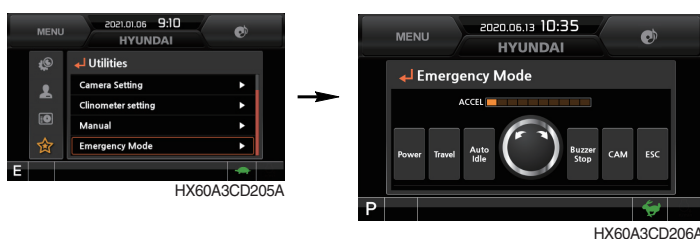
- When the machine is on the flatland, if you touch "initialization" on cluster, the values of X, Y will reset to "0".
- You can confirm tilt of machine in cluster's operating screen.

### ④ Manual



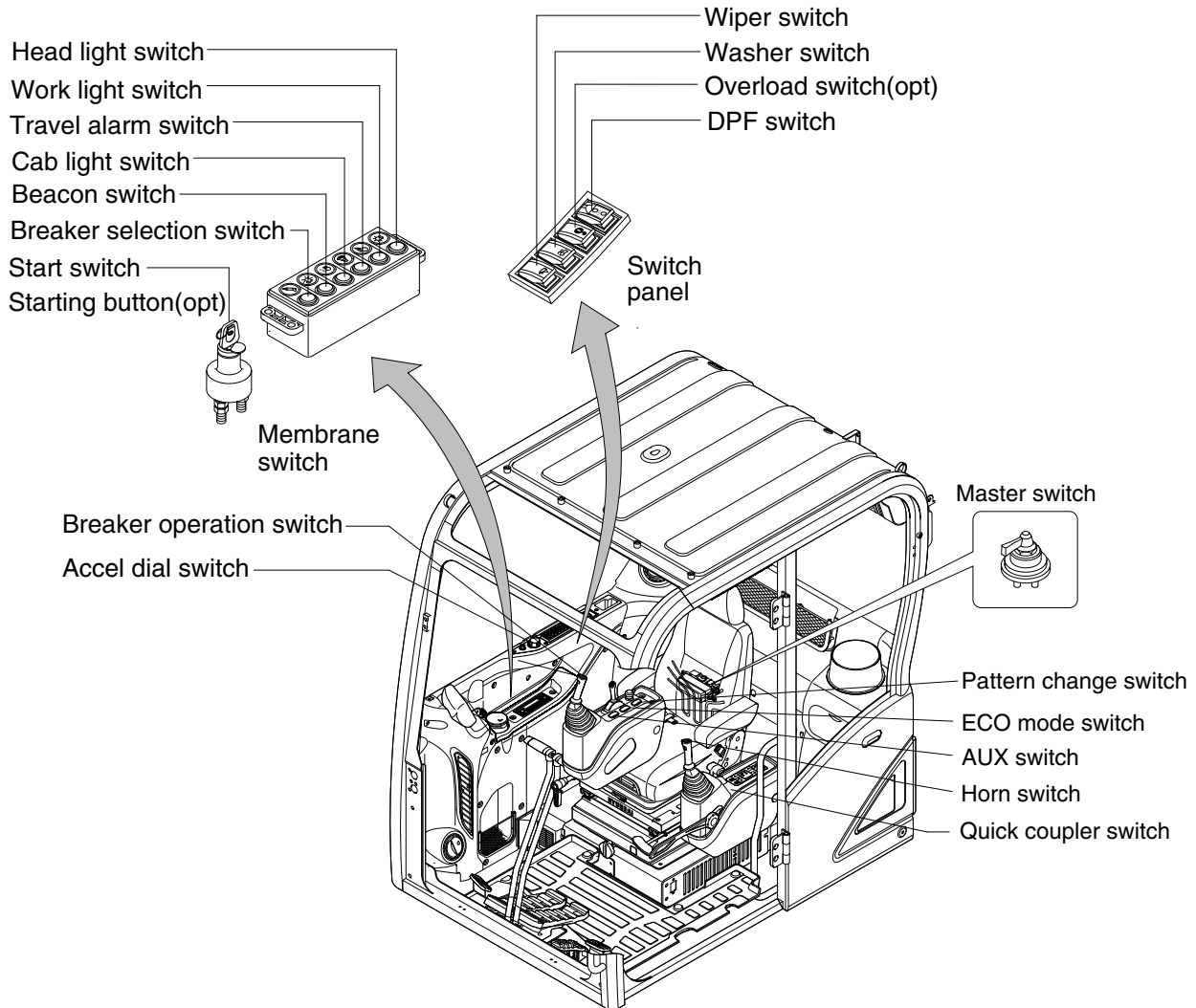
- Manual of the cluster can be read on the monitor.

### ⑤ Emergency mode



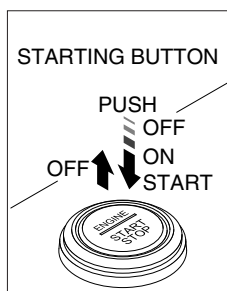
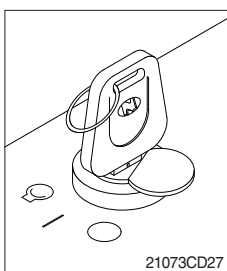
- When switches of the monitor and the accel dial fails, switches are displayed on LCD, and you are allowed to perform operation by touching the screen.
- Such operation is allowed only on this mode screen.

### 3. SWITCHES



85A3CD02B

#### 1) STARTING SWITCH



Starting button with smart key tag (opt)

(1) There are three positions, OFF, ON and START.

- ○ (OFF) : No of electrical circuits activate.
- | (ON) : All the systems of machine operate.
- ⦿ (START) : Use when starting the engine.

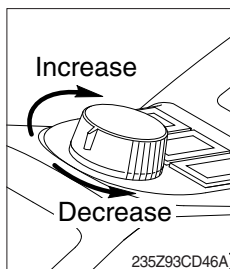
Release key immediately after starting.

※ If you turn ON the starting switch in cold weather, the fuel warmer is automatically operated to heat the fuel by sensing the coolant temperature. Start the engine in 1~2 minutes after turning ON the starting switch. More time may be required according to ambient temperature.

※ Starting switch controller tries engine starting at least 3 seconds even if switch is released after driver's start trial (key switch : start position / starting button : long push) to prevent short-time cranking (which can not starting engine). If no-start conditions (unlock safety knob) are resolved (lock safety knob) during the 3 seconds of engine starting attempt, engine can be started.

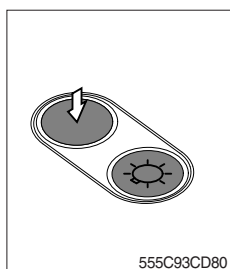
※ Key must be in the ON position with engine running maintain electrical and hydraulic function and prevent serious machine damage.

## 2) ACCEL DIAL



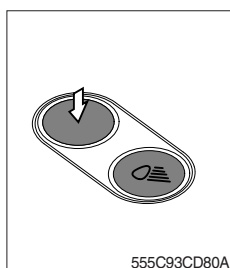
- (1) There are 10 dial settings.
- (2) Setting 1 is low idle and setting 10 is high idle.
  - By rotating the accel dial to right : Engine speed increased.
  - By rotating the accel dial to left : Engine speed decreased.

## 3) HEAD LIGHT SWITCH



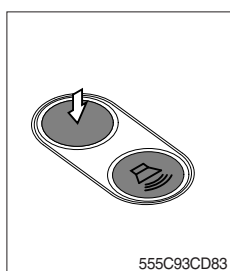
- (1) This switch is used to operate the head light and illumination lamps.
- (2) Press the switch once, the head light and the below illumination lamps light up.
  - Air conditioner and heater controller
  - Radio and USB player
  - USB socket, DPF switch, accel dial and cigar lighter
- (3) Press the switch once more, the head light and illumination lamps turn off.

## 4) WORK LIGHT SWITCH



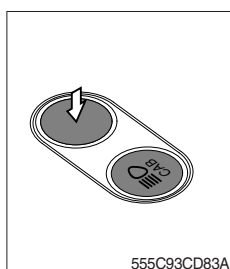
- (1) This switch is used to operate the work light.
  - Press the switch once, the work light and the pilot lamp light up.
  - Press the switch once more, the work light and pilot lamp turn off.

## 5) TRAVEL ALARM SWITCH



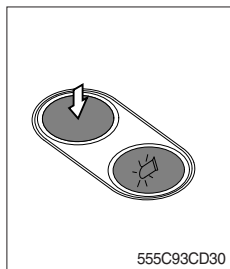
- (1) This switch is to activate travel alarm function surrounding when the machine travels.
  - ON : The travel alarm function is activated.
  - OFF : The travel alarm function is not activated.

## 6) CAB LIGHT SWITCH



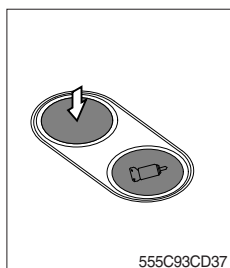
- (1) This switch turns on the cab light on the cab.

## 7) BEACON SWITCH (option)



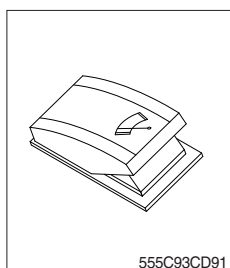
- (1) This switch turns ON the rotary light on the cab.
- (2) The indicator lamp lights up when operating this switch.

## 8) BREAKER SELECTION SWITCH (option)



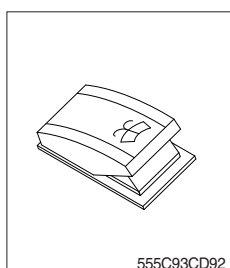
- (1) When this switch is pressed, the breaker will be ready to operation.  
※ Refer to page 3-38 for details.

## 9) WIPER SWITCH



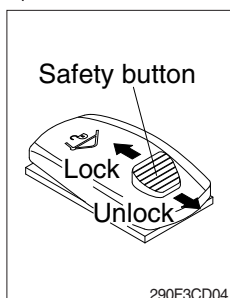
- (1) This switch is used to operate the wiper.  
The wiper operates.
- △ If wiper does not operate with the switch in the ON position, turn the switch off immediately. Check the cause. If the switch remains ON, motor failure can result.

## 10) WASHER SWITCH



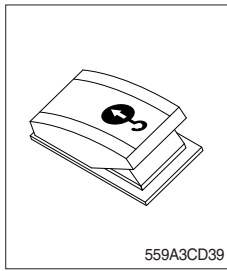
- (1) This switch is used to operate the washer.
  - Washer fluid is sprayed and the wiper is operated only when this switch is pressed. If you release the switch, return to the first position.

## 11) QUICK COUPLER SWITCH (option)



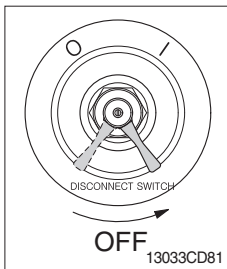
- (1) This switch is used to engage or disengage the moving hook on quick coupler.  
※ Refer to page 8-6 for details.

## 12) OVERLOAD SWITCH (option)



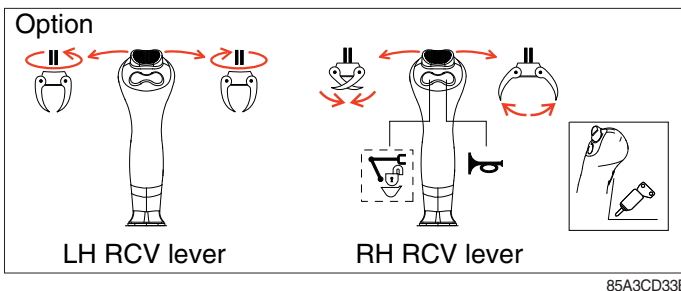
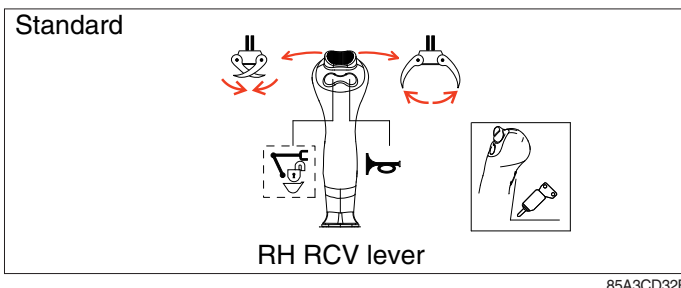
- (1) When this switch is activated, buzzer makes sound and overload warning lamp lights up in the event that the machine is or becomes in an overloaded situation.
- (2) When the switch is inactivated, buzzer stops and warning lamp goes off.

## 13) MASTER SWITCH



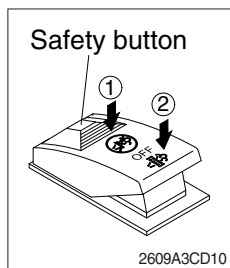
- (1) This switch is used to shut off the entire electrical system.
  - (2) I : The battery remains connected to the electrical system.  
O : The battery is disconnected from the electrical system.
- ※ **Never turn the master switch to O (OFF) with the engine running. It could result in engine and electrical system damage.**

## 14) CONTROL LEVER SWITCH (LH, RH)



- (1) This switch use to operates the breaker operation by 3 steps.
    - **First step : Select breaker selection switch on the membrane switch.**
    - **Second step : Select Aux switch to position 3.**
    - **Third step : Press breaker operation switch.**
  - (2) This switch operates the clamshell or shear.
- ※ **This switch applies to double action hydraulic attachment circuit.**

## 15) DPF (diesel particulate filter) SWITCH



(1) This switch is used to select the regeneration function of the DPF.

### (2) Inhibit position (①)

- ① The inhibit position disallows any automatic or manual regeneration of the DPF.
- ② This may be used by operator to prevent regeneration when the machine is operating in a hazardous environment and is concerned about high exhaust temperature.
- ③ It is strongly recommended that this position is only activated when high temperatures may cause a hazardous condition.

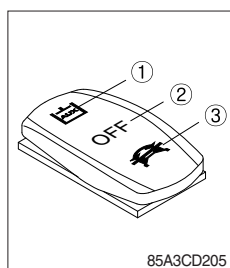
### (3) OFF position

This position will initiate an automatic regeneration of the DPF.

### (4) Manual regeneration position (②)

- ① This position will only initiate a manual regeneration of the DPF when the machine is in non-mission condition, engine must run at low idle speed and DPF soot levels are high enough to allow regeneration.
- ② HEST lamp will be illuminated during the entire regeneration.
- ※ Refer to the page 3-8 for details.
- ※ This switch can be moved to the manual regeneration position (②) only when the safety button is pulled backward.
- ※ Also, this switch returns to the OFF position when released from the manual regeneration position (②).

## 16) AUX SWITCH (option)

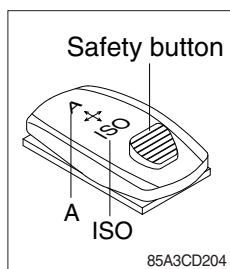


(1) This switch is used to select the auxiliary optional functions.

- ① : Angle dozer
- ② : Off
- ③ : Breaker operating or 2way or 4way

※ Refer to page 3-13 and section, Levers and pedals for details.

## 17) PATTERN CHANGE SWITCH



(1) The pattern change can be operated easily using this switch.

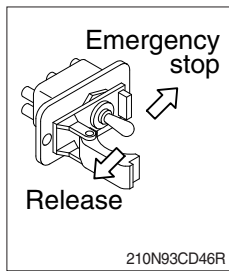
- Position ISO : ISO type pattern
- Position A : A type pattern

▲ Before starting the machine, check switch position.

※ Refer to page 4-22 for the details.



## 18) EMERGENCY ENGINE STOP SWITCH

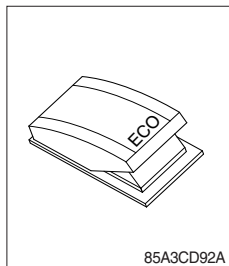


(1) This switch is used to stop the engine in the event of an emergency.

(2) The engine system reboot is required through master switch ON / OFF operation for restarting after the emergency stop switch operation.

※ **Be sure to return the emergency switch to the release or run position before trying to restart the engine.**

## 19) ECO MODE SWITCH

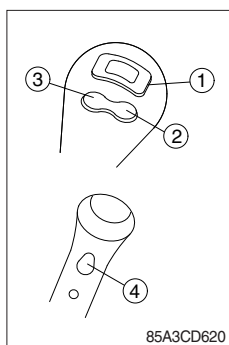


(1) This switch is used to improve the fuel economy of the equipment.

(2) The pump horsepower is reduced, when you press this switch.

## 20) LH RCV LEVER SWITCH

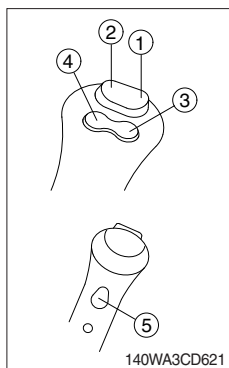
### (1) Button type



The switches on the LH RCV lever is function as below.

- ① None
- ② None
- ③ None
- ④ None

### (2) Proportional type (option)



The switches on the LH RCV lever is function as below.

#### ① CW rotating switch

When this switch is pressed, the clockwise rotating will operate.

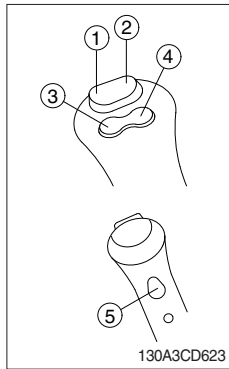
#### ② CCW rotating switch

When this switch is pressed, the counterclockwise rotating will operate.

- ③ None.
- ④ None.
- ⑤ None.

## 21) RH RCV LEVER SWITCH

### (1) Proportional type



The switches on the RH RCV lever is function as below.

① **2-way clamp switch**

When this switch is pressed, the clamp will only operate when the crusher operation mode is selected.

② **2-way release switch**

When this switch is pressed, the release or breaker will operate when the crusher operation mode or breaker operation mode is selected.

③ **Quick coupler switch**

This switch is used to engage or disengage the moving hook on quick coupler.

※ **Refer to page 8-6.**

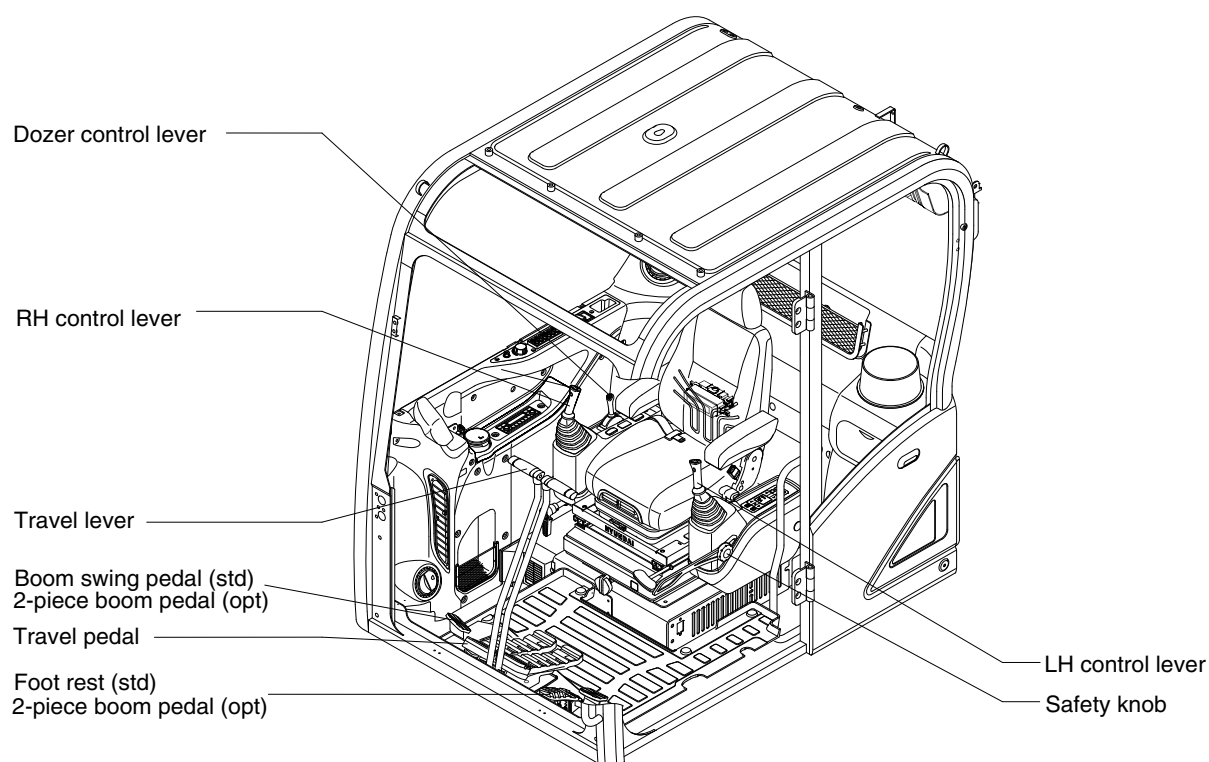
④ **Horn switch**

When this switch is pressed, the horn will sound.

⑤ **Breaker switch**

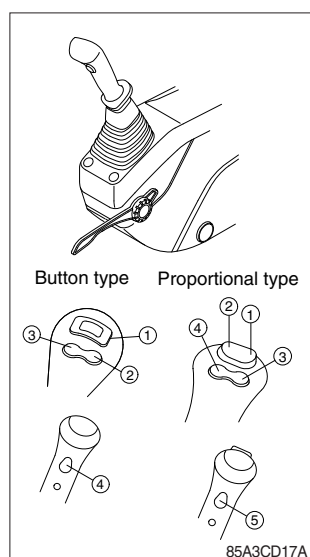
When this switch is pressed, the breaker will only operate when the breaker operation mode is selected.

## 4. LEVERS AND PEDALS



85A3CD03A

### 1) LH CONTROL LEVER



(1) This joystick is used to control the swing and the arm.

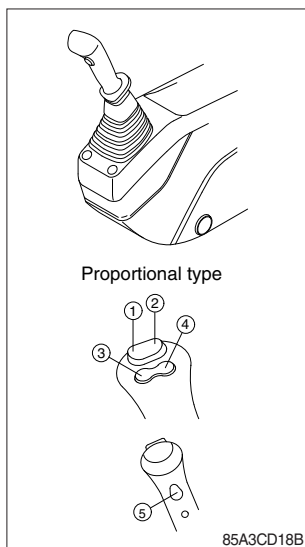
※ Refer to operation of working device in chapter 2 for details.

(2) The switch functions are as below.

No.	Button type	Proportional type (opt)
①	N.A	Rotating-CW
②	N.A	Rotating-CCW
③	N.A	N.A
④	N.A	N.A
⑤	-	N.A

※ Refer to page 3-40 for the details of the switch function.

## 2) RH CONTROL LEVER



(1) This joystick is used to control the boom and the bucket.

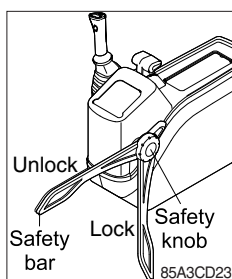
※ Refer to operation of working device in chapter 2 for details.

(2) The switch functions are as below.

No.	Proportional type
①	2-way clamp
②	2-way release
③	Quick coupler
④	Horn
⑤	Breaker

※ Refer to page 3-40-1 for the details of the switch function.

## 3) SAFETY KNOB



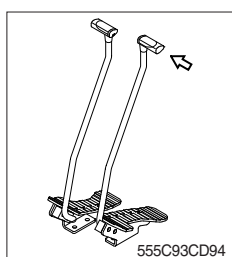
(1) All control levers and pedals are disabled from operation by locating the safety knob to the LOCK position as shown.

※ Be sure to turn the safety knob to LOCK position when entering or leaving from operators seat/cabin.

(2) The machine is operational by turning the safety knob to the UNLOCK position.

※ Do not use the safety bar for handle when getting on or off the machine.

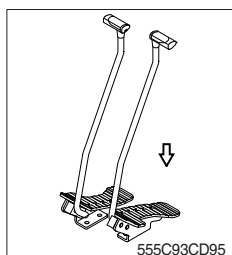
## 4) TRAVEL LEVER



(1) This lever is mounted on travel pedal and used for traveling by hand. The operation principle is same as the travel pedal.

(2) Refer to traveling of the machine in chapter 4 for details.

## 5) TRAVEL PEDAL



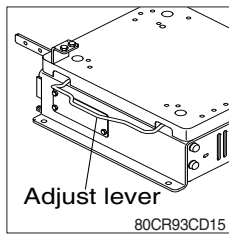
(1) This pedal is used to move the machine forward or backward.

(2) If left side pedal is pressed, left track will move.

If right side pedal is pressed, right track will move.

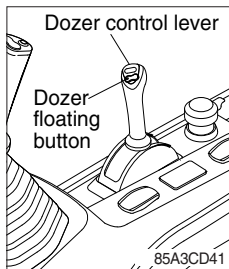
(3) Refer to traveling of machine in chapter 4 for details.

## 6) SEAT AND CONSOLE BOX ADJUST LEVER



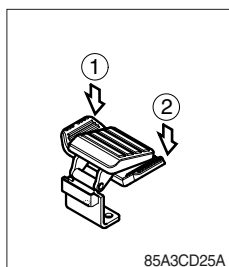
- (1) This lever is used to move the seat and console box to fit the contours of the operator's body.
- (2) Pull the lever to adjust forward or backward over 90 mm (3.5").

## 7) DOZER CONTROL LEVER



- (1) This lever is used to operate the dozer blade.
- (2) If the lever is pushed forward, the dozer blade will be going down.  
If the lever is pulled back, the dozer blade will be going up.
- (3) The dozer floating feature activates when the dozer floating button is pressed.
  - First step : Press the dozer floating button.
  - Second step : Push the dozer lever until the end.
  - Third step : The lever is fixed even if the dozer lever is released.  
(Detent function)
- (4) Floating release method.
  - First step : Press the dozer floating button again.
  - Second step : Pull back the fixed dozer lever.

## 8) BOOM SWING PEDAL

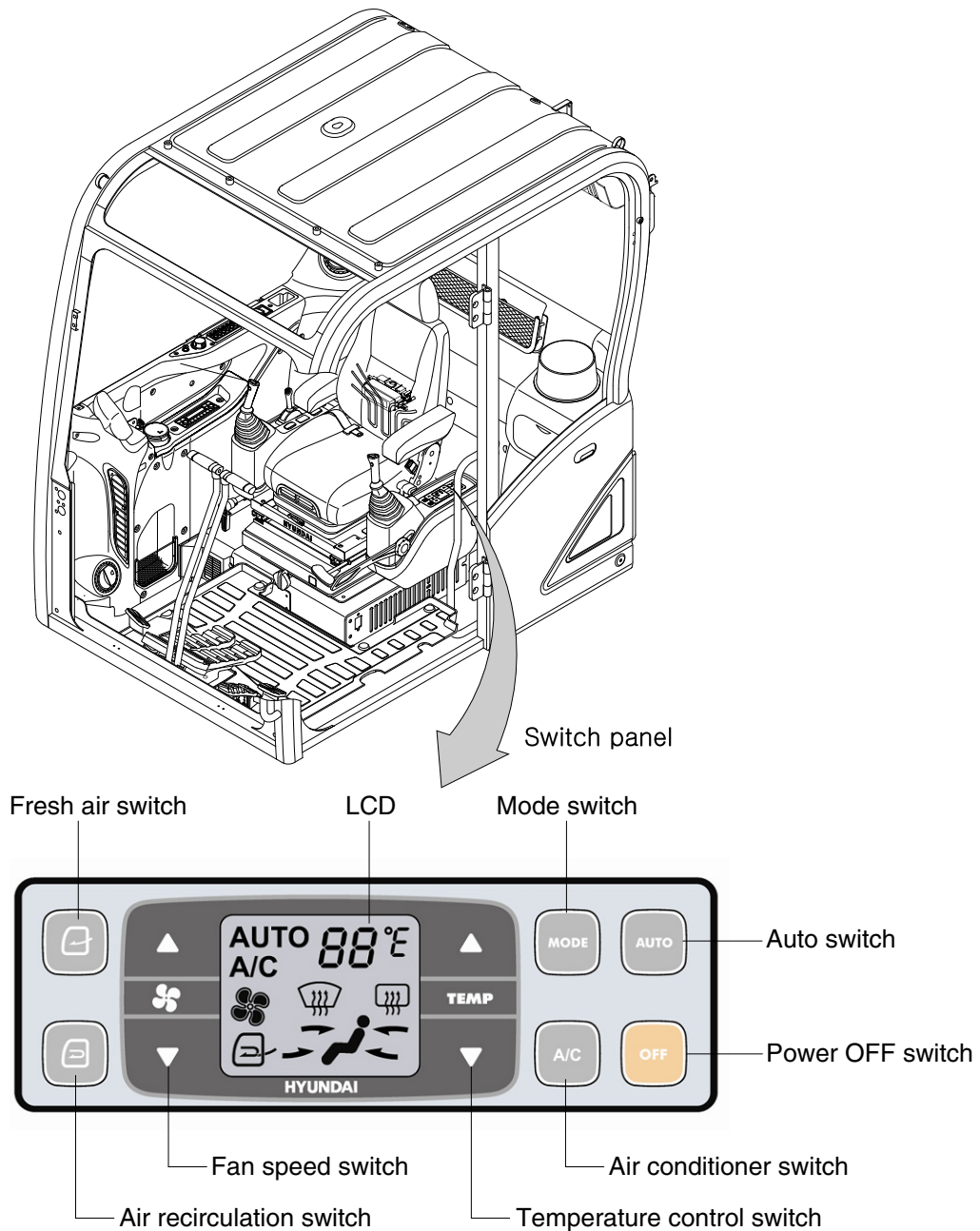


- (1) This pedal is used to swing the boom to the right and left direction.
- (2) If the front (①) of the pedal is pressed, boom will swing to the left direction.  
If the rear (②) of the pedal is pressed, boom will swing to the right direction.

## 5. FULL AUTO AIR CONDITIONER AND HEATER

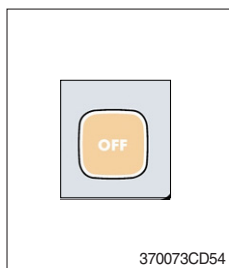
Full auto air conditioner and heater system automatically keeps the optimum condition in accordance with operator's temperature configuration sensing ambient and cabin inside temperature.

- Location of air flow ducts



85A3CD05A

## 1) POWER OFF SWITCH

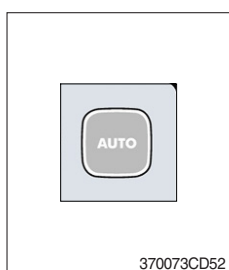


- (1) This switch turns the system and the LED OFF.  
Just before the power OFF, set values are stored.

### (2) Default setting values

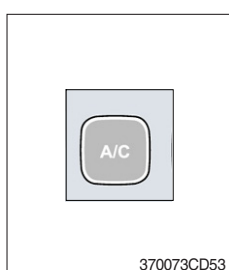
Function	Air conditioner	In/outlet	LCD	Temperature	Mode
Value	OFF	Inlet	OFF	Previous sw OFF	Previous sw OFF

## 2) AUTO SWITCH



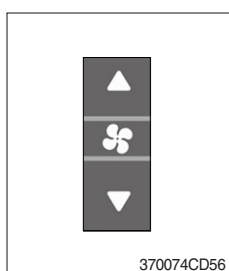
- (1) Turn the starting switch to ON position, LCD lights up.  
Auto air conditioner and heater system automatically keeps the optimum condition in accordance with operator's temperature configuration sensing ambient and cabin inside temperature.
- (2) This switch can restart system after system goes OFF.

## 3) AIR CONDITIONER SWITCH (compressor switch)



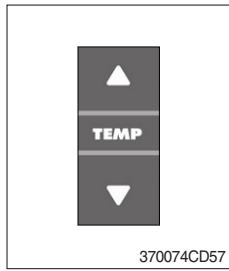
- (1) This switch turns the compressor and the LCD ON.
- (2) In accordance with the temperature sensed by duct (evaporator) sensor, compressor turns ON or OFF automatically.
- ※ **Air conditioner operates to remove vapor and drains water through a drain hose. Water can be sprayed into the cab in case that the drain cock at the ending point of drain hose has a problem.**  
**In this case, exchange the drain cock.**

## 4) FAN SPEED SWITCH



- (1) Fan speed is controlled automatically by sett temperature.
- (2) This switch controls fan speed manually.
- There are 8 up/down steps to control fan speed.
  - The maximum step or the minimum step beeps 5 times.
- (3) This switch turns the system ON.

## 5) TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH

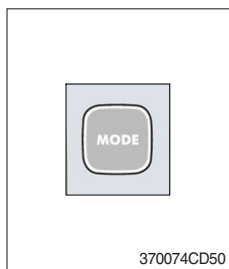


- (1) Setting temperature indication (17~32°C, scale : 1 °C)
- (2) Max cool and max warm beeps 5 times.
- (3) The max cool or the max warm position operates per the following table.

Temperature	Compressor	Fan speed	In/Outlet	Mode
Max cool	ON	Max (Hi)	Recirculation	Vent
Max warm	OFF	Max (Hi)	Fresh	Foot

- (4) Temperature unit can be changed between celsius (°C) and fahrenheit (°F)
  - ① Default status (°C)
  - ② The temperature unit can be changed (°C ↔ °F) by pressing temperature switches (Up/Down) simultaneously for more than 5 seconds.

## 6) MODE SWITCH

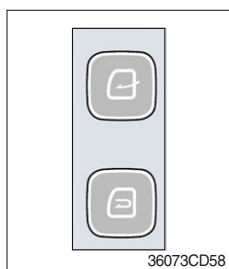


- (1) Operating this switch, it beeps and displays symbol of each mode in the following order. (Vent → Vent/Foot → Foot → Foot/Def → Vent)

Mode switch		Vent	Vent/Foot	Foot	Foot/Def
Outlet	A	●	●		
	B		●	●	●
	C				●

- (2) When operating defroster, FRESH AIR/AIR RECIRCULATION switch turns to FRESH AIR mode and air conditioner switch turns ON.
- (3) When this switch ON, the system operates with previous configuration.

## 7) FRESH AIR/AIR RECIRCULATION SWITCH

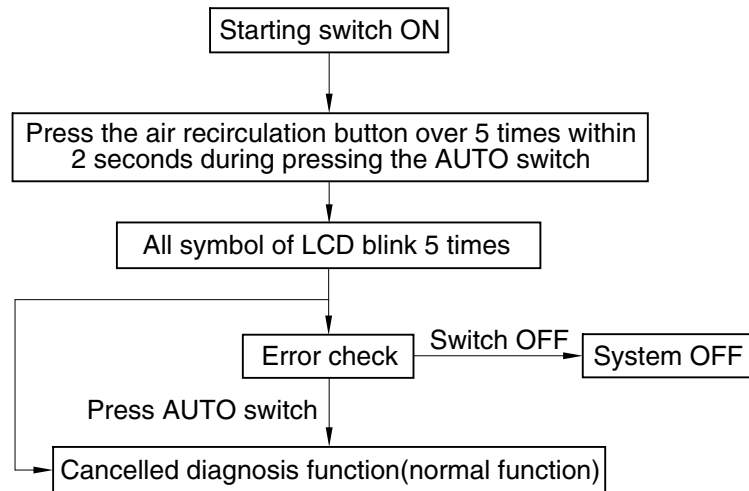


- (1) It is possible to change the air-inlet method.
  - ① **Fresh air** ( )  
Inhaling air from the outside.  
※ **Check out the fresh air filter periodically to keep a good efficiency.**
  - ② **Air recirculation** ( )  
It recycles the heated or cooled air to increase the energy efficiency.  
※ **Change air occasionally when using recirculation for a long periods of time**  
※ **Check condition of an outer filter and an inner filter periodically to maintain good efficiency of the system.**



## 8) SELF DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION

### (1) Procedure



3607A3CD69

### (2) Error check

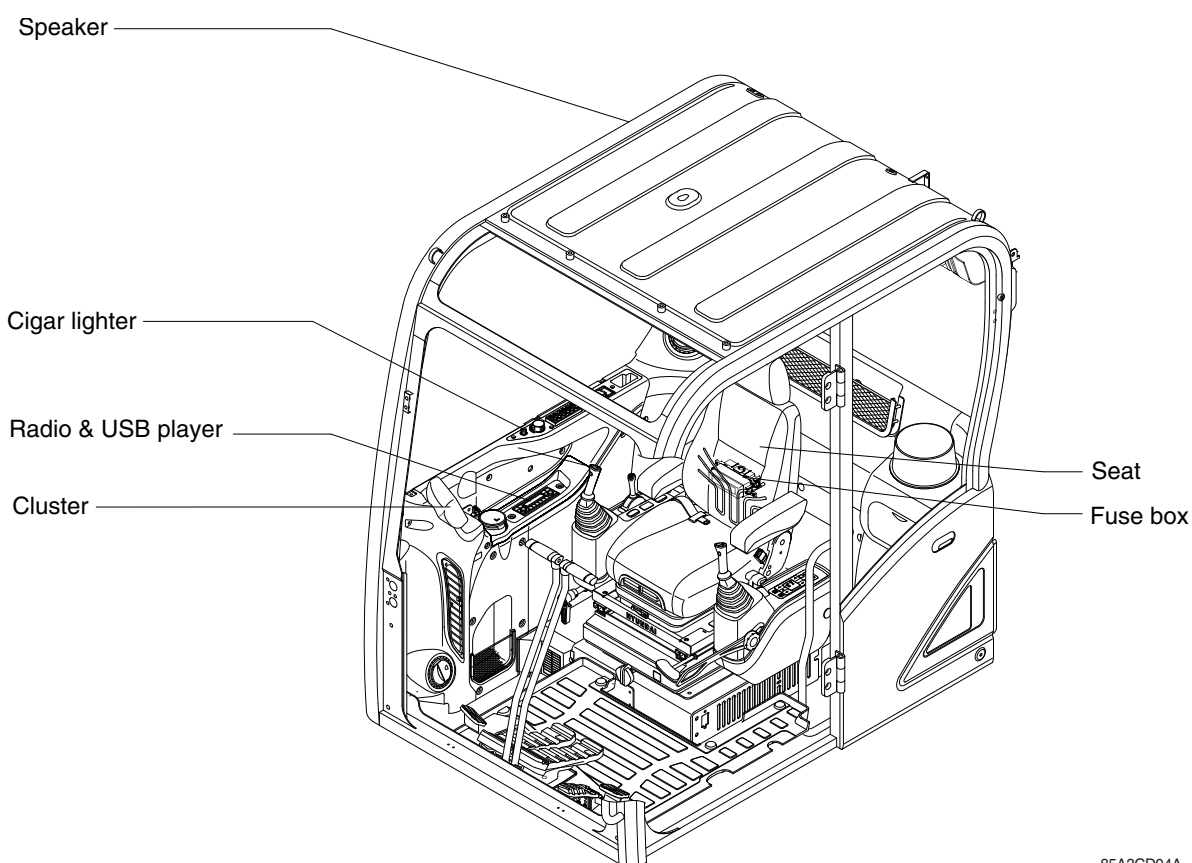
- The corresponding error code flickers on the setup temperature display panel, the other symbol will turn OFF.
- Error code flickers every 0.5 second.
- If error code is more than two, each code flickers 2 times in sequence.
- Error code

Error code	Description	Error code	Description
11	Cabin inside sensor	16	Mode actuator 1
12	Ambient sensor	17	Mode actuator 2
14	Duct (evaporator) sensor	18	Intake actuator
15	Temp actuator	-	-

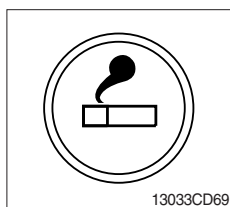
### (3) Fail safe function

Error description	Fail safe function
Cabin inside sensor (11)	25°C alternate value control
Ambient sensor (12)	20°C alternate value control
Duct (evaporator) sensor (14)	1°C alternate value control
Temp actuator (15)	If opening amount is 0 %, the alternate value is 0 %
	If not, the alternate value is 100 %
Mode actuator 1, 2 (16, 17)	The alternate value is Vent

## 6. OTHERS



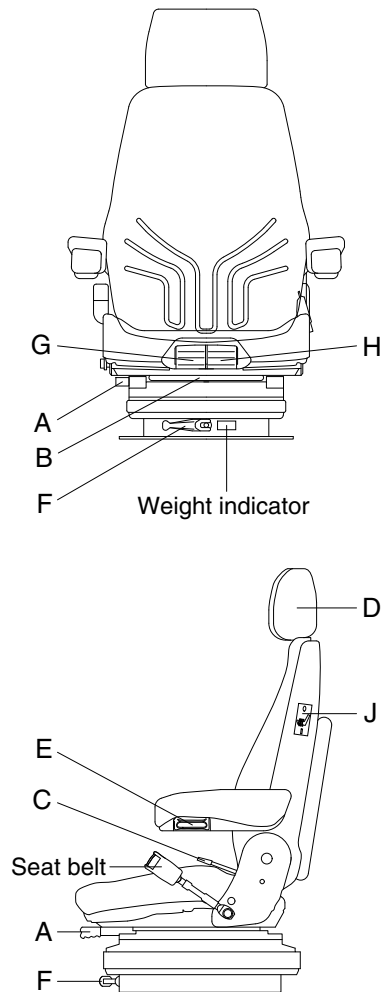
### 1) CIGAR LIGHTER



- (1) This can be used when the engine starting switch is ON.
  - (2) The lighter can be used when it springs out in a short while after being pressed down.
- ※ **Service socket**  
Use cigar lighter socket when you need emergency power.  
Do not use the lighter exceeding 12 V, 120 W.

## 2) SEAT

The seat is adjustable to fit the contours of the operator's body. It will reduce operator fatigue due to long work hours and enhance work efficiency.



140Z93CD55

### (1) Forward/Backward adjustment (A)

- ① Pull lever A to adjust seat forward or backward.
- ② The seat can be moved forward and backward over 130 mm (5.1") in 13 steps.

▲ Do not lift the locking lever with you leg.

### (2) Upward/Downward adjustment (B)

- ① Pull lever B to adjust seat upward or downward over 60 mm (2.4").
- ② Forward or backward side adjustment only can be made, tilting to one side, by moving lever B respectively.

### (3) Reclining adjustment (C)

Pull lever C to adjust seat back rest.

### (4) Armrest adjustment (E)

This can be adjusted by pushing the button E to right and left.

### (5) Headrest adjustment (D)

This is adjustable vertically and forward or rearward to fit operator's requirements.

### (6) Weight adjustment (F)

Adjust the lever with the seat empty to the operator's weight.

### (7) Seat depth adjustment (G)

- ① The depth of the seat pan can be individually adjusted.
- ② To adjust the depth of the seat cushion, pull the right handle upward. By moving the seat cushion backwards or forwards the desired seating position can be reached.

### (8) Seat pan angle adjustment (H)

- ① The angle of the seat pan can be individually adjusted.
- ② To adjust the angle of the seat pan, pull the left handle upwards. By exerting pressure on or off the front or rear part of the seat pan it can be moved to the desired position.

### (9) Seat heater (J)

The seat heater can be turned on/off by pressing the switch.

0 = Seat heater OFF

I = Seat heater ON

▲ Always check the condition of the seat belt and mounting hardware before operating the machine.

▲ Replace the seat belt at least once every three years, regardless of appearance.

### 3) FUSE BOX

SPARE		40A	SPARE		40A
SPARE	20A	CABIN LAMP	20A	MCU	10A
SPARE	20A	BECON LAMP	20A	CLUSTER	10A
SPARE	20A	SAFETY SOL	10A	CASSETTE, SW PANEL	10A
SPARE	20A	ALT, START	20A	ECU	20A
HORN	20A	SOLENOID	20A	MCU	10A
CIGAR	20A	AC HEATER	20A	ROOM LAM, AC HEATER	20A
EPPR POWER	20A	WIPER	20A	CLUSTER	10A
12V OUTLET	20A	FUEL FILLER PUMP	20A	START KEY	20A
HEAT-SEAT	10A	WORK LAMP	20A	CASSETTE	20A
PRE-HEAT	10A	HEAD LAMP	20A	FUSE HOLDER	
FEED PUMP	20A	SOLENOID	20A		
SPARE	20A				
SPARE	20A				
SPARE	10A				
SPARE	10A				
SPARE	10A				

85A3CD13

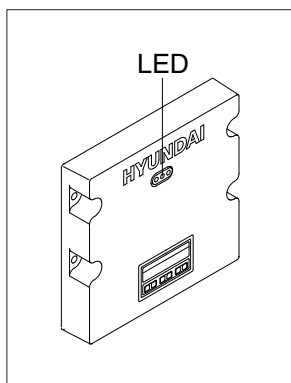
(1) The fuses protect the electrical parts and wiring from burning out.

(2) The fuse box cover indicates the capacity of each fuse and which circuit it protects.

※ When replacing a fuse or relay, always use one of the same capacity.

▲ Before replacing a fuse, be sure to turn OFF the starting switch.

### 4) MCU



85A3CD57

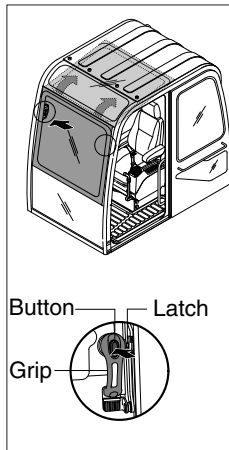
(1) To match the pump absorption torque with the engine torque, MCU varies EPPR valve output pressure, which controls pump discharge volume whenever engine speed drops and provides feedback, under the reference rpm of each mode set.

(2) Three LED lamps on the MCU display as below.

LED lamp	Trouble	Service
G is turned ON	Normal	-
G and R are turned ON	Trouble on MCU	· Change the MCU
G and Y are turned ON	Trouble on serial communication line	· Check if serial communication lines between controller and cluster are disconnected
Three LED's are turned OFF	Trouble on MCU power	· Check if the input power wire (24 V, GND) of controller is disconnected · Check the fuse

G : green, R : red, Y : yellow

## 5) UPPER WINDSHIELD



(1) Perform the following procedure in order to open the upper windshield.

- ① Release both latches in order to release the upper windshield.
- ② Hold both grips that are located at both sides the windshield frame and push the windshield upward.
- ③ Hold both grips that are provided on the windshield frame and pull back into the storage position until auto lock latch is engaged.

※ **When working, without having locked the windshield by the auto lock (by pushing the windshield to the rear until it's completely fixed), please be careful as it can cause personal injury if the windshield is not fixed or falls off.**

(2) Perform the following procedure in order to close the upper windshield.  
Steps in the reverse order to close the upper windshield.

6) RADIO AND USB PLAYER (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : -#0646)

■ WITH BLUETOOTH



9403CD100

■ FRONT PANEL PRESENTATION

- |   |  |   |    |  |   |
|---|--|---|----|--|---|
| 1 |  | ..... Power ON/OFF,<br>Volume UP/DOWN button            | 10 |  | ..... Station preset 5<br>DIR- ..... Directory down button        |
| 2 |  | ..... Manual UP/DOWN Tuning,<br>File search, SEL button | 11 |  | ..... Station preset 6<br>DIR+ ..... Directory up button          |
| 3 |  | ..... Mode button,<br>Audio mute button                 | 12 |  | ..... Scan play button (SCAN)<br>Best station memory (BSM) button |
| 4 |  | ..... Call & Pair button                                | 13 |  | ..... Auto tune up, Seek up button                                |
| 5 |  | ..... Call end button                                   | 14 |  | ..... Auto tune down, Track down button                           |
| 6 |  | ..... Station preset 1<br>DIS ..... Display button      | 15 |  | ..... USB connector   |
| 7 |  | ..... Station preset 2                                  | 16 |  | ..... AUX IN Jack   |
| 8 |  | ..... Station preset 3<br>RPT ..... Repeat play button  | 17 |  | ..... MIC hole  |
| 9 |  | ..... Station preset 4<br>RDM ..... Random play button  |    |  |   |

## ■ GENERAL

### (1) Power and volume button



#### ① Power ON / OFF button

Press power button (1) to turn the unit on or off.

#### ② Volume UP/DOWN control knob

Turn VOL knob (1) right to increase the volume level.

Turn VOL knob (1) left to decrease the volume.

After 5 seconds the display will return to the previous display mode.

#### ③ Initial volume level set up

I-VOL is the volume level the unit will play at when it is next turned on. To adjust the I-VOL level, press and hold VOL button (1) for longer than 2 seconds. The current volume level displays on the display panel.

Then turn button (1) right or left to set the volume level as the I-VOL level.

#### ④ Clock ON/OFF control

The CLOCK was default at off status. To turn CLOCK ON, press and hold VOL button (1) for longer than 2 seconds to display I-VOL, then short press VOL again, turn VOL knob while CLOCK OFF display, then the CLOCK ON will be displayed.

※ Due to time tolerance, the clock display on the Audio unit might have slight difference.

#### ⑤ Clock adjustment

With CLOCK ON selected, press VOL knob again after CLOCK ON display, the hour will blink, turn VOL knob right or left to adjust hour. Simply press VOL again, the minute will blink, turn VOL knob to adjust minute. Then press VOL again to confirm the clock once finished.

## (2) Menu Selection



- ① This button can adjust the effect of the sound and other things.  
Each time you press this button (2), LCD displays as follows :

BAS → TREB → BAL L=R → FAD F=R → EQ → LOUD ON →  
BEEP 2ND

On each setting, the level can be controlled by turning TUNE knob (2).  
When the last adjustment is made, after 5 seconds, the display will automatically return to the previous display mode.

### ② Bass control

To adjust the bass tone level, first select the bass mode by pressing SEL button (2) repeatedly until BASS appears on the display panel. Then turn knob (2) right or left within 5 seconds to adjust the bass level as desired. The bass level will be shown on the display panel from a minimum of BASS-7 to a maximum of BASS+7.

### ③ Treble control

To adjust the treble tone level, first select the treble mode by pressing SEL button (2) repeatedly until TREB appears on the display panel. Then turn knob (2) right or left within 5 seconds to adjust the treble level as desired. The treble level will be shown on the display panel from a minimum of TREB -7 to a maximum of TREB +7.

### ④ Balance control

To adjust the left-right speaker balance, first select the balance mode by pressing SEL button (2) repeatedly until BAL indication appears on the display panel. Then turn knob (2) right or left within 5 seconds to adjust the balance as desired. The balance position will be shown by the bars on the display panel from BAL 10R (full right) to BAL 10L (full left).

### ⑤ Fader control

To adjust the front-rear speaker balance, first select the fader mode by pressing SEL button (2) repeatedly until FADER indication appears on the display panel. Then turn knob (2) right or left within 5 seconds to adjust the front-rear speaker level as desired. The fader position will be shown by the bars on the display panel from FAD 10F (full front) to FAD 10R (full rear).

### ⑥ EQ control

You can select an equalizer curve for 4 music types (CLASSIC, POP, ROCK, JAZZ). Press button (2) until EQ is displayed, then turn knob (2) right or left to select the desired equalizer curve. Each time you turn the knob, LCD displays as follows :

EQ OFF → CLASSIC → POP → ROCK → JAZZ

※ When the EQ mode is activated, the BASS and TREBLE modes are not displayed.



#### ⑦ Loud control

When listening to music at low volume levels, this feature will boost the bass and treble response. This action will compensate for the reduction in bass and treble performance experienced at low volume.

To select the loudness feature, press button (2) until LOUD is displayed, then turn knob (2) right or left to activate or deactivate loudness.

#### ⑧ Beep control

To adjust the BEEP mode, first select the BEEP mode by pressing button (2) repeatedly until BEEP indication appears on the display panel. Then turn knob (2) left or right within 5 seconds to select BEEP 2ND, BEEP OFF or BEEP ON.

- BEEP 2ND : You will only hear the beep sound when the buttons are held down for more than 2 seconds.
- BEEP OFF : You can not hear the sound beep when you press the buttons.
- BEEP ON : You can hear the beep sound each time you press the buttons.

#### (3) Mute control

- ① Press and hold MUTE button (3) for over 2 seconds to mute sound output and MUTE ON will blink on the LCD. Press the button again to cancel MUTE function and resume to normal playing mode.

#### (4) Mode selection

- ① Repeat press MODE button (3) to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, USB, AUX, BT MUSIC.
- ※ If there is no USB, AUX, Bluetooth Phone connected, it would not display USB, AUX, BT when you press button (3).

## ■ RADIO

### (1) Mode button



- ① Repeat press MODE button to select FM1, FM2 or AM.

### (2) Manual tuning button



- ① To manually tune to a radio station, simply turn encoder TUNE (2) left or right to increase or decrease the radio frequency.

### (3) Auto tuning button



- ① To automatically select a radio station, simply press Seek up or Track down button.

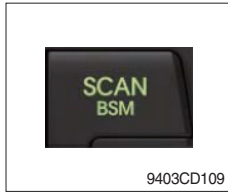


### (4) Station preset button



- ① In radio mode, pressing buttons (6) to (11) will recall the radio stations that are memorized. To store desired stations into any of the 6 preset memories, in either the AM or FM bands, use the following procedure :
  - a. Select the desired station.
  - b. Press and hold one of the preset buttons for more than 2 seconds to store the current station into preset memory. Six stations can be memorized on each of FM1, FM2, and AM.

#### (5) Preset scan (PS) / Best station memory (BSM) button



① Press BSM button (12) momentarily to scan the 6 preset stations stored in the selected band. When you hear your desired station, press it again to listen to it.

Press BSM button (12) for longer than 2 seconds to activate the Best Station Memory feature which will automatically scan and enter each station into memory.

※ **If you have already set the preset memories to your favorite stations, activating the BSM tuning feature will erase those stations and enter into the new ones. This BSM feature is most useful when travelling in a new area where you are not familiar with the local stations.**

## ■USB PLAYER

### (1) USB playback



- ① The unit was equipped with a front USB jack and also a rear USB Jack.

With a USB device plugged in the front USB jack, it will be detected as front USB mode. And with a USB device plugged in the rear USB jack, it will be detected as rear USB. To get to a USB mode, press MODE (3) button momentarily or insert the USB device in front or rear USB jack.

- ※ If there are no mp3 or wma files in USB device, it will revert to the previous mode after displaying NO FILE.

### (2) Track Up / Down button



- ① Press SEEK up (13) or TRACK down (14) to select the next or previous track. Press and hold the buttons to advance the track rapidly in the forward or backward direction.



### (3) MP3 directory / File searching



- ① Button (2) is used to select a particular directory and file in the device. Turn button (2) right or left to display the available directories. Press button (2) momentarily when the desired directory is displayed, then turn button (2) right or left again to display the tracks in that directory. Press button (2) to begin playback when the desired file is displayed.

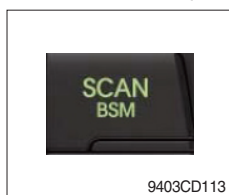
### (4) Directory Up / Down button



- ① During MP3/WMA playback, simply press DIR- button (10) to select the previous directory (if available in the device); simply press DIR+ button (11) to select the next directory (if available in the device).

- ※ If the USB device does not contain directories, it would play MP3/WMA tracks at 10- file when you press DIR- button (10), and play MP3/WMA tracks at 10+ file when you press DIR+ (11) button.

#### (5) Track Scan Play (SCAN) button



- SCAN playback : Simply press SCAN (12) button to play the first 10 seconds of each track.
- SCAN folder : Press and hold SCAN button for longer than 2 seconds to scan play the tracks in current folder.
- SCAN off : Simply press it again to cancel SCAN feature.

#### (6) Track Repeat Play (RPT) button



- REPEAT playback : Simply press RPT (8) button to play current track repeatedly.
- REPEAT folder : Press and hold RPT for longer than 2 seconds to repeat play the tracks in current folder.
- REPEAT off : Simply press it again to cancel REPEAT feature.

#### (7) Track Random Play (RDM) button



- RANDOM playback : Simply press RDM (9) button to play the tracks in the device in a random sequence.
- RANDOM folder : Press and hold RDM button for longer than 2 seconds to randomly play the tracks in the current folder.
- RANDOM off : Simply press it again to cancel RANDOM feature.

#### (8) ID3 v2 (DISP)



- ① While a MP3 file is playing, press DISP button (6) to display ID3 information. Repeat push DISP button (6) to show directory name / file name and album name / performer / title.

※ If the MP3 disc does not have any ID3 information, it will show NO ID3.

\* USB Information and Notice

- Playback FILE SYSTEM and condition allowance.
  - FAT, FAT12, FAT16 and FAT32 in the file system.
  - V1.1, V2.2 and V2.3 in the TAG (ID3) version.
- Display up to 32 characters in the LCD display.
- No support any of MULTI-CARD Reader.
- No high speed playback but only playing with normal full speed.

※ DRM files in the USB may cause malfunction to playback in the radio unit.

※ In temperatures below -10°C (14°F), the audio unit with USB hook up may be affected and not play well.

## ■AUX OPERATION

It is possible to connect your portable media player to the audio system for playback of the audio tracks via the cab speakers.

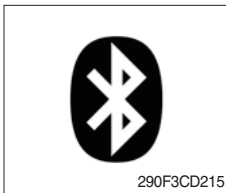
To get the best results when connecting the portable media to the audio system, follow these steps :

- Use a 3.5 mm stereo plug cable to connect the media player headphone socket at each end as follows.
  - Adjust the portable media player to approximately 3/4 volume and start playback.
  - Press the MODE button (3) on the audio unit to change into AUX mode.
  - The volume and tone can now be adjusted on the audio unit to the desired level.
- ※ The audio quality of your media player and the audio tracks on it may not be of the same sound quality as the audio system is CD Player.
  - ※ If the sound of the media player is too low compared with the radio or CD, increase the volume of the player.
  - ※ If the sound of the media player is too loud and/or distorted, decrease the volume of the player.
  - ※ When in AUX mode, only the Volume, Bass, Treble, EQ and Mode functions of the audio unit can be used.

## ■BLUETOOTH (if equipped)

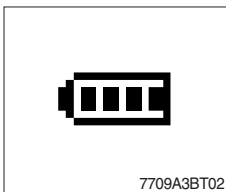
### (1) Using a bluetooth wireless connection

- ① Your audio unit supports bluetooth wireless technology. You can set up a wireless link with bluetooth cellular phone.
  - ② Continue to pair the cellular phone with the audio unit. Within a few moments the two should be able to connect.
- ※ Since this audio unit is on standby to connect with your cellular phone via bluetooth wireless technology, using this audio unit without running the engine can result in battery drainage.
  - ※ This audio units phone call reception is on standby when ignition switch is set to ACC OFF or ON.
  - ※ The line-of-sight distance between this audio unit and your cellular phone must be 10 meters or less for sending and receiving voice and data via bluetooth wireless technology. However the transmission distance may become shorter than the estimated distance depending on the environment where it is being used.
  - ※ Digital Noise & Echo suppression system provides the best sound clarity with little or no distortion (Echo & side tone will happen depending on cellular phone or service network).
  - ※ To ensure the quality of calling, you should select a proper bluetooth VR level. This audio unit is already equipped with the best bluetooth VR level.



#### a. Bluetooth icon

It will blink while establishing the bluetooth pairing.  
It will light up after a bluetooth device connected.



#### b. Battery icon

It indicates the battery status of the connected bluetooth device.



#### c. Single strength icon

It indicates the signal strength of the connected bluetooth device.

## (2) Pairing in hands free modes



- (1) Press and hold CALL button (4) for 2 seconds until you hear beep sound, then PAIR STR will appear on the display.
- (2) For the next procedure, go to cellular phone pairing mode.
- (3) If it is in pairing status with audio unit and cellular phone, PAIRING will show on the display.
- (4) If you want to exit pairing mode, press CALL END button (5) briefly while pairing, then it will show PAIR CLR on the display.
- (5) Bluetooth Icon and PAIR OK appear on the display when pairing is successful.

## 3) Cellular phone pairing mode

- ① Browse your cellular phone menu and find the connectivity or bluetooth connection section.
  - ② Select search for a new handsfree device function and allow the phone to find the mobile.
  - ③ HYUNDAI should appear on your cellular phone screen.
  - ④ Press connect menu among the handsfree option on your cellular phone.
  - ⑤ The cellular phone should prompt for a pin code. Insert the pin code 1234.
  - ⑥ The cellular phone should confirm that it has established a new paired connection.
  - ⑦ Close the menu. The pairing is now completed. It appears PAIR FAIL on the display for 3 seconds.
- ※ Each cellular phone type has distinct phone menu so you may need to refer to your manufactures instruction for the correct procedure on how to connect a new bluetooth device.
  - ※ Please retry the pairing instruction if HYUNDAI does not appear on the cellular phone screen.
  - ※ Please select authorized, if there is authorized menu in the menu of bluetooth connection in your cellular phone.
  - ※ Once the bluetooth pairing is completed between your cellular phone and this audio unit, both units will be automatically recognized on its paring like when you turn on the key in your car even though the audio unit is turned off.
  - ※ This audio unit can store up to 6 phones pairings. If the memory is full, the first stored paired phone will be deleted.
  - ※ The connecting priority will be given to the last connected cellular phone.
  - ※ If you want to change the connecting priority, try to connect this audio unit from the cellular phone you want.



#### (4) Bluetooth connection and disconnection

- ① When established bluetooth connection is made between this audio unit and the cellular phone, bluetooth icon on the display appears and then the display shows HF/AV CONN when handsfree & AV profile is connected.



- ② To disconnect bluetooth link  
Press and hold CALL END button (5) for 2 seconds, it shows DIS CON and bluetooth Icon disappears on the display.



- ③ To connect bluetooth link  
Press CALL button (4) briefly, it blinks bluetooth Icon on the display while bluetooth is being connected. If the connection is completed, bluetooth Icon displays on the display.

※ When your cellular phone battery is at low charge, the bluetooth connection may occasionally be lost. To maintain good connectivity ensure that your phone battery is adequately charged.

※ In case of failure of bluetooth pairing :

- Delete item in paired list on your phone.
- Reset both phone by power off/on and the audio unit by ACC off/on.

※ Connecting priority of handsfree profile is higher than headset profile.

※ The headset mode does not support caller ID, reject call and call Transfer.

#### (5) Using the audio unit as a handsfree device

- ① When the audio unit is ringing, it shows CALL and follows with the phone number \*\*\*\*\* on the display.



- ② To accept call  
Press CALL button (4), ANSWER CALL followed by TALKING will show in the display.

- ③ To end call  
To end call, press CALL END button (5), REJECT appears on the display.

※ If reject call is activated in your phone, then your cellular phone does not support reject call function.

#### (6) Audio transfer between the audio unit and phone

The audio transfer function is for switching the call from the audio unit to the cellular phone for private conversation.



- ① Press CALL button (4) briefly during conversation, it appears CALL TRANS on the display. To switch back to the audio unit, press button (4) briefly during private conversation, then it appears CALL TRANS on the display again.

※ This function will be a cause of disconnection of bluetooth link in some nokia phones, but do not worry, just press button (4) during private conversation, then switch back to the audio unit automatically.

※ The quality of calling between cellular phone and audio unit is better than calling between one audio unit and another one.

#### (7) Last call number dialing



- ① Press CALL button (4) briefly, it appears CALL TO on the display, then simply press CALL button once again, it would make the last call with phone number displayed on LCD.

If Reject call is activated in your phone, then your cellular phone does not support Reject Call function.

※ If you are using SAMSUNG phone, then you may need to press send button once more. With the first press of button it should show contact list in your phone, then if you press again you should be ready to make the last call.

#### (8) To make a call by cellular phone

The audio transfer function is for switching the call from the audio unit to the cellular phone for private conversation.

- ① The audio unit will be activated automatically when you make a call with cellular phone.
- ② When you make a call processing by cellular phone, it shows CALLING on the display.
- ③ When you receive a call, the phone number \*\*\*\*\* appears on the display.

#### **(9) Using the audio unit as bluetooth music**

The audio unit supports A2DP (Audio Advanced Distribution Profile) and AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile), and both profiles are available to listen music at the audio unit via cellular phone which is supporting the two profiles above.

- ① To play music, search the menu on your cellular phone as below :  
i.e : Menu→ File manager→ Music→ Option→ Play via bluetooth.  
It appears BT MP3 on the display.
  - ② During BT MP3 playing, you could select the previous or next track by pressing SEEK up or TRACK down button on audio unit or operate via your cellular phone.
  - ③ To stop music, press button (5) briefly and it will automatically switch into the previous mode.
  - ④ To resume music playing, press the play button on your cellular phone.
- ※ This function may be different depending on cellular phone. Please follow the cellular phone menu. Some types of phones need to pair once more for bluetooth MP3 connection.
- ※ **This function will be caused to disconnect A2DP, AVRCP depends on cellular phone.**
- ※ **Information about songs (e.g.: the elapsed playing time, song title, song index, etc.) cannot be displayed on this audio unit.**

## 6) RADIO AND USB PLAYER (MACHINE SERIAL NO. : #0647-)

### ■ WITH BLUETOOTH



19A3RD02

1 USB port with cover : Open the cover and connect the USB storage device.

2 ENTER/AST button with tune dial.

3 Display window for play / reception / menu state and information.

4 POWER button with VOLUME dial : turns power on, mute function on/off or selects a menu item (press), control the volume level or menu item.

5 AUX port with cover : Open the cover and plugging the external audio device.

6 Call / call end button :

- when a call comes in : accepts a call (press); rejects a call (press and hold)
- during a call connection : ends a call (press) ; switches between hands-free and private call modes (press and hold)
- in standby mode: opens call list (press) ; makes a call a recently connected number (press and hold)

7 BAND button : enters Radio mode or changes the radio band (press).

8 Preset button :

- Radio: Recall each stored station (press) ; store each station (press and hold).
- USB : changes playback mode (press 1 II, 2 RPT or 3 RDM buttons); shows available information about the current track (press 4 INFO button) ; move to folder down/up (press 5 D-/6 D+ buttons).
- Bluetooth audio : pause/resume playback (press 1 II) ; shows information of the connected Bluetooth device (press 4 INFO button).

9 MODE button : selects USB, Bluetooth audio or AUX play mode (press).

10 MENU button : enters Menu setting mode or returns to the previous menu (press).

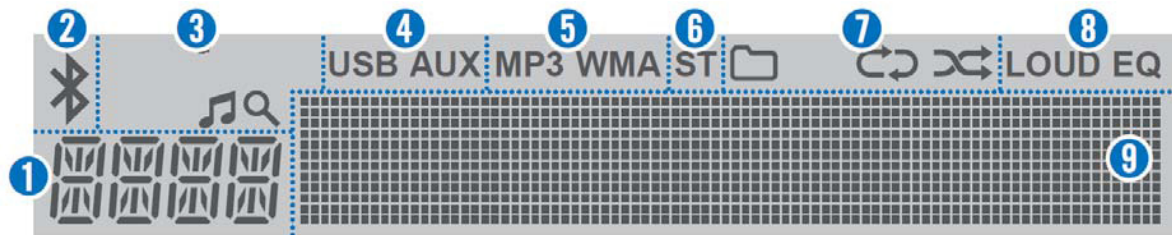
## ■ WITHOUT BLUETOOTH






19A3RD01

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1 USB port with cover : Open the cover and connect the USB storage device.</p> <p>2 ENTER/AST button with tune dial.</p> <p>3 Display window for play/reception/menu state and information.</p> <p>4 POWER button with VOLUME dial : turns power on, mute function on/off or selects a menu item (press), control the volume level or menu item.</p> <p>5 AUX port with cover : Open the cover and plugging the external audio device.</p> <p>6 FM button : enters FM Radio mode.</p> <p>7 AM button : enters AM Radio mode.</p> | <p>8 Preset button :<br/>           - Radio : Recall each stored station (press) ; store each station (press and hold).<br/>           - USB : changes playback mode (press 1 II, 2 RPT or 3 RDM buttons) ; shows available information about the current track (press 4 INFO button) ; move to folder down/up (press 5 D-/6 D+ buttons).</p> <p>9 MODE button : selects USB or AUX play mode (press).</p> <p>10 MENU button : enters Menu setting mode or returns to the previous menu (press).</p> |
|---|--|

## ■ DISPLAY WINDOW (LCD)

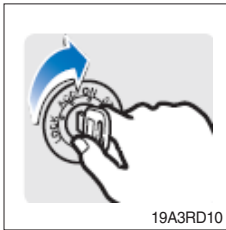


19A3RD03

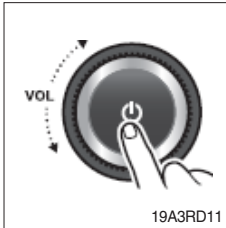
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1 Function display area for showing the function mode.</p> <p>2 Bluetooth indicator for the Bluetooth connection.</p> <p>3 Search indicator for USB play list.</p> <p>4 USB/AUX indicators for the USB or External device connection.</p> <p>5 MP3/WMA indicators for USB's Audio Stream detections.</p> <p>6 ST (Stereo) indicators for FM stereo reception.</p> | <p>7 Playback mode indicators for USB playback mode.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">  : Folder mode.<br/>  : Repeat playback.<br/>  : Random playback.         </p> <p>8 LOUD/EQ indicators for sound effect.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">LOUD : Loudness mode.<br/>EQ : EQ mode.</p> <p>9 Multi-function display area for showing the play, reception or menu information.</p> |
|--|---|

## ■ GENERAL

### (1) Power and volume button



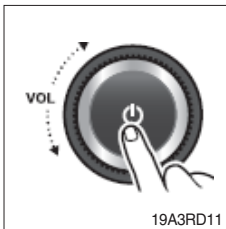
- ① Turn the starting switch to ON position.



- ② Press the POWER button to turn the power on.

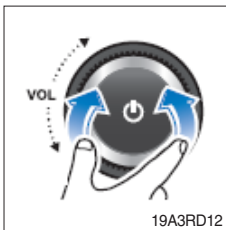
- If the source is ready, playback also starts.
- To turn on the power directly.

By connecting an USB into the USB port or pressing the BAND, MODE (while the USB is connected), you can also turn on the power and the unit then plays.



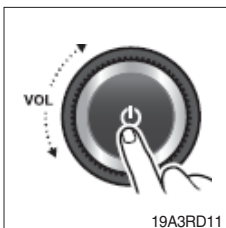
- ③ When power is on, press and hold the POWER button to turn power off.

### (2) Adjusting volume directly



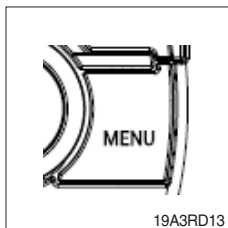
- ① Turn the VOLUME dial to control volume.
  - Available volume range : 00 (mute)~41.

### (3) Muting the sound quickly

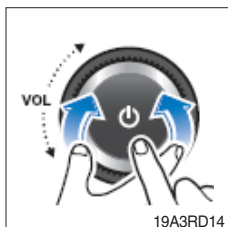


- ① Press the MUTE button to turn mute on.
  - "MUTE" will flash on the display and mute the sound.
  - Press the MUTE button again or turn VOLUME dial to restore sound.

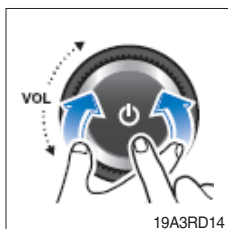
#### (4) Setting the sound



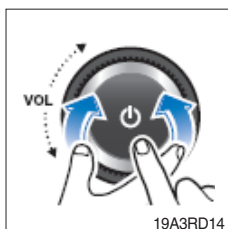
- ① Press MENU button to enter the Settings menu mode.
  - After entering MENU mode, press MENU button to return to the previous item.



- ② Turn VOLUME dial to select the "SOUND" or "EQUALIZER" as below, then press this dial.
  - SOUND : sets the sound mode.
  - EQUALIZER : selects the equalizer style.



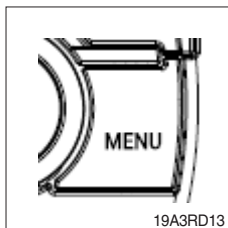
- ③ Turn VOLUME dial to select the desired Sound setting mode, then press this dial.
  - BASS : sets the bass sound level (-5~+5).
  - MIDDLE : sets the middle sound level (-5~+5).
  - TREBLE : sets the treble sound level (-5~+5).
  - BALANCE : sets the sound balance between the right and left speakers (LEFT 15~RIGHT 15).
  - EQUALIZER : selects the one of the 7 EQ styles (EQ OFF, POP, ROCK, COUNTRY, VOICE, JAZZ, CLASSIC).
  - PREVIOUS : Return to previous menu screen.



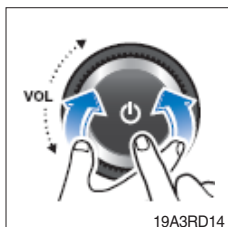
- ④ Turn VOLUME dial to adjust the value of the level, balance or style, then press this dial.



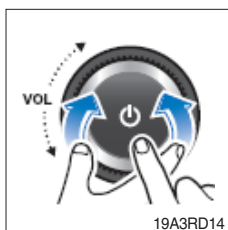
## (5) Setting the system functions



- ① Press MENU button to enter the Settings menu mode. Turn VOLUME dial to select "SYSTEM" as below, then press this dial.



- ② Turn the VOLUME dial to select the "BT ON/OFF", "SCROLL", "LOUD" or "BEEP" then press this dial.
  - BT (Bluetooth) ON/OFF : activate (On) or deactivate (Off) the Bluetooth function. – (only ARA-9010HB).
  - SCROLL : activate (On) or deactivate (Off) the text scroll feature for LCD display screen.
  - LOUD : activate (On) or deactivate (Off) the loudness sound effect.
  - BEEP : activate (On) or deactivate (Off) the beep sound feature.
  - PREVIOUS : Return to previous menu screen.

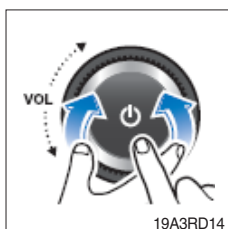


- ③ Turn VOLUME dial to select ON or OFF, then press this dial.

## (6) Setting the region



- ① Press MENU button to enter the Settings menu mode. Turn VOLUME dial to select "AREA" as below, then press this dial.
  - AREA : sets the region for radio.



- ② Turn the VOLUME dial to select the desired area as below, then press this dial.
  - If the region setting is not selected correctly to your country or region, the radio reception can not be received. Retry the setting the region of radio reception correctly.
  - The region setting is required only for the first time.

- **ASIA/M.East**

FM : 87.5~108.0 MHz (100 kHz step)

AM : 531~1,602 kHz (9 kHz step)

- **AMERICA**

FM : 87.5~107.9 MHz (200 kHz step)

AM : 530~1,710 kHz (10 kHz step)

- **LATIN**

FM : 87.5~108.0 MHz (100 kHz step)

AM : 530~1,710 kHz (10 kHz step)

- **EUROPE**

FM : 87.5~108.0 MHz (50 kHz step)

AM : 531~1,620 kHz (9 kHz step)

- **JAPAN**

FM : 76~90 MHz (100 kHz step)

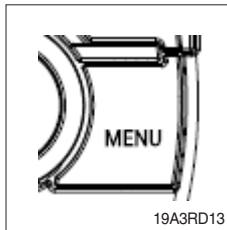
AM : 522~1,629 kHz (9 kHz step)

- **Russia (OIRT)**

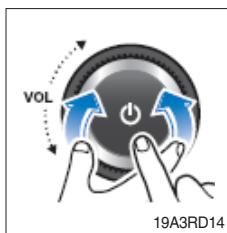
FM : 65.0~74.0 MHz (30 kHz step)

AM : 522~1,602 kHz (9 kHz step)

## (7) Checking/updating the system Software

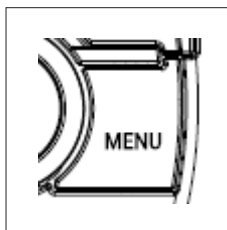


- ① Press MENU button to enter the Settings menu mode. Turn VOLUME dial to select "SOFTWARE" as below, then press this dial.
  - SOFTWARE : check/update the system software.

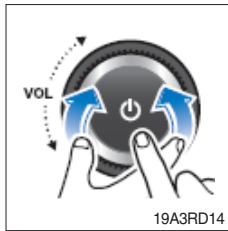


- ② To check the system software, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "VERSION CHECK", then press this dial.
- ③ To update the system software, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "UPDATE", then press this dial.
  - Download the latest system software to a USB device for update to this unit, then open the cover and plug the USB device to the USB port.
  - Perform update with the start switch "ON" when the battery is sufficiently charged by driving the vehicle. When the battery is discharged while updating, the system may get damaged with the update stopped.

## (8) Setting the Bluetooth mode (only ARA-9010HB)



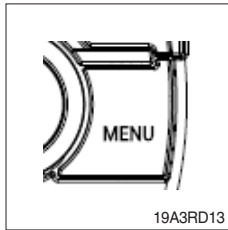
- ① Press MENU button to enter the Settings menu mode. Turn VOLUME dial to select "BLUETOOTH" as below, then press this dial.
  - Bluetooth: Bluetooth setting mode.



- ② Turn VOLUME dial to select the desired Bluetooth setting mode, then press this dial.
  - PAIR : register a Bluetooth device.
  - SELECT : selects/connects a device from registered Bluetooth devices.
  - DELETE : removes a device from registered Bluetooth device.
  - MIC VOL : adjusts the Bluetooth microphone.
  - H/F VOL : adjusts the Bluetooth hands-free volume.
  - Phone Book : activates/deactivates the phone book download feature from connected device.
  - BT INFO : shows the Bluetooth information of this system.
  - PREVIOUS : returns to previous menu screen.
- ③ To change the connected Bluetooth device, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "SELECT", then press this dial. Turn the VOLUME dial to select the desired device list, then press this dial.
- ④ To delete the Bluetooth device, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "DELETE", then press this dial. Turn the VOLUME dial to select the desired device list, then press this dial.
  - If the currently connected device is delete, this unit attempts to connect with the following priority Bluetooth device automatically.
- ⑤ To adjust the Bluetooth microphone initial volume, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "MIC VOL", then press this dial. Turn the VOLUME dial to set desired Bluetooth microphone initial volume level, then press this dial.
  - The default setting is 3, the volume range is 1~5.
- ⑥ To adjust the Bluetooth hands-free initial volume, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "H/F VOL", then press this dial. Turn the VOLUME dial to set desired Bluetooth hands-free initial volume level, then press this dial.
  - The default setting is 15, the volume range is 6~32.
- ⑦ To download the phone book, turn the VOLUME dial to select the "phone book", then press this dial. Turn the VOLUME dial to select the "ENABLE", then press this dial.
  - The phone book can download up to 1,000 phone numbers.

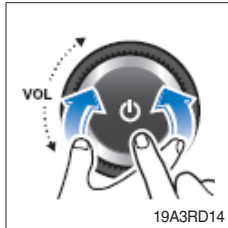
## ■ BLUETOOTH

### (1) Pairing/Connecting your device




- ① Firstly, set up the Bluetooth device to be connected from the Bluetooth settings menu to enable other devices to search for the Bluetooth device.

Press MENU button to enter the Menu settings mode.





- ② Turn VOLUME dial to select the "BLUETOOTH" as below, then press this dial.

- ③ Turn the VOLUME dial to select the "PAIR", then press this dial.

- When you first register, appear the "BT Pairing" on the display window, then search the Bluetooth devices for connection.
- If a Bluetooth device is not connected, press and hold the  button to enter the pairing mode directly.

- ④ Search and select device "Device Name" in your Bluetooth device, then confirm.

- The Bluetooth registration standby proceeds for 1 minute. If the registration is failed during 1minute, restart over from the beginning.
- After a while, the Bluetooth device is automatically registered. When pairing is successful, the "Connected" and "Device name" will be displayed 3 seconds.
- When your Bluetooth device is connected,  appear on the display.
- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected,  disappear.

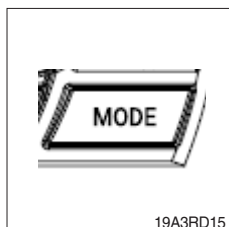
- ⑤ Repeat items 1~4 to register to add another Bluetooth device.


- Up to 5 devices can be paired to this unit.
- The last device connected to this unit is set to automatically connect to the highest priority.

## (2) Playing the Bluetooth music

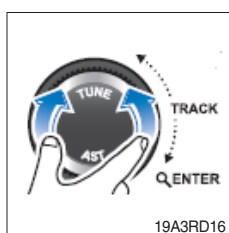
To play Bluetooth music

- ※ A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) : This function only operates with Bluetooth devices that support A2DP version 1.2 or above.
- ※ Should be set to Stereo Headset in Bluetooth device type menu of your device

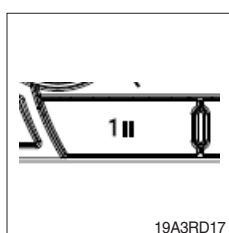


- ① Press the MODE button repeatedly to select the BT Audio mode. Appears  on display window and start playback.
  - If a Bluetooth device is not connected, you can not select.
  - If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after switching to Bluetooth Music (streaming audio) mode or after pressing Play on the mobile device itself, try to start music playback by pressing the Play button again.
  - The output music playback from Bluetooth devices with this unit.
  - There will be music playback automatically play upon entering since once played. It stops automatically when you exit from the music.
  - You can also phone or Bluetooth device other than the home screen mode, Bluetooth music play mode when entering and exiting, the device does not play automatically.

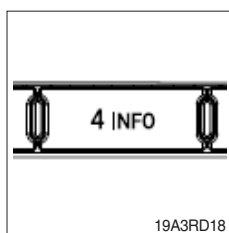
## (3) Controlling the playback



- ① While playing, turn the TUNE/TRACK dial to moves to the previous or next track.
  - Clockwise : move to the next file.
  - Counter-clockwise : move to beginning of the current file or previous file.



- ② While playing, press the [1 II] button to pause the track with "PAUSE" indicator.
  - Press this button again to play the current track.





- ③ Press the [4 INFO] button to check the information of current connected device.
  - About the music files are not displayed.
  - During Bluetooth music playback, do not operate the music changes too quickly. Allow enough time for the machine-to-machine communication.

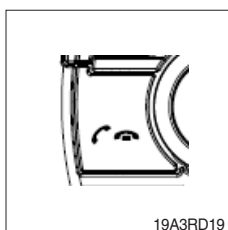
#### (4) Answering a call


- ※ When a call comes in, the audio source is muted, and display the call information with ring tone.
- ※ If the phonebook is not downloaded, only incoming phone number is displayed without the caller information.

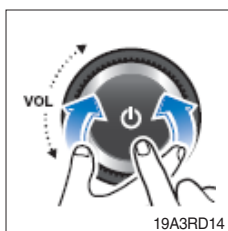



- ① To answer a call, press the  button or to reject a call press and hold the  button.
  - When a call comes in, the audio source is muted.
  - When a call is ended, this unit returns to the previous state media playback.

#### (5) Making a call from recent number

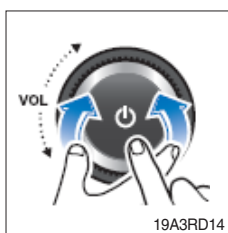


- ① To call the recent connected number, press the  button to display recent call number.
  - The recent calls list is displayed. Turn the VOLUME dial to select a recent call number, then press this dial to make a call.
  - The recent calls list displays up to 10.



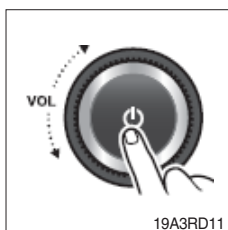
- ② To call the last connected number directly, press and hold the  button.



#### (6) During a call ...




- ① To adjust the a call volume, turn the VOLUME dial.
  - The call volume works with Bluetooth devices, and operates separately from the volume of this unit.

- ② To deactivate the microphone, press the POWER button.

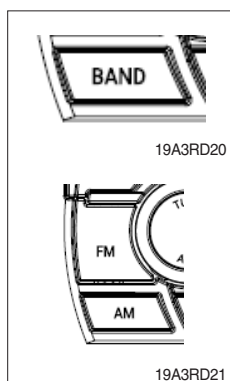


- ③ To switch from hands-free mode to the phone handset mode, press and hold the  button.  
To returns the phone conversation to hands-free mode, press and hold the  button.

- ④ To end a call, press the  button.
  - • End a call, then return to the playing state.

## ■ RADIO

### (1) Tuning in a radio station

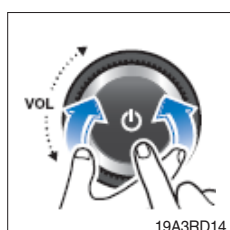


① Press the BAND or FM/AM button repeatedly to enter the radio band in order of FM1, FM2, FMA, AM1, AM2 or AMA.

- You can select the FM1, FM2, FMA or AM1, AM2, AMA radio band.

While the Auto Store stations(AST) are stored, you can select the AMA or FMA band by additional.

- The previously chosen broadcasting station will be received.

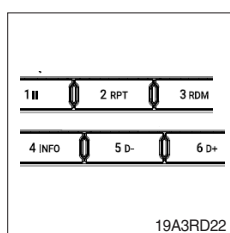


② Turn the TUNE/TRACK dial to select the station.

- Briefly turn this dial, plays previous/next frequency.
- Turn and hold this dial, automatically search for station with superior reception.
- Press this dial, starting from the current station, stations with superior reception are scanned for 5 seconds and the previous station is restored. During the seeking or scanning, if press or turn the dial left/right again, the selected station will begin playing.
- During the FM reception, the Stereo [ST] indicator is on.

### (2) Saving radio stations manually

※ You can save up to 6 preset channels each for FM1, FM2, AM1,AM and AM2 band. If change the stations while driving, use preset button to prevent accidents.



① Press the BAND or FM/AM button repeatedly to select the band.

② After selecting the frequency, press and hold the PRESET [1II]~[6 D+] button.

③ The frequency is saved to the selected preset button.

- A total of 24 frequencies with 6 preset frequencies each for FM1/FM2/AM1/AM2 modes can be saved.

### (3) Saving radio stations automatically

※ You can save up to 6 preset channels automatically each for FMA and AMA band.



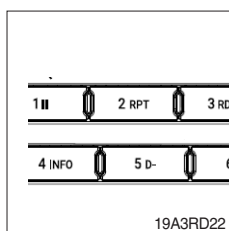
- ① Press the BAND or FM/AM button repeatedly to enter the radio band.
  - The previously chosen broadcasting station will be received.
- ② Press and hold the AST button to automatically save receivable frequencies to Preset button.
  - Up to 6 stations can be stored in each of the FMA and AMA band.

### (4) Listening to a preset station

- ① Press the BAND or FM/AM button repeatedly to enter the radio band in order of FM1, FM2, FMA, AM1, AM2 or AMA.
  - You can select the FM1, FM2, FMA or AM1, AM2, AMA radio band.

While the Auto Store stations(AST) are stored, you can select the AMA or FMA band by additional.

  - The previously chosen broadcasting station will be received.



- ② Press the PRESET [1II]~[6 D+] button.
  - From the 6 presets, select the frequency you want to listen to.



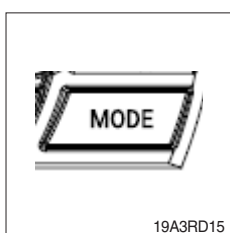
## ■ USB PLAYER

### (1) Playing an USB device



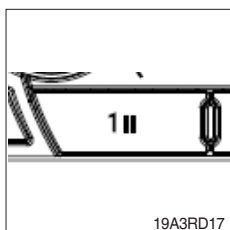
① Open the cover, plug the USB device(included MP3/WMA media file) to the USB port.

- Once a USB is connected, USB will automatically start playing from the first file within the USB.
- If a previously played USB is reconnected, then the file after the most recently played file is played.
- If a different USB is connected or the file information within the USB was changed, then the USB will start playing from the first song within the USB.



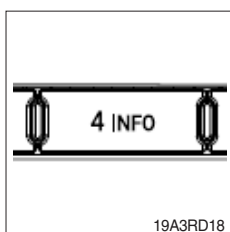
② When an USB device to be played is already connected, press the MODE button to play USB device.

- The previously selected file is played.



③ While playing, press the [1||] button to pause the file.

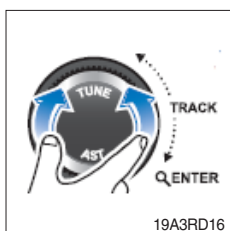
### (2) Changing the song information



① Press the [4 INFO] button repeatedly to display information about the file being played.

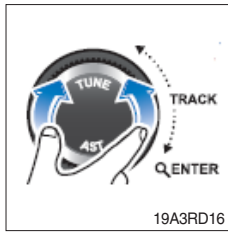
- The information displayed includes the file name, playing time, ID3 Tag or folder name information saved with the song.
- If there is no information on the playing file, the unit will display "NO INFO", and then file name.

### (3) Controlling the playback



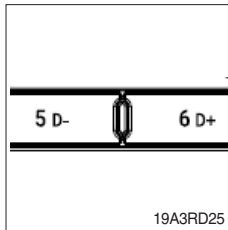
① While playing, turn the ►► I TRACK I ◀◀ dial left/right to moves to the previous or next track.

- Clockwise : move to the next file.
- Counter-clockwise : move to the previous file.



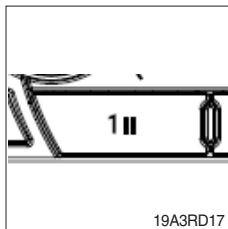
② While the ►►| TRACK |◄◄ dial is being turned and held, the file will rewind or fast forward at high speed. Once released, the file will begin playing at normal speed.

- Clockwise : fast forward.
- Counter-clockwise : fast rewind
- The search function works but search speed is not constant. While fast forwarding or rewinding, the playback sound is not output.



③ Press the [5 D-] or [6 D+] button to moves to the previous or next folder.

- [5 D-] press : move to previous folder.
- [6 D+] press : move to next folder.
- While folder moving, the folder name will be displayed briefly.



④ While playing, press the [1 II] button to pause the track.

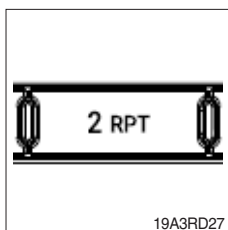
- Press the button again to play the current track.





④ To find the song you want to play directly, press the Q (Search) button.

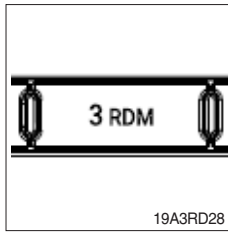
- Turn the ►►| TRACK |◄◄ dial to select the desired file name, then press this dial.




#### (4) Change the playback mode



① Press the [2 RPT] button to select the Repeat playback mode.

-  On : The current file plays repeatedly.
-  On : The current folder plays repeatedly.
- Off : Cancels repeat playback.



- ② Press the [3 RDM] button to select the Random playback mode.
-   On : All files of current folder play in random order.
  -  On : All files of USB device play in random order.
  - Off : Cancels random playback.

#### (5) Handling precautions for USB device

- The device will only recognize USB devices formatted in FAT 16/32. When formatting the external USB device, the device may not properly recognize a Byte/Sector selection other than 512 Bytes or 2,048 Bytes.
- The amount of time required to recognize the external USB device may differ depending on the type, size, or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in the required time are not indications of malfunction. Please wait the period of time required to recognize the device.
- This unit can recognize maximum 9,999 files and 256 folders into the USB device.
- The device may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management).

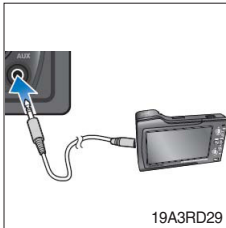
## ■ AUX PLAYER

### (1) Listening to auxiliary audio equipment

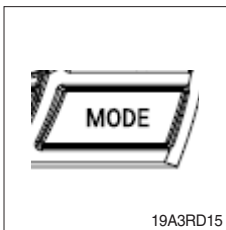
※ By connecting an optional portable audio device to the AUX input jack (stereo 3.5 pi) on the unit and then simply selecting the source, you can listen on your car speakers.



- ① Turn the VOLUME dial left to decrease the volume level.
  - The AUX volume can also be controlled separately through the connected device.



- ② Turn the external audio equipment off. Open the cover, connect the audio output of the external audio equipment to AUX input terminal on the unit.
- ③ Turn the external audio equipment on. Start playback of the external audio equipment at a moderate volume.



- ④ Press the MODE button repeatedly to select the AUX function.
- ⑤ Set your usual listening volume by turn the VOLUME dial left/right on the unit.
  - Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.
  - AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.

## 1. INSTRUCTION FOR NEW MACHINE

- 1) It takes about 100 operation hours to enhance its designed performance.
- 2) Operate according to the 3 steps and avoid excessive operation for the initial 100 hours.

Service meter	Load
Until 10 hours	About 60 %
Until 100 hours	About 80 %
After 100 hours	100 %

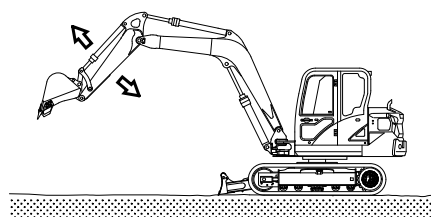
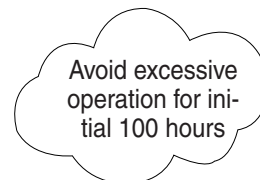
※ **Excessive operation may deteriorate the performance of the machine and shorten the life of the machine.**

### 3) Be careful during the initial 100 hours operation

- (1) Check daily for the level and leakage of fluids.
- (2) Check greasing points on a regular basis and grease all points as needed. Refer to greasing chart located on the machine.
- (3) Check over all hose connections, bolts, nuts and screws, on a daily basis.
- (4) Warm up the machine fully before operating.
- (5) Check all gauges occasionally during the operation.
- (6) Check if the machine is operating normally during operation of the machine.

### 4) After the initial 250 hours of operation replace the following:

Checking items	Hours
Engine oil	250
Engine oil filter	
Fuel filter element	
Hydraulic oil return filter	
Pilot line filter element	
Travel reduction gear oil	



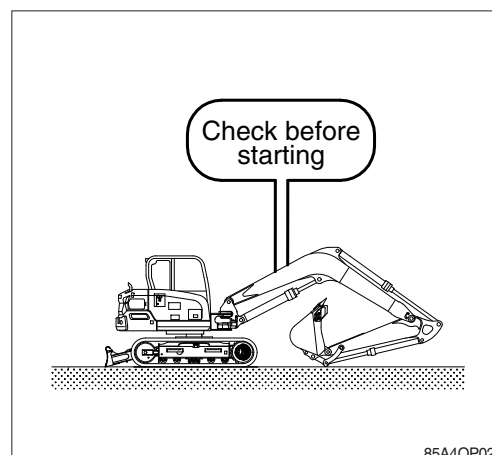
85A4OP01

## 2. CHECK BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

- 1) Look around and under the machine to check:
  - Check for loose nuts, bolts or wiring
  - Collection of dirt
  - Collection of dust at places which reach high temperature
  - Leakage of oil, fuel or coolant
  - Condition of the work equipment and hydraulic system.

※ Refer to section, Maintenance check list in chapter 6.

- 2) Adjust operator seat to best fit the operator.
- 3) Adjust all mirrors to best fit the operator.



### 3. STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE

#### 1) CHECK INDICATOR LIGHTS

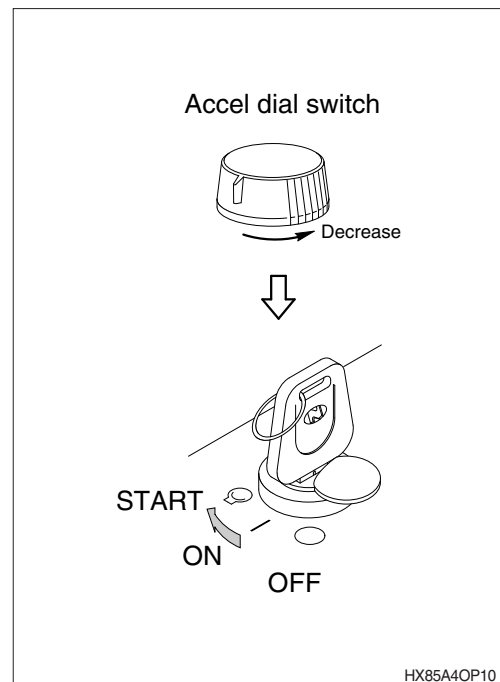
- (1) Confirm all operating lever is on the neutral position.
- (2) Turn the starting switch to the ON position, and check following.
  - ① If all the lamps light up, buzzer will sound for 6 seconds.
  - ② Only below lamps will light up and all the other lights will go OFF after 2 seconds.
    - Battery charging warning lamp
    - Engine oil pressure warning lamp
  - ③ The preheat pilot lamp will light up when the coolant temperature is below 10 °C (50 °F).
  - ④ The warming up pilot lamp will light up when the coolant temperature is below 30 °C (86 °F).
- ※ If the ESL function is set to the YES, enter the password to start engine.
- ※ If the incorrect password is entered a total of 5 times, you must wait 30 minutes before trying again.
- ※ Refer to page 3-8 for the ESL function.



#### 2) STARTING ENGINE IN NORMAL

▲ Check if any obstacles or people are in the working area. Sound the horn to warn anyone in the vicinity that you are starting the engine.

- (1) Turn the multimodal dial to low idle position.
- (2) Turn the starting switch to START position to start the engine.
  - △ Do not hold the starting switch in the START position for longer than 20 seconds. The start system may be seriously damaged.
  - ※ If the engine does not start, allow the stator to cool for about 2 minutes before re-attempting to start the engine again.
- (3) Release the starting switch instantly after the engine starts to avoid possible damage to the starting motor.



### 3) STARTING ENGINE IN COLD WEATHER

※ By following below steps, you will be able to improve startability and fuel consumption in cold weather.

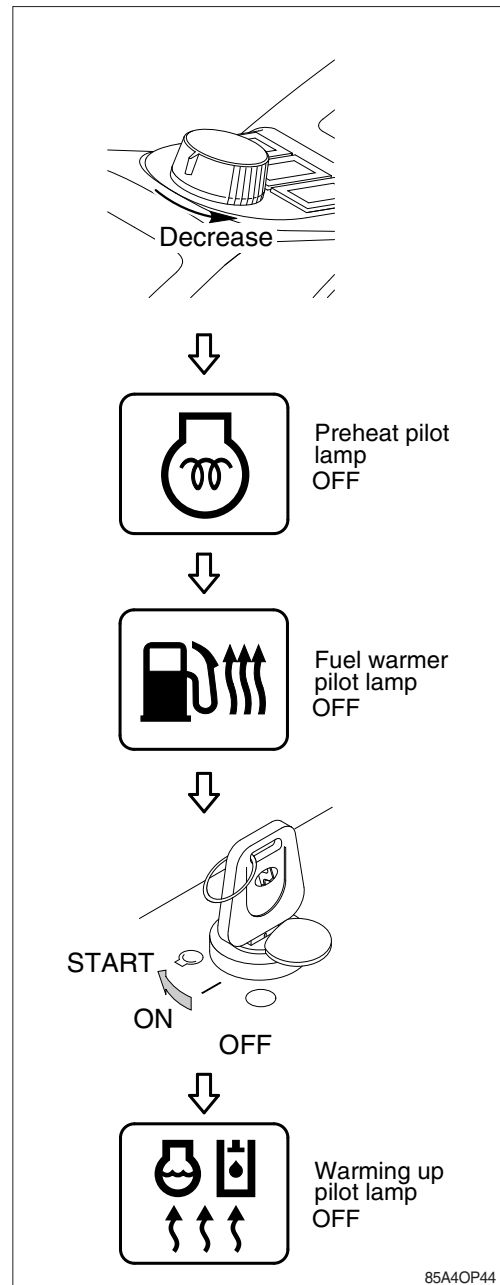
▲ Always check for obstacles in the area and sound horn before starting the engine.

※ Check engine oil and fuel and replace as necessary. See page 2-21.

※ Top off coolant as needed.

※ When you turn ON starting switch, the fuel warmer automatically heats the fuel as needed by sensing coolant temperature.

- (1) Confirm all levers are in the neutral position.
- (2) Turn the multimodal dial to low idle position.
- (3) Turn the starting switch to the ON position, and wait 1~2 minutes. More time might be required, it depends on the ambient temperature.
- (4) Wait for five minutes to warm up the engine after the preheating pilot lamp turns off, and then turn the starting switch to the START position to start the engine.
  - ※ If the engine does not start, allow the starter to cool for about 2 minutes before attempting to start the engine again.
- (5) Release the starting switch immediately after starting engine.
- (6) If the temperature of the coolant is lower than 30 °C (86 °F) the warming up process automatically starts.
  - ※ Do not operate the working devices, or change the operation mode during the warming up.





#### 4) INSPECTION AFTER ENGINE START

Inspect and confirm the following after engine starts.

- (1) Is the oil level gauge of hydraulic tank in the normal operation range?
- (2) Is there any leakage of oil or water?
- (3) Are all the warning lamps turned OFF (1)?
- (4) Are the indicator of water temperature gauge (2) and hydraulic temperature gauge (3) in the operating range?
- (5) Is the engine sound and the color of exhaust gas normal?
- (6) Are the sound and vibration normal?

△ **Do not increase engine speed quickly after starting, it can damage engine or turbocharger.**

※ **If there are problems in the control panel, stop the engine immediately and correct problem as required.**

#### 5) WARMING-UP OPERATION

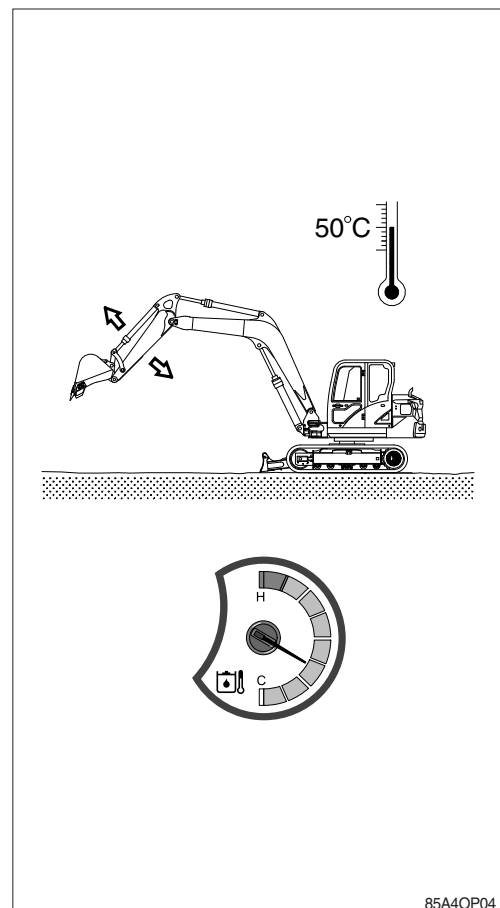
※ The most suitable temperature for the hydraulic oil is about 50°C (122°F).

△ **If the hydraulic oil temperature drops below 25°C (77°F), sudden operation can damage the hydraulic system. So temperature must be raised to at least 25°C (77°F) before starting work.**

- (1) Run the engine at low idling for 5 minutes.
  - (2) Speed up the idling and run the engine at mid-range speed.
  - (3) Operate bucket lever for 5 minutes.  
※ **Do not operate anything except bucket lever.**
  - (4) Run the engine at the high speed and operate the bucket lever and arm lever for 5-10 minutes.  
※ **Operate only the bucket lever and arm lever.**
  - (5) Finally this warming-up process will be completed by operating all cylinders several times along with the operation of swing and traveling.
- ※ **Increase the warming-up operation during winter.**



85AOP06B

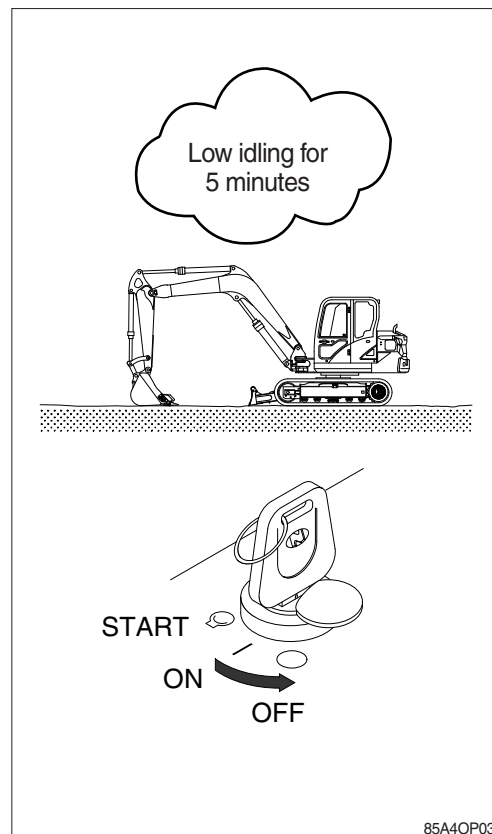


85A4OP04

## 6) TO STOP THE ENGINE

- ※ If the engine is abruptly stopped before it has cooled down, engine life may be greatly shortened. Consequently, do not abruptly stop the engine apart from an emergency.
- ※ In particular if the engine has overheated, do not abruptly stop it but run it at low speed to allow it to cool gradually, then stop the engine.

- (1) Lower the bucket to the ground then put all the levers in the neutral position.
- (2) Run the engine at low idle for about 5 minutes.
- (3) Return the key of starting switch to the OFF position.
- (4) Remove the key to prevent other people using the machine and the safety knob.
- (5) Lock the cab door.

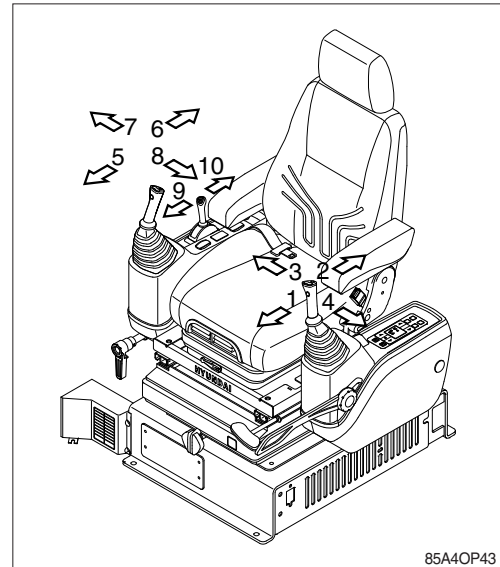


## 4. OPERATION OF WORKING DEVICE

※ **Confirm the operation of control lever and working device.**

- 1) Left control lever controls arm and swing.
- 2) Right control lever controls boom and bucket.
- 3) When you release the control lever, control lever returns to neutral position automatically.

※ **When operating swing, consider the swing distance by inertia.**



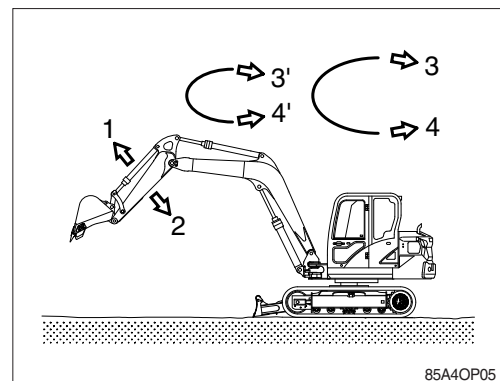
※ **Left control lever**

- 1 Arm roll-out
- 2 Arm roll-in
- 3 Swing right
- 4 Swing left

※ **Boom swing (boom offset switch selected)**

- 3' Boom swing right
- 4' Boom swing left

※ **Refer to page 3-16 for boom offset switch.**

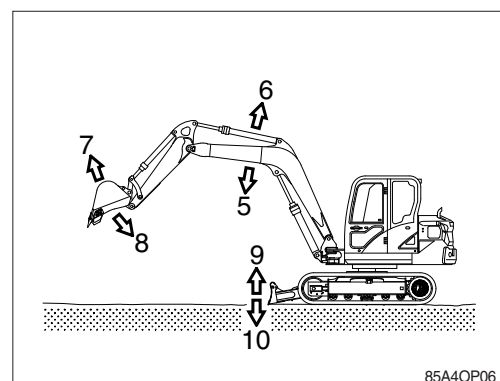


※ **Right control lever**

- 5 Boom lower
- 6 Boom raise
- 7 Bucket roll-out
- 8 Bucket roll-in

※ **Dozer control lever**

- 9 Dozer blade up
- 10 Dozer blade down



## 5. TRAVELING OF THE MACHINE

### 1) BASIC OPERATION

#### (1) Traveling position

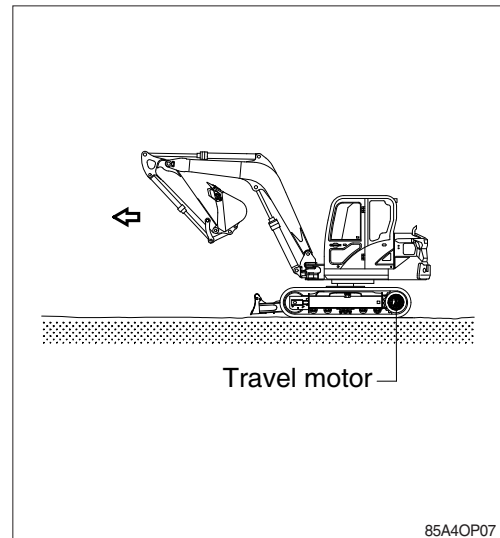
The travel motor is in the rear and the working device is forward.

- ▲ **Be careful as the traveling direction will be the opposite when the machine is rotated 180°.**

#### (2) Traveling operation

It is possible to travel by either travel lever or pedal.

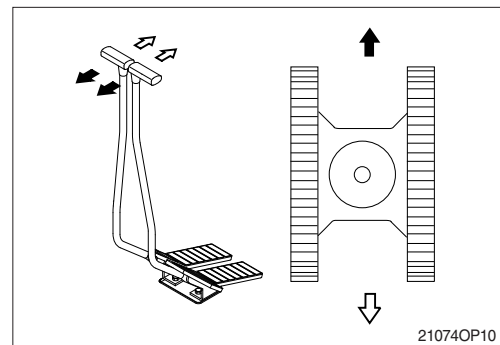
- ※ **Do not travel continuously for a long time.**
- ※ **Reduce the engine speed and travel at a low speed when traveling on uneven ground.**



#### (3) Forward and backward traveling

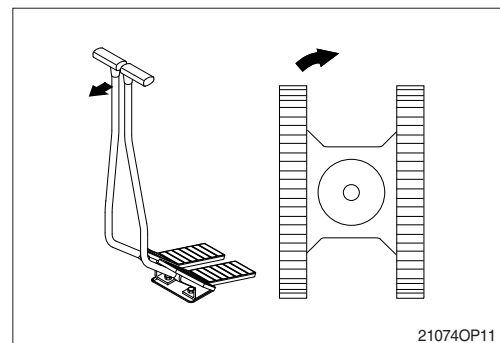
When the left and right travel levers or pedals are pushed at the same time, the machine will travel forward or backward depending on your selection.

- ※ **The speed can be controlled by the operation stroke of lever or pedal and change of direction will be controlled by difference of the left and right stroke.**



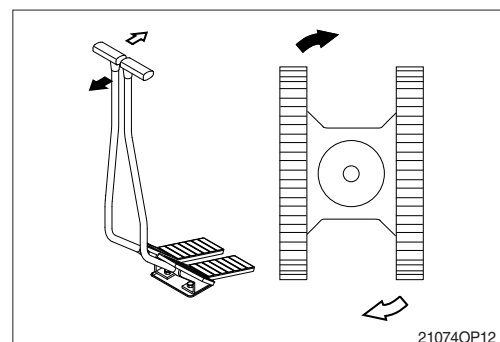
#### (4) Pivot turning

Operating only one side of lever or pedal makes the change of direction possible by moving only one track.



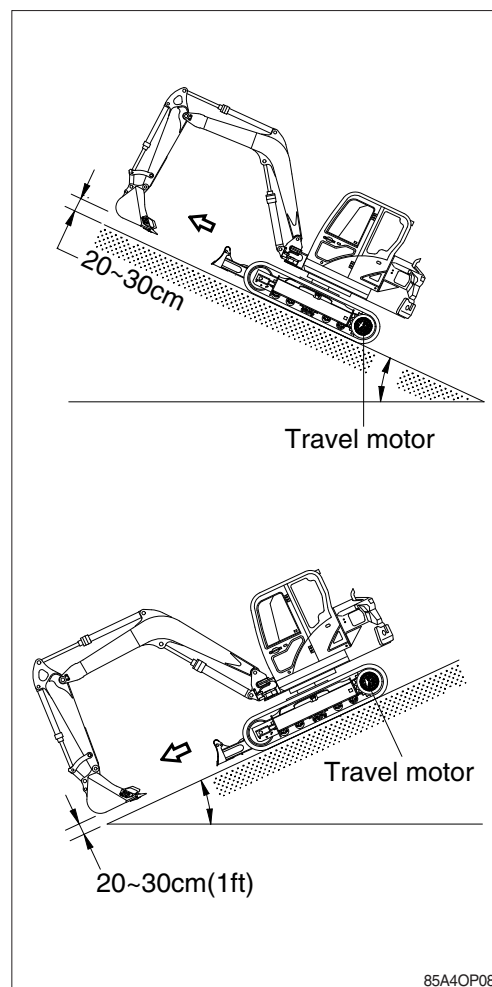
#### (5) Counter rotation

It is to rotate the undercarriage (only) while not advancing the machine forward or backward. This is accomplished by moving the travel levers and or pedals in the opposite direction of each other.



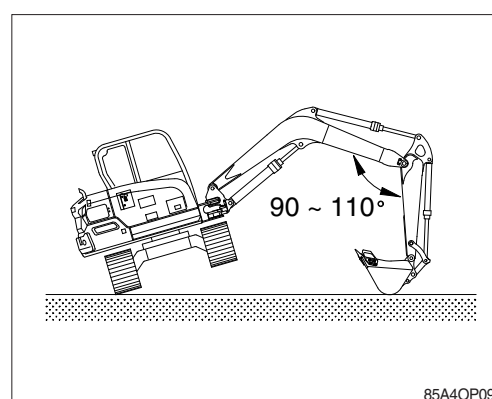
## 2) TRAVELING ON A SLOPE

- (1) Make sure that the travel lever is properly maneuvered by confirming the travel motor is in the right location.
  - (2) Maintain the bucket 20 to 30 cm (1 ft) from the ground so that it can be used as a brake in the event of an emergency.
  - (3) If the machine starts to slide or loses stability, lower the bucket immediately as it will help slow or stop the machine.
  - (4) When parking on a slope, use the bucket as a brake.
- ※ Machine cannot travel effectively on a slope when the oil temperature is low. Do the warming-up operation when it is going to travel on a slope.
- ▲ Be careful when working on slopes. It may cause the machine to lose its balance and turn over. Serious injury or death could occur.
- ▲ Be sure to keep the travel speed switch on the LOW (turtle mark) while traveling on a slope.



## 3) TRAVELING ON SOFT GROUND

- ※ If possible, avoid operating on soft ground.
- (1) Move forward as far as machine can move.
  - (2) Take care not to go beyond the depth where towing is impossible on soft ground.
  - (3) When driving becomes impossible, lower bucket and use boom and arm to pull the machine. Operate boom, arm, and travel lever at the same time to avoid the machine sinking.



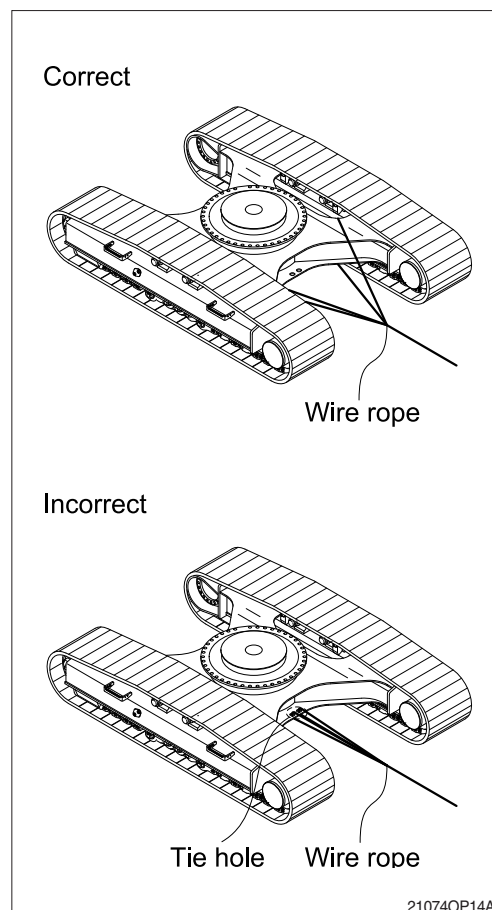
#### 4) TOWING THE MACHINE

Tow the machine as follows when it can not move on its own.

- (1) Tow the machine after hooking the wire rope to the frame as shown in the upper right illustration.
- (2) Hook the wire rope to the frame and put a support under each part of wire rope to prevent damage.

※ **Never tow the machine using only the tie hole, because this may break.**

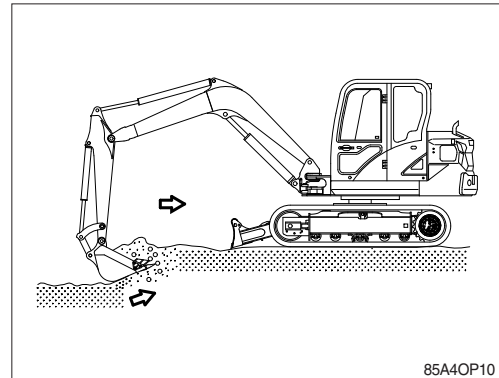
▲ **Make sure no personnel are standing close to the tow rope as serious injury or death could occur if it breaks.**



## 6. EFFICIENT WORKING METHOD

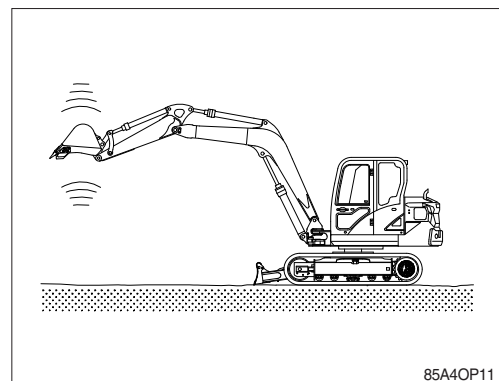
1) Do the digging work by arm.

Use the pulling force of arm for digging and use together with the digging force of the bucket if necessary.

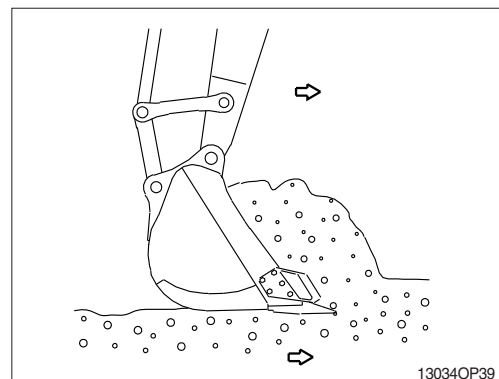


2) When lowering and raising the boom operate softly for the beginning and the end.

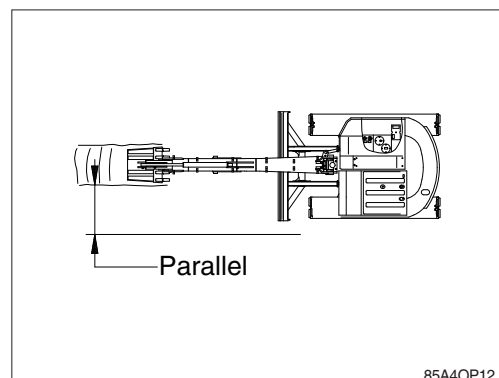
In particularly, sudden stops while lowering the boom may cause damage to the machine.



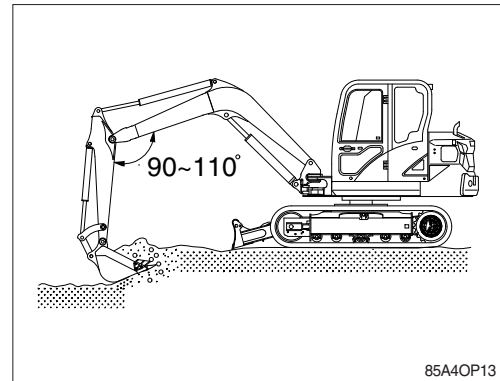
3) The digging resistance and wearing of tooth can be reduced by putting the end of bucket tooth to the digging direction.



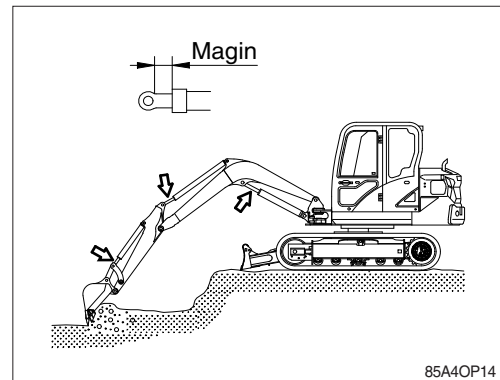
4) Set the tracks parallel to the line of the ditch to be excavated when digging ditch. Do not swing while digging.



- 5) Dig slowly while keeping the angle of boom and arm at a 90-110° when maximum digging force is required.



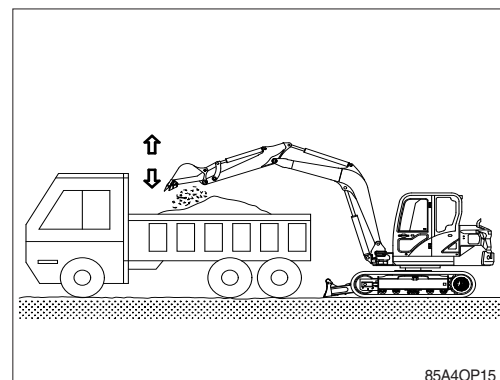
- 6) Leave a small margin of cylinder stroke to prevent damage of cylinder when working with the machine.



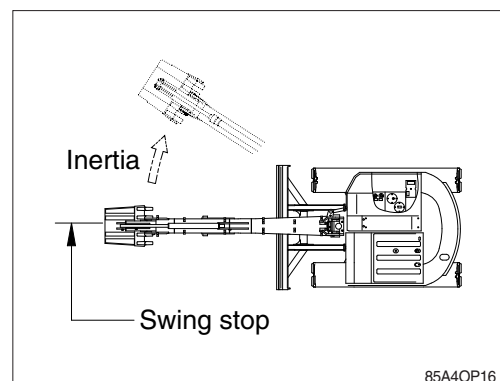
- 7) Keep the bucket to the dumping position and the arm horizontal when dumping the soil from the bucket.

Operate bucket lever 2 or 3 times when hard to dump.

- ※ Do not use the impact of bucket tooth when dumping.

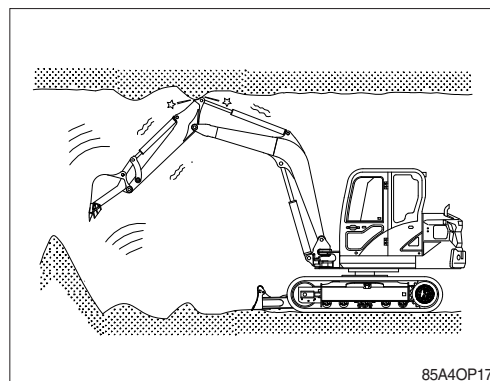


- 8) Operate stop of swing considering the swing slip distance is created by inertia after neutralizing the swing lever.

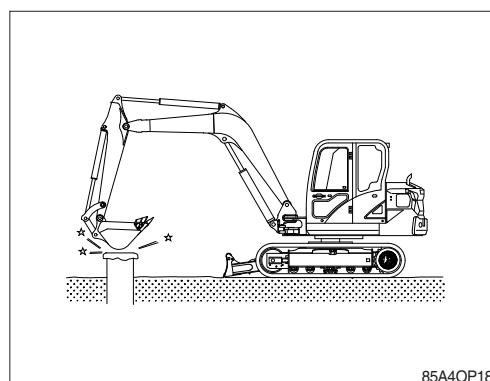




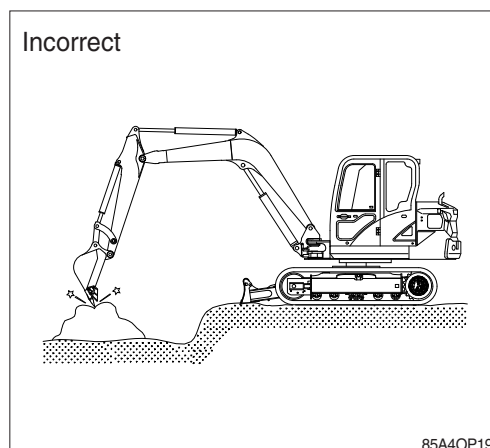
- 9) Do not use the dropping force of the work equipment for digging.  
The machine can be damaged by the impact.



- 10) Do not use the bucket to crack hard objects like concrete or rocks.  
This may break a tooth or pin, or bend boom.



- 11) Do not use the bucket to crack hard objects like concrete or rocks.  
This may break a tooth or pin, or bend boom.



**12) NEVER CARRY OUT EXCESSIVE OPERATIONS**

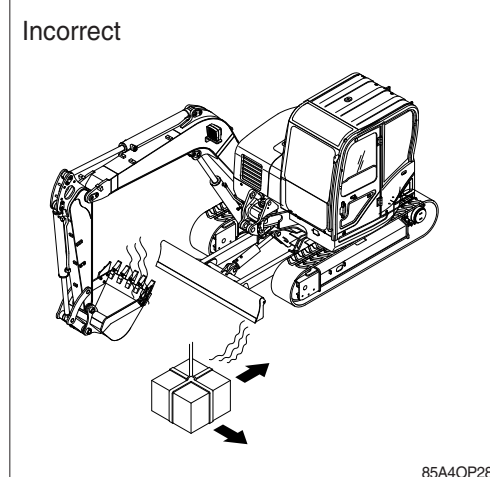
Operation exceeding machine performance may result in accident or failure, causing serious injury or death.

Carry out lifting operation within specified load limit.

Never carry out operations which may damage the machine such as overload or over-impact-load.

Never travel while carrying a load.

If you need an overload warning device installed for object handling procedure, please contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributor.



### 13) BUCKET WITH HOOK

When carrying out lifting work, the special lifting hook is necessary.

The following operations are prohibited.

- Lifting loads with a wire rope fitted around the bucket teeth.
- Lifting loads with the wire rope wrapped directly around the boom or arm.

When performing lifting operation, securely hook the wire rope onto the special lifting hook.

When performing lifting operation, never raise or lower a person.

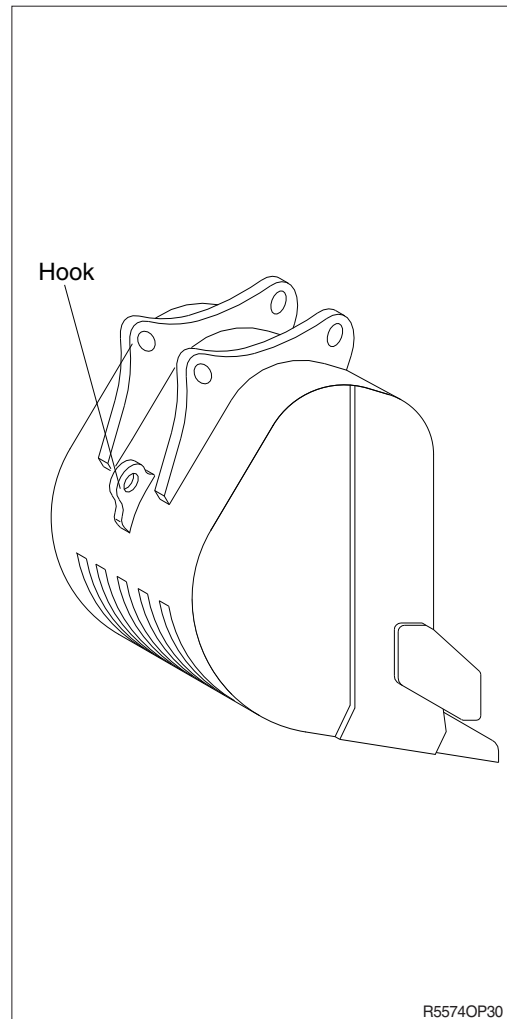
Due to the possible danger of the load falling or of collision with the load, no persons shall be allowed in the working area.

Before performing lifting operation, designate an operation supervisor.

Always execute operation according to their instructions.

- Execute operating methods and procedures under their direction.
- Select a person responsible for signaling.  
Operate only on signals given by such person.

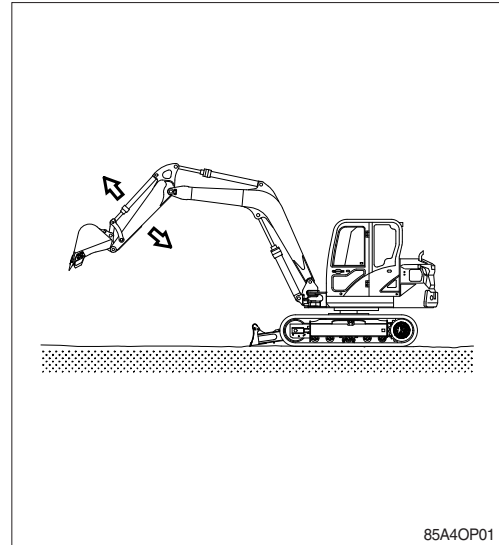
Never leave the operator's seat while lifting a load.



## 7. OPERATION IN THE SPECIAL WORK SITES

### 1) OPERATING THE MACHINE IN A COLD WEATHER

- (1) Use proper engine oil and fuel for the weather.
- (2) Fill the required amount of antifreeze in the coolant.
- (3) Refer to the starting engine in cold weather.  
Start the engine and extend the warming up operation.
- (4) Be sure to open the heater cock when using the heater.
- (5) Always keep the battery completely charged.  
※ **Discharged batteries will freeze more easily than fully charged.**
- (6) Clean the machine and park on wood plates.



### 2) OPERATION IN SANDY OR DUSTY WORK SITES

- (1) Inspect air cleaner element frequently. Clean or replace element more frequently, if warning lamp lights up and buzzer sounds simultaneously, regardless of inspection period.  
※ **Replace the inner and outer element after 4 times of cleaning.**
- (2) Inspect radiator, oil cooler and condenser frequently, and keep cooling fins clean.
- (3) Prevent sand or dust from getting into fuel tank and hydraulic tank during refilling.
- (4) Prevent sand or dust from penetrating into hydraulic circuit by tightly closing breather cap of hydraulic oil tank. Replace hydraulic oil filter and air breather element frequently. Also, replace the fuel filter frequently.
- (5) Keep all lubricated parts, such as pins and bushings, clean at all times.
- (6) If the air conditioner and heater filters clog, the heating or cooling capacity will drop. Clean or replace the filter element more frequently.
- (7) Clean electrical components, especially the starting motor and alternator, to avoid accumulation of dust.

### **3) SEA SHORE OPERATION**

- (1) Prevent ingress of salt by securely tightening plugs, cocks and bolts of each part.
- (2) Wash machine after operation to remove salt residue.  
Pay special attention to electrical parts, hydraulic cylinders and track tension cylinder to prevent corrosion.
- (3) Inspection and lubrication must be carried out more frequently.  
Supply sufficient grease to replace all old grease in bearings which have been submerged in water for a long time.

### **4) OPERATION IN MUD, WATER OR RAIN WORK SITES**

- (1) Perform a walk around inspection to check for any loose fittings, obvious damage to the machine or any fluid leakage.
- (2) After completing operations, clean mud, rocks or debris from the machine. Inspect for damage, cracked welds or loosened parts.
- (3) Perform all daily lubrication and service.
- (4) If the operations were in salt water or other corrosive materials, make sure to flush the affected equipment with fresh water.

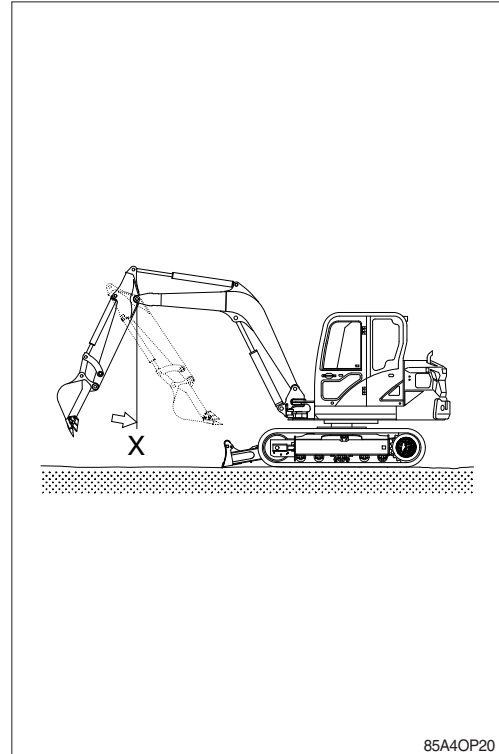
### **5) OPERATION IN ROCKY WORK SITES**

- (1) Check for damage to the undercarriage and for looseness, flaws, wear and damage in bolts and nuts.
- (2) Loosen the track tension slightly when working in such areas.
- (3) Do not turn the undercarriage directly over the sharp edge rock.

## 8. NORMAL OPERATION OF EXCAVATOR

The following may occur during operation due to the nature of a hydraulic excavator.

- 1) When rolling in the arm, the roll-in movement stops momentary at point X in the picture shown, then recovers speed again after passing point X. This is because movement by the arm weight is faster than the speed of oil flow into the cylinder.
- 2) When lowering the boom, you may hear continuous sound. This is caused by oil flow in the valve.
- 3) Overloaded movement will produce sound caused by the relief valves, which are for the protection of the hydraulic systems.
- 4) When the machine is started swinging or stopped, a noise near the swing motor may be heard. The noise is generated when the brake valve relieves.



## 9. ATTACHMENT LOWERING (when engine is stopped)

- 1) On machines equipped with an accumulator, for a short time (within 2 minutes) after the engine is stopped, the attachment will lower under its own weight when the attachment control lever is shifted to LOWER. This happens only when the starting switch is ON and the safety knob is in the UNLOCK position. After the engine is stopped, set the safety knob to the LOCK position.

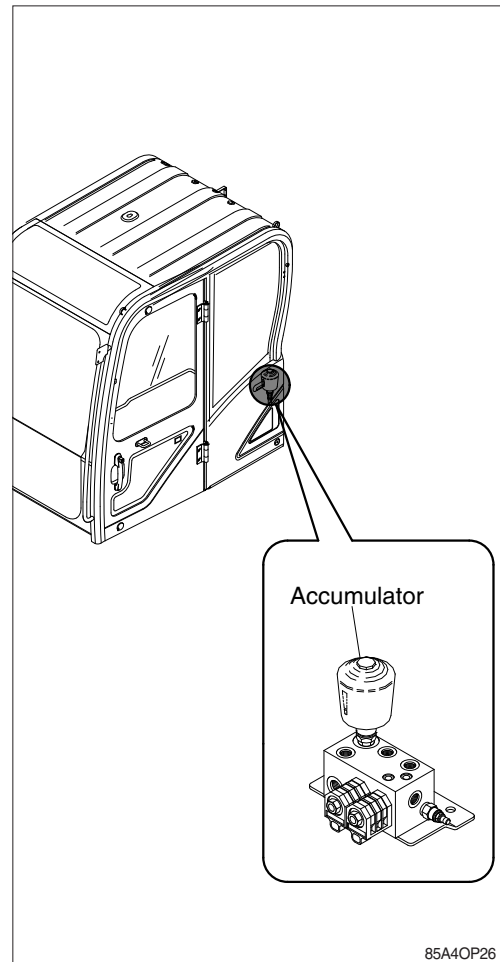
**⚠ Be sure no one is under or near the attachment before lowering the boom. Failure to comply could result in serious injury or death.**

- 2) The accumulator is filled with high-pressure nitrogen gas, and it is extremely dangerous if it is handled in the wrong way. Always observe the following precautions.

**⚠ Never make any hole in the accumulator, expose it to flames or fire.**

**⚠ Do not weld anything to the accumulator.**

- ※ When carrying out disassembly or maintenance of the accumulator, it is necessary to release the gas from the accumulator. A special air bleed valve is necessary for this operation, so please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributor.



## 10. STORAGE

When storing the machine for longer than 1 month, follow these procedures:

### 1) BEFORE STORAGE

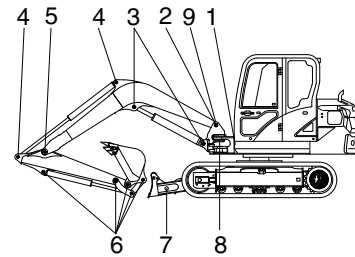
#### (1) Cleaning the machine

Clean the machine. Check and adjust tracks.  
Grease each lubrication part.

#### (2) Lubrication position of each part

Change all oil.

- ※ Be particularly careful when you reuse the machine. As oil can be diluted during storage. Apply an anticorrosive lubricant on the exposed part of piston rod of cylinder and in places where the machine rusts easily.



- 1 Lubricating manifold (2EA)
- 2 Boom connection pin (2EA)
- 3 Boom cylinder pin (2EA)
- 4 Arm cylinder pin (2EA)
- 5 Boom and arm connection pin (1EA)
- 6 Arm and bucket (7EA)
- 7 Dozer blade connection pin (4EA)
- 8 Boom swing post (3EA)
- 9 Boom rear bearing center (1EA)

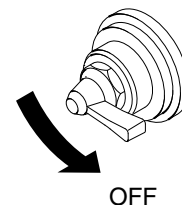
80CR94OP21A

#### (3) Master switch

Turn OFF the master switch mounted on the right side of the engine room.

- (4) Be sure to mix anticorrosive antifreezing solution in the radiator.

Master switch

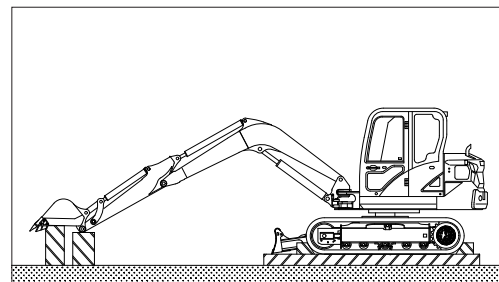


80CR94OP27

#### (5) Prevention of dust and moisture

Keep machine dry. Store the machine setting wood on the ground.

- ※ Cover exposed part of piston rod on cylinder.
- ※ Lower the bucket to the ground and set a support under track.

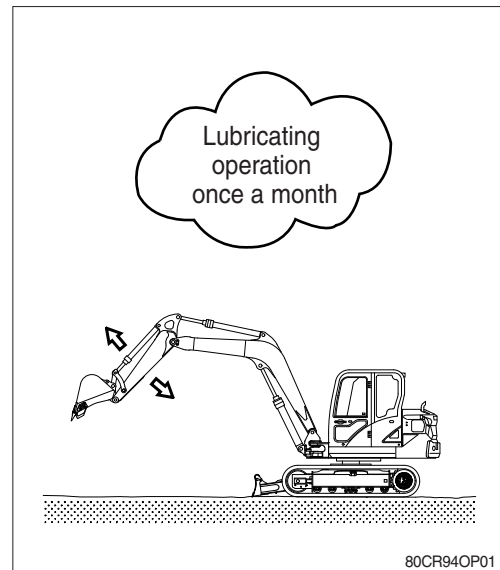


85A40P22

## 2) DURING STORAGE

Start engine and move the machine and work equipment once a month and apply lubrication to each part.

- ※ Check the level of engine oil and coolant and fill if required when starting engine.
- ※ Clean the anticorrosive on the piston rod of cylinder.
- ※ Operate the machine such as traveling, swing and work equipment operation to make sure enough lubrication of all functional components.



### ※ BATTERY

- ① Once a month, start the engine for 15 minutes (or use a charger) to charge the battery.
- ② Every 2 months, check the battery voltage and keep battery voltage over 12.54V.
- ③ If the machine stock period is over 6 months, disconnect the battery negative (-) terminal.

## 3) AFTER STORAGE

Carry out the following procedure when taking out of a long time storage.

- (1) Wipe off the anticorrosive lubricant on the hydraulic piston rod.
- (2) Completely fill fuel tank, lubricate and add oil.

### (3) When storage period is over 6 months

If the machine stock period is over 6 months, carry out the following procedure.

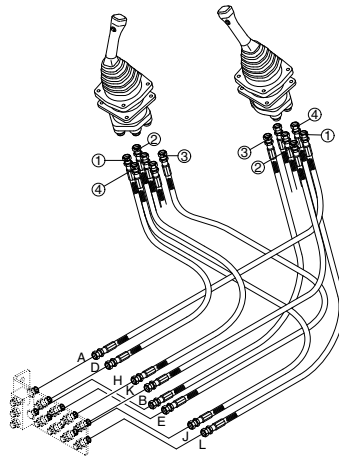
This procedure is to drain condensation water for the **swing reduction gear** durability.

- ※ Remove the drain port plug and drain the water until the gear oil comes out and then tighten the drain plug.
- ※ Refer to chapter 6, Maintenance for the drain plug location.
- ※ If the machine is stored without carrying out the monthly lubricating operation, consult your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer for service.



## 11. RCV LEVER OPERATING PATTERN

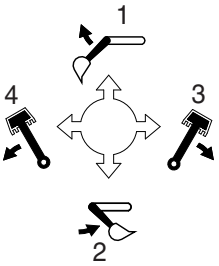
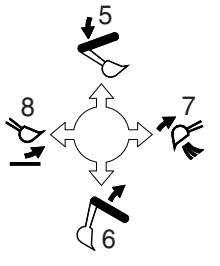
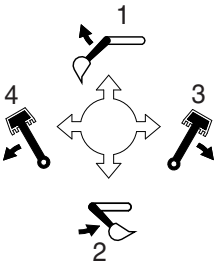
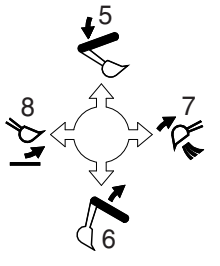
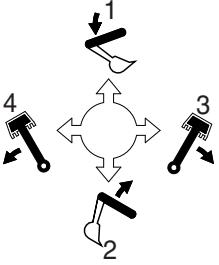
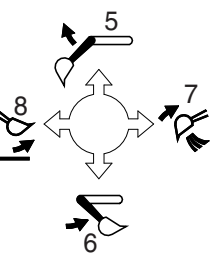
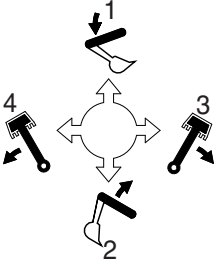
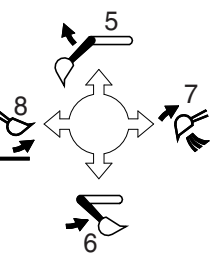
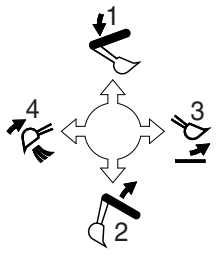
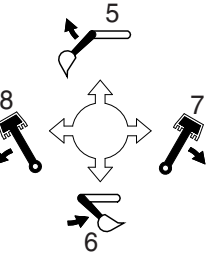
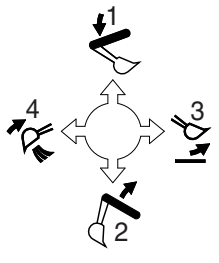
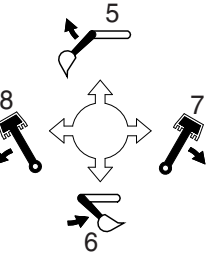
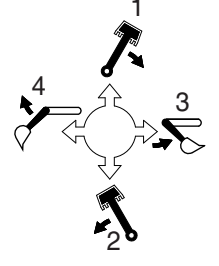
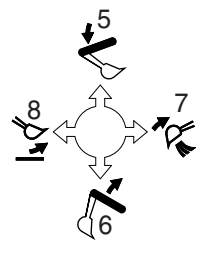
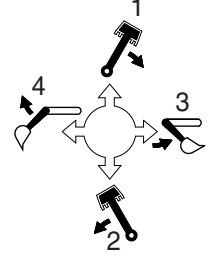
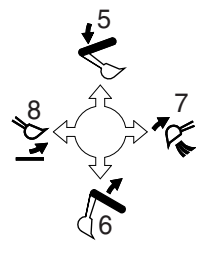
### 1) PATTERN CHANGE VALVE NOT INSTALLED (standard)



※ Whenever a change is made to the machine control pattern, also exchange the pattern label in the cab to match the new pattern.

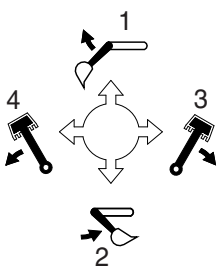
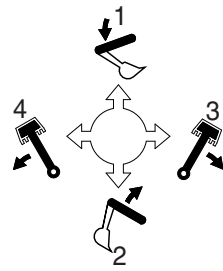
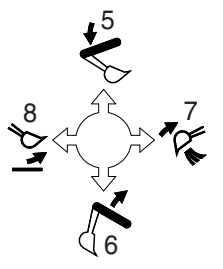
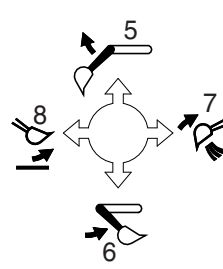
※ The hose modification works must be carried out between RCV lever and terminal block (Not between terminal block and MCV).

85A40P24

Pattern	Operation		Control function	Hose connection (port)			
	Left	Right		RCV lever	Change of Terminal block		
					From	To	
ISO Type			Left	1Arm out	②	K	-
HD Hyundai Construction Equipment				2Arm in	④	L	-
				3Swing right	③	B	-
				4Swing left	①	A	-
			Right	5Boom lower	④	J	-
6Boom raise	②	H		-			
7Bucket out	①	D		-			
8Bucket in	③	E		-			
A Type			Left	1Boom lower	②	K	G
				2Boom raise	④	L	F
				3Swing right	③	B	-
				4Swing left	①	A	-
			Right	5Arm out	④	J	D
6Arm in	②	H		E			
7Bucket out	①	D		-			
8Bucket in	③	E		-			
B Type			Left	1Boom lower	②	K	G
				2Boom raise	④	L	F
				3Bucket in	③	B	J
				4Bucket out	①	A	H
			Right	5Arm out	④	J	D
6Arm in	②	H		E			
7Swing right	①	D		B			
8Swing left	③	E		A			
C Type			Left	1 Swing right	②	K	B
				2 Swing left	④	L	A
				3 Arm in	③	B	L
				4 Arm out	①	A	K
			Right	Same as ISO type			

## 2) PATTERN CHANGE SOLENOID VALVE INSTALL (option)

- ※ If the machine is equipped with the pattern change solenoid valve, the machine operation pattern can be easily changed.
- ※ Whenever a change is made to the machine control pattern also exchange the pattern label in the cab to match the new pattern.

Operation	ISO type	A type
Left RCV lever		
Right RCV lever		

- (1) The machine control pattern can be changed from the "ISO type" to "A type" by changing the position of the pattern change switch.

Before starting the machine, check the lever

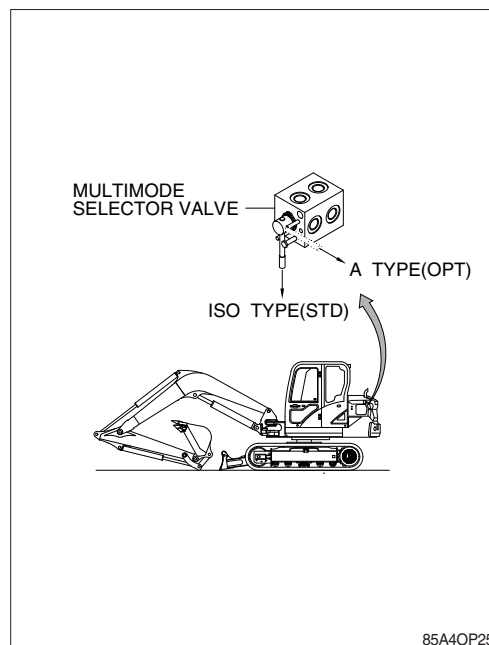
- ▲ position of pattern change switch and actual operating of attachment.

### (2) Change of operating pattern

The machine control pattern is changed as below.

- Position ① : ISO type
- Position ② : A type

- ※ Refer to the page 3-40 for the switch.



## 12. HANDLING THE RUBBER TRACKS

### 1) USING THE RUBBER TRACKS PROPERLY

Rubber tracks have some advantages over steel tracks.

However, you cannot take full advantage of them if you use them in the same manner as steel ones. Use care in operating with rubber tracks in accord with the conditions of the work site and the type of work.

**Comparison table of rubber and steel tracks**

	Rubber	Steel
Low vibration	Excellent	Ordinary
Smooth travel	Excellent	Good
Silent travel	Excellent	Ordinary
Less damage to paved roads	Excellent	Ordinary
Simple handling	Excellent	Ordinary
Susceptibility to damage (strength)	Ordinary	Excellent
Drawbar full	Excellent	Excellent

Rubber tracks have many advantages inherent in the unique properties of the material. On the other hand, however, they are low in strength. It is essential that you fully understand the properties of rubber tracks, and observe the precautions for operating and handling them to prolong their life and get the most out of them. Be sure to read this section for using the rubber tracks before using them.

### 2) WARRANTY FOR RUBBER TRACKS

The rubber tracks are not warranted for free repair or replacement if they are damaged because of misuse by the customer, including the failure to comply with the prohibitions and the instructions for safe operation; (for example, the failure to check the tension of the rubber tracks or service the rubber tracks properly, or "using the rubber tracks on surfaces and terrains which could physically damage them".)

### 3) PROHIBITIONS FOR USING THE RUBBER TRACKS

- (1) Do not operate or turn on surfaces of terrains that have sharp stones, a hard, uneven rock base, or that expose the tracks to steel rods, scrap iron, or edges of iron plates. Failure to observe these prohibitions may damage the rubber tracks.
- (2) Do not operate the machine on a stony surface like a riverbed. Doing this may damage the rubber tracks by catching gravel in the tracks or may cause the tracks to come off. Forcibly pushing obstacles will also shorten the life of the rubber tracks.
- (3) Prevent the rubber tracks from getting exposed to oil, fuel or chemical solvents. If they are exposed, immediately wipe them. Also, do not travel on roads which have oily surfaces.
- (4) When storing the rubber tracks for a long time period (more than three months), avoid placing them in a place subject to direct exposure to sunlight or rain.

- (5) Do not operate the machine when the tracks will be exposed to heat, (i.e., near an open-air fire, on a steel plate that has been exposed to the blazing sun, or on a hot asphalt road.)
- (6) Never run on one rubber track while the other is held above the ground with the implement. Doing this may damage the rubber track or cause it to come off.

#### **4) PRECAUTIONS FOR USING THE RUBBER TRACKS**

Observe the following precautions when operating the machine :

- (1) Never spin-turn on concrete or asphalt roads.
- (2) Do not change course suddenly. Doing this will cause the rubber track to wear early or be damaged.
- (3) Do not turn the machine across a large level gap while traveling . Remember that running over a level gap at a right angle will prevent the track from coming off.
- (4) Slowly lower the machine after it has been lifted above the ground with the implement.
- (5) It is not recommended that the machine be used to handle any materials that become oily after being crushed (e.g., soybeans, corn, rapeseed oil seeds, etc.). After unavoidably using the machine to handle such materials, clean the tracks with water.
- (6) It is not recommended that the machine be used to handle materials such as salt, ammonium sulfate, potassium chloride, potassium sulfate, or superphosphate of lime. Handling these materials may affect the core metal adversely. After using the machine to handle such materials, clean the tracks with water.
- (7) Do not operate the machine at the seashore. Doing this may affect the core metal adversely due to the salt content.
- (8) If a rubber track is cracked, it could be easily damaged when exposed to salt, sugar, wheat, or soybeans. Be sure to repair any cracks in the rubber track to prevent rubber chips from getting into the materials being handled.
- (9) Do not allow the rubber track to rub against a concrete wall.
- (10) The rubber tracks are prone to slip on snow or on a frozen road. Be careful of skidding when traveling or operating on a slope in cold weather.
- (11) Operating the machine in extremely cold weather will deteriorate the rubber tracks, shortening their life.
- (12) Use the rubber tracks between -25°C to +55°C (-13°F to +131°F) because of the physical characteristics of rubber.
- (13) Be careful not to damage the rubber tracks with the bucket while operating the machine.

## 5) BE CAREFUL NOT TO COME OFF THE RUBBER TRACKS

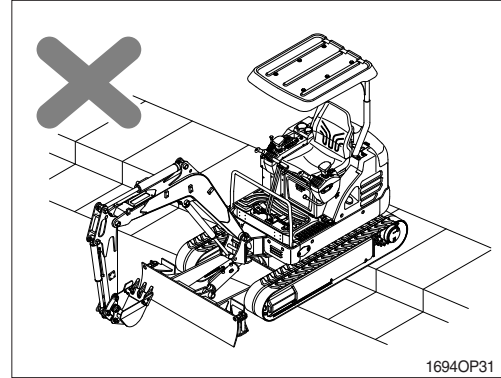
Keep the tracks in appropriate tension to prevent them from coming off.

If the tension is too low, the rubber tracks may come off under the following conditions.

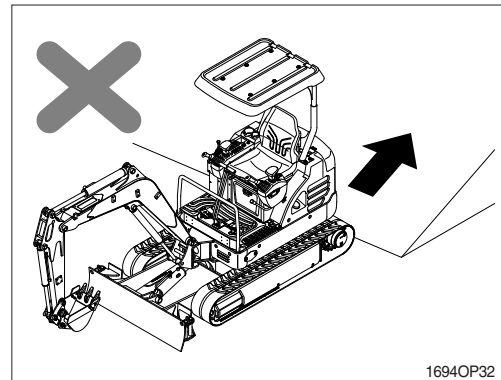
Even if the tension is adequate, take care when operating the tracks under these conditions.

Some illustrations in this section can be different from your machine.

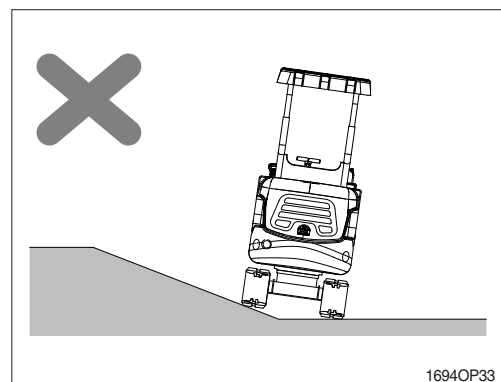
- (1) Do not steer the machine at an angle other than 90 degrees across a large level gap created by a curbstone or a rock [approximately more than 20 cm (8")]. Run over a level gap at a right angle only to prevent the tracks from coming off.



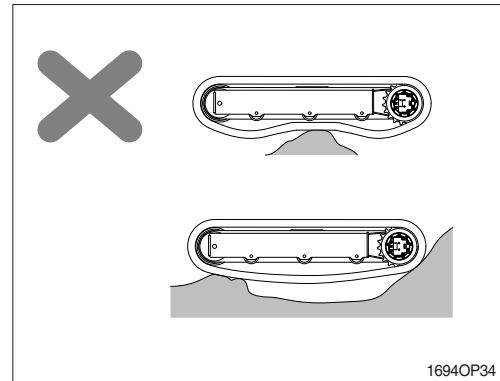
- (2) Do not steer the machine across a boundary between the flat ground and a slope, while moving backwards. If such travel is not avoidable, slow down the speed.



- (3) Do not travel with the track on one side on a slope or on convex ground (causing a machine angle of more than 10 degrees), and with the track on the other side on flat ground, to prevent the rubber track from being damaged. Be sure to travel with the tracks on both sides on the same level surface.

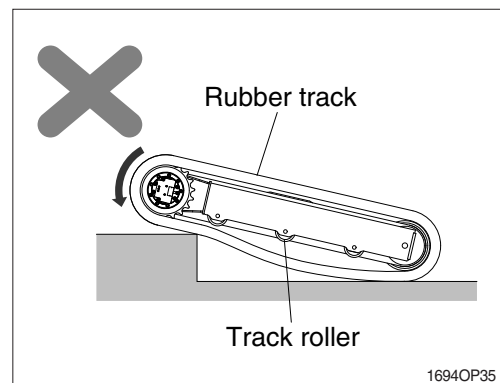


- (4) The three cases illustrated above are those which could cause the rubber tracks to loosen. In addition, do not subject machine to such ground conditions as are illustrated in the figure at the right.

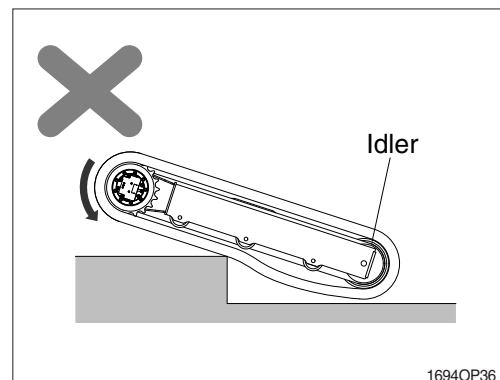


**(5) HOW THE RUBBER TRACKS COME OFF**

When running over a level gap, a clearance is created between the tracks and the track rollers. At this point, the tracks tend to come off.

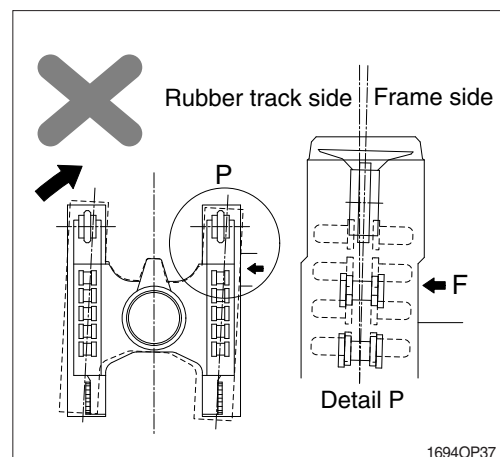


- (6) If the machine is traveling in reverse, clearance may also be created between the track rollers and the rubber tracks, and between the idlers and the rubber tracks, causing the rubber tracks to come off.

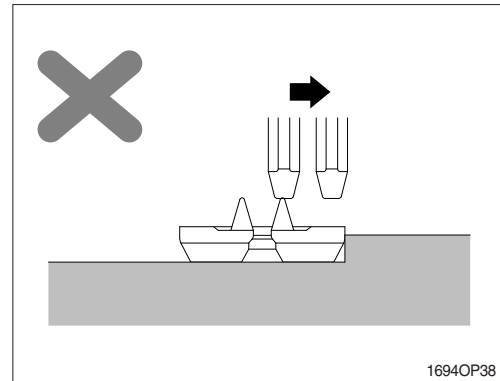


**(7) Other situations to be avoided.**

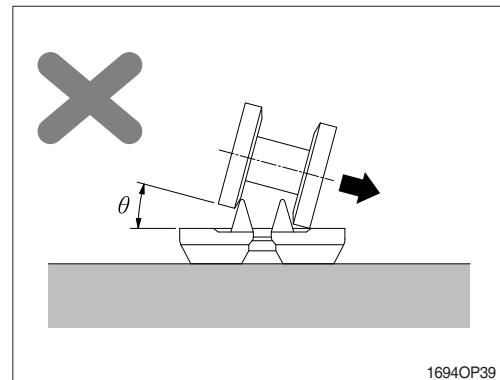
- ① When the machine changes the travel direction while the rubber tracks are blocked sideways by an obstacle or the like.
- ② When the idler and the track rollers are misaligned from the core metal, due to rubber track misalignment.



- ③ Traveling in reverse under the condition illustrated will cause the rubber tracks to come off.



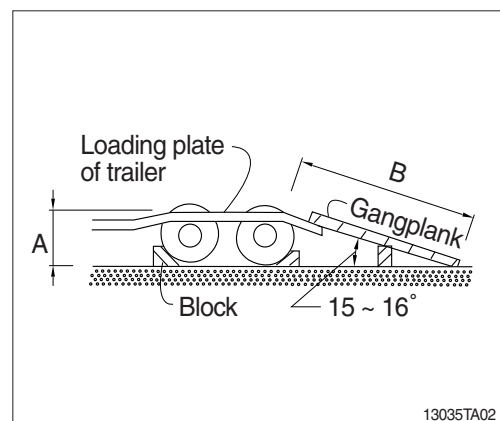
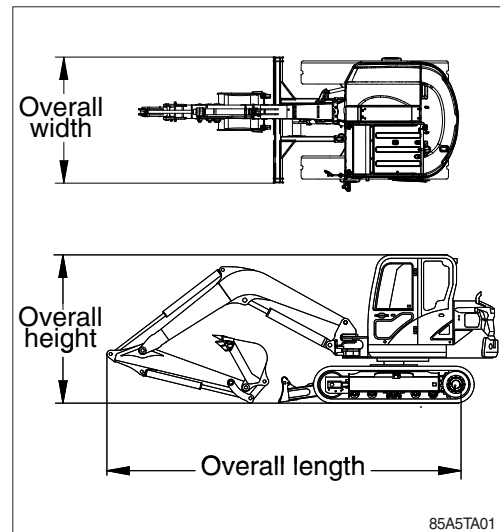
- ④ Changing the travel direction of the machine under the condition illustrated will cause the rubber tracks to come off.



## 1. PREPARATION FOR TRANSPORTATION

- 1) When transporting the machine, observe the various road rules, road transportation vehicle laws and vehicle limit ordinances, etc.
- 2) Select proper trailer after confirming the weight and dimension from chapter 2, Specification.
- 3) Check the whole route such as the road width, the height of bridge and limit of weight etc., which will be passed.
- 4) Get permission from the related authority if necessary.
- 5) Prepare suitable capacity of trailer to support the machine.
- 6) Prepare gangplank for safe loading referring to the below table and illustration.

A	B
1.0	3.65 ~ 3.85
1.1	4.00 ~ 4.25
1.2	4.35 ~ 4.60
1.3	4.75 ~ 5.00
1.4	5.10 ~ 5.40
1.5	5.50 ~ 5.75



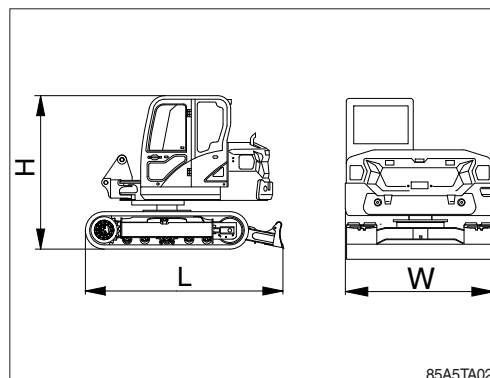


## 2. DIMENSION AND WEIGHT

### 1) Base machine

Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	3600 (11' 10")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	2560 ( 8' 5")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	2300 ( 7' 7")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	7561 (16669)

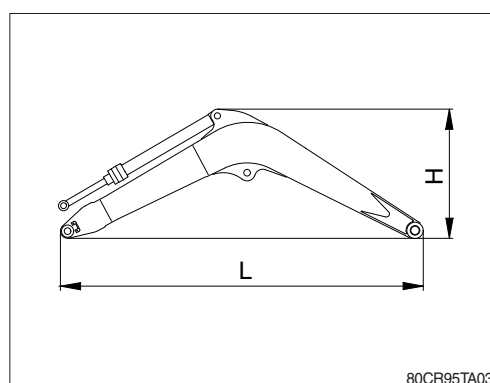
※ With 450 mm (18") triple grouser shoes and 1006 kg (2220 lb) counterweight.



### 2) Boom assembly

Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	3715 (12' 2")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	1205 ( 3' 11")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	385 ( 1' 3")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	622 (1370)

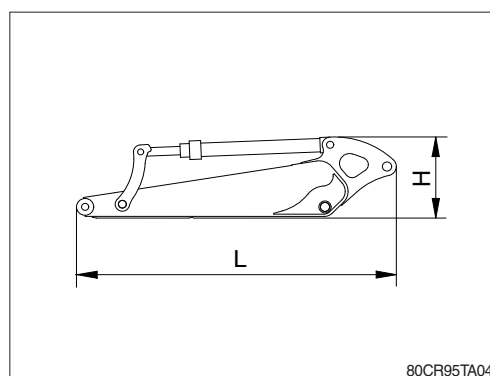
※ 3.55 m (11' 8") boom with arm cylinder (Including piping and pins).



### 3) Arm assembly

Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	2295 ( 7' 6")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	590 ( 1' 11")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	225 ( 0' 9")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	317 (700)

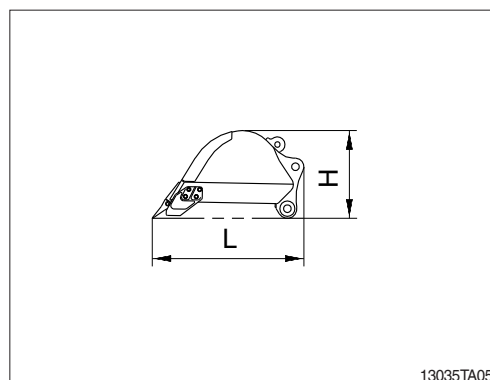
※ 1.75 m (5' 9") arm with bucket cylinder (Including linkage and pins).



### 4) Bucket assembly

Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	1145 ( 3' 9")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	620 ( 2' 0")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	800 ( 2' 7")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	190 (420)

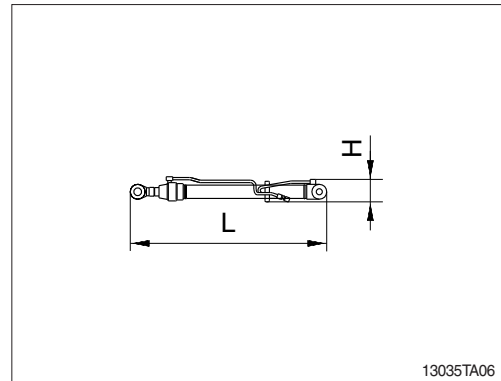
※ 0.25 m<sup>3</sup> (0.33 yd<sup>3</sup>) SAE heaped bucket (Including tooth and side cutters).



### 5) Boom cylinder

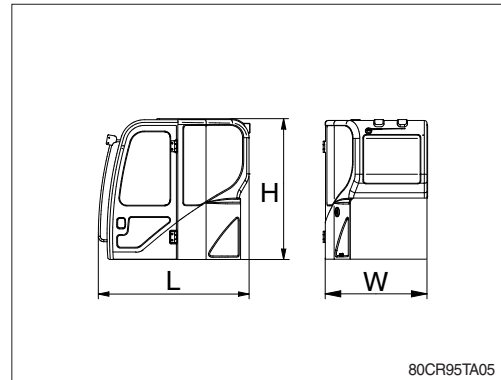
Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	1485 ( 4' 10")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	214 ( 8' 4")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	270 ( 10' 6")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	113 (250)

※ Including piping.



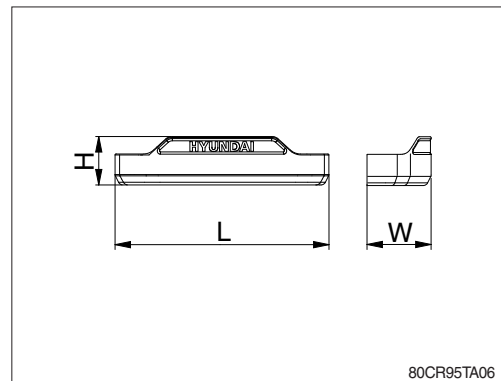
### 6) Cab assembly

Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	1657 ( 5' 5")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	1576 ( 5' 2")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	1060 ( 3' 6")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	384 (850)



### 7) Counterweight

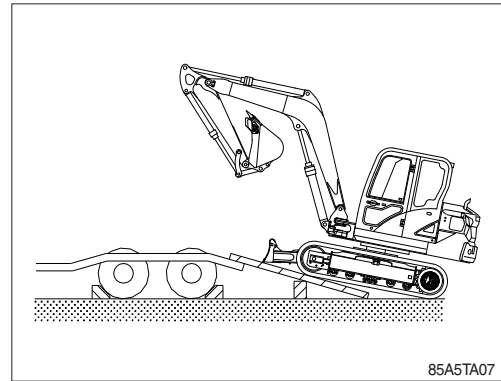
Mark	Description	Unit	Specification
L	Length	mm (ft-in)	2270 ( 7' 5")
H	Height	mm (ft-in)	496 ( 1' 8")
W	Width	mm (ft-in)	932 (3' 1")
Wt	Weight	kg (lb)	1000 (2205)



### 3. LOADING THE MACHINE

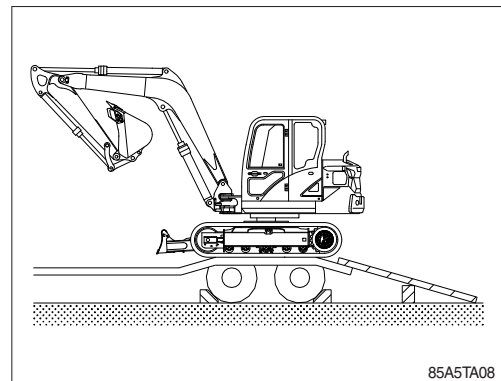
- 1) Load and unload the machine on flat ground.
- 2) Use the gangplank with sufficient length, width, thickness and gradient.
- 3) Place the safety knob to the LOCK position (if equipped) before fixing the machine at the bed of trailer and confirm if the machine is parallel to the bed of trailer.

Keep the travel motor in the rear when loading and in the front when unloading.

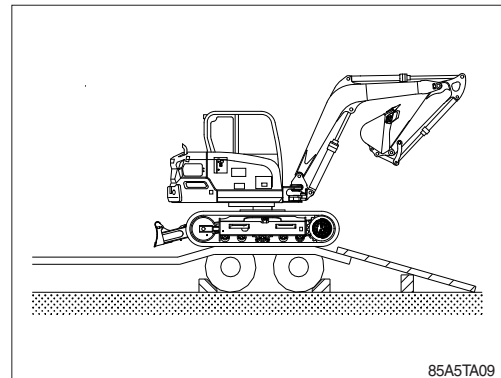


- 4) Do the following after loading the machine to the trailer.

- (1) Stop loading when the machine is located horizontally with the rear wheel of trailer.



- (2) Place the safety knob to the LOCK position (if equipped) after swinging the machine 180°.



(3) Lower the working equipment gently after the location is determined.

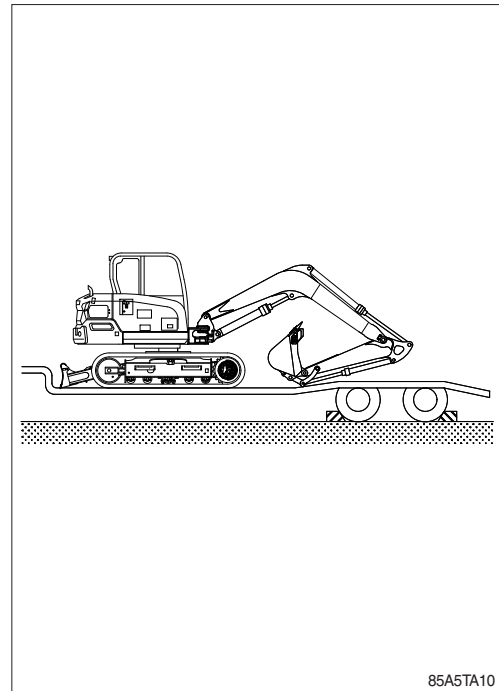
※ **Place rectangular timber under the bucket cylinder to prevent the damage of it during transportation.**

▲ **Be sure to keep the travel speed switch on the LOW (turtle mark) while loading and unloading the machine.**

▲ **Avoid using the working equipment for loading and unloading as it will be very dangerous.**

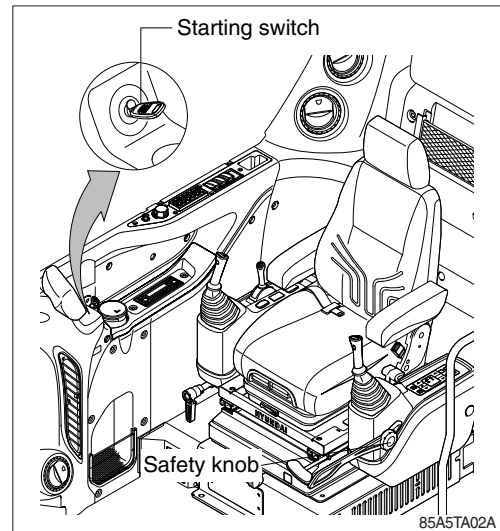
▲ **Do not operate any other device when loading.**

▲ **Be careful as to the boundaries of loading plate or trailer as the balance of machine will abruptly change.**

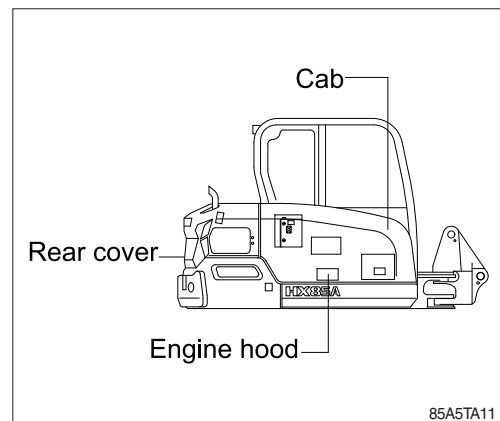


## 4. FIXING THE MACHINE

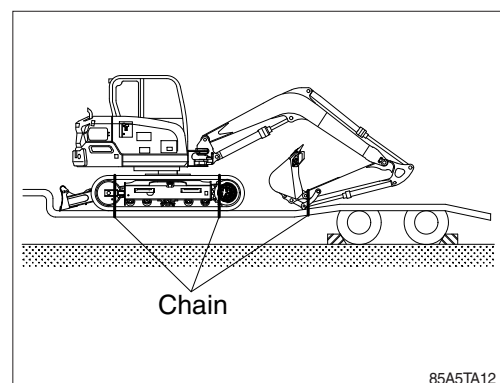
- 1) Place the swing lock lever on the LOCK position.
- 2) Lower down the working device on the loading plate of trailer.
- 3) Keep the safety knob in the LOCK position.
- 4) Turn OFF all the switches and remove the key.



- 5) Secure all locks.



- 6) Place timbers behind the tracks, secure the machine to trailer with chains or straps which are in good condition and approved for the weight which they will be securing, to prevent the machine from moving in any direction.



## 5. LOADING AND UNLOADING BY CRANE

**⚠ The wrong hoisting method or installation of lifting device can cause serious injury, death, or damage to the machine.**

- 1) Check the weight, length, width and height of the machine referring to chapter 2, specification when you are going to hoist the machine.
- 2) Use approved lifting device and ensure distance between lifting device and machine to avoid contact between the two.
- 3) Place rubber plates at lifting points to avoid any damage to the machine.
- 4) Place crane in the proper place.
- 5) Install approved lifting device as shown in the illustration.

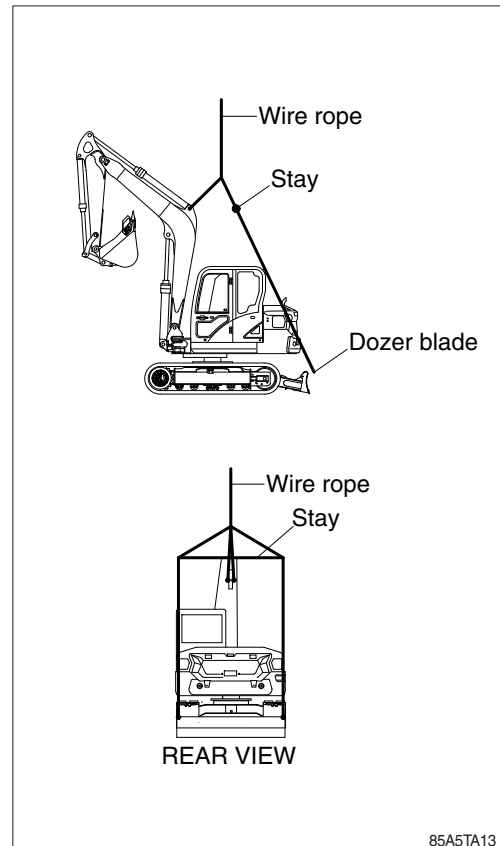
**⚠ Make sure wire rope is proper size.**

**⚠ Ensure that lifting device is free from any damage and is approved for the weight being lifted and supported.**

**⚠ Place the safety knob to LOCK position to prevent the machine from moving when hoisting the machine.**

**⚠ Do not load abruptly.**

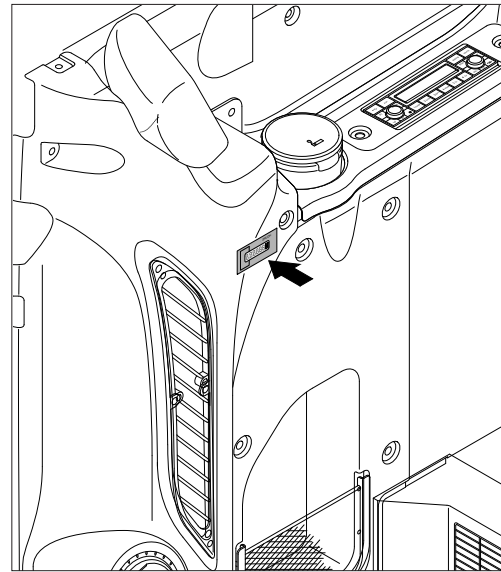
**⚠ Keep area clear of any and all personnel.**



## 1. INSTRUCTION

### 1) INTERVAL OF MAINTENANCE

- (1) Inspect and service machine as described on page 6-11.
- (2) Shorten intervals of inspection and service depending on site conditions. (such as dusty area, quarry, sea shore and etc.)
- (3) Practice the entire related details at the same time when the service interval is doubled.  
For example, in case of 100 hours, carry out all the maintenance 「Each 100hours, each 50 hours and daily service」 at the same time.



HX606MA01

### 2) PRECAUTION

- (1) Do not perform maintenance on the machine until you have read the operator's manual and are familiar with the machine.
- (2) Daily inspection should be performed according to section, Maintenance check list.
- (3) Engine and hydraulic components have been preset from the factory.  
Do not allow unauthorized personnel to reset them.
- (4) Drain the used oil and coolant (always in separate containers). Handle and dispose of the waste per regulation of each province/country as well as any local laws.
- ▲ **Hot oil and hot components can cause serious injury or death. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin. Failure to comply may result in serious injury or death.**
- △ **Inspect the engine compartment for any trash build up. Remove any trash build up from the engine compartment.**
- (5) Ask your local dealer or HD Hyundai Construction Equipment for the maintenance advice if unknown.

### 3) PROPER MAINTENANCE

#### (1) Replace and repair of parts

It is required to replace the wearable and consumable parts such as bucket tooth, side cutter, filter and etc., regularly. Replace damaged or worn parts before or at the required time to maintain machine performance.

(2) Always use only HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine parts.

(3) Use the recommended oil.

(4) Do not perform repairs while the machine is running. Stop the engine when you fill the oil.

(5) Always wear protective goggles, protective gloves and other personal protective equipment.

(6) Clean around the inlet of oil tank before adding oil.

(7) Drain oil when the temperature of oil is warm.

(8) Relieve hydraulic system of pressure before repairing the hydraulic system.

(9) Confirm if cluster has any warnings present after completion of service.

(10) For more detail information of maintenance, please contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer.

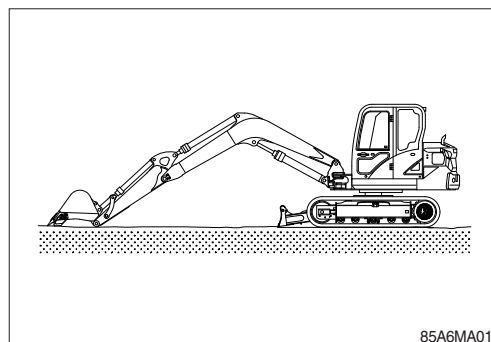
※ **Read chapter 1 of this manual for safety instructions prior to performing any maintenance on the machine.**



#### 4) RELIEVING THE PRESSURE IN THE HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

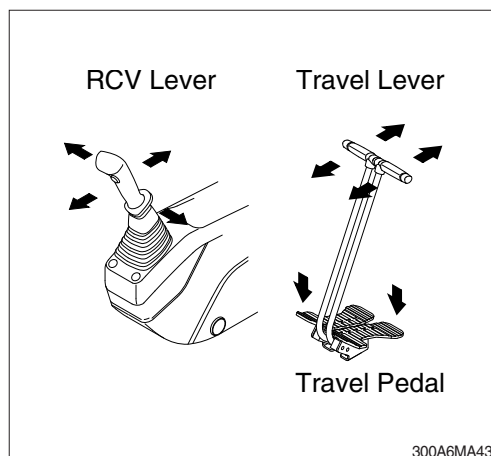
※ Spewing of oil can cause an severe personal injury. Before you loosen hydraulic cap or any hydraulic line on the machine, always make sure machine of off, cooled down and that pressure is relived of the hydraulic system.

- (1) Place the machine in the position shown and stop engine.

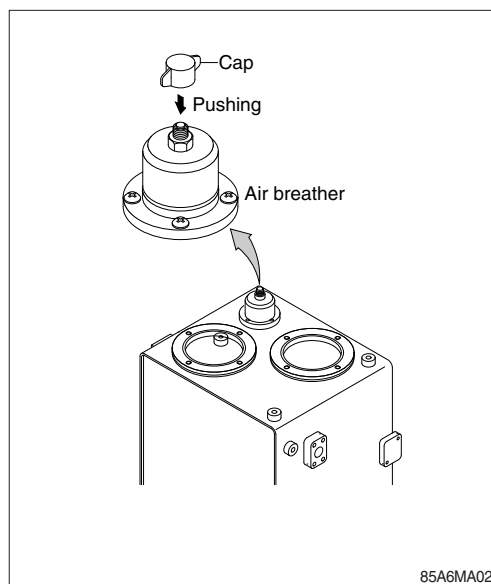


- (2) Set the safety knob completely in the UNLOCK position. Refer to section Levers and pedals. Operate the control levers and pedals fully to the front, rear, left and right, to release the pressure in the hydraulic circuit.

※ This does not completely release the pressure, so when servicing hydraulic component, loosen the connections slowly and do not stand in the direction where the oil may shoot out.



- (3) Relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.



## **5) PRECAUTION WHEN INSTALLING HYDRAULIC HOSES OR PIPES**

- (1) Be particularly careful that the joint of hose, pipe and functioning item are not damaged.  
Avoid contamination.
- (2) Assemble after cleaning the hose, pipe and joint of functioning item.
- (3) Use genuine parts.
- (4) Do not install hose in a twisted, bent or crimped way.
- (5) Always maintain the specified torque.

## 6) PERIODIC REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

- (1) Perform periodic maintenance of the machine to prolong its useful life. This will assure and allow you to use the machine safely for a long time.  
It is recommended to replace any parts related to safety (as needed), not only for safety but in order to maintain performance as well.
- (2) These parts can shorten the life of the machine.  
The life span of such parts cannot be viewed visually and judged by the operator.
- (3) Repair or replace if any abnormality of these parts is found even before the recommended replacement interval.

Periodic replacement of parts			Interval
Engine		Fuel hose (tank-engine)	Every 2 years
		Heater hose (heater-engine)	
Hydraulic system	Main circuit	Pump suction hose	Every 2 years
		Pump delivery hose	
		Swing hose	
	Working device	Boom cylinder line hose	Every 2 years
		Arm cylinder line hose	
		Bucket cylinder line hose	

※ **Replace O-ring and gasket at the same time when replacing the hose.**

**Replace clamp at the same time if the hose clamp is cracked when checking and replacing the hose.**

## 2. TIGHTENING TORQUE

Use following table for unspecified torque.

### 1) BOLT AND NUT

#### (1) Coarse thread

Bolt size	8T		10T	
	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft
M 6 × 1.0	0.9 ~ 1.3	6.5 ~ 9.4	1.1 ~ 1.7	8.0 ~ 12.3
M 8 × 1.25	2.0 ~ 3.0	14.5 ~ 21.7	2.7 ~ 4.1	19.5 ~ 29.7
M10 × 1.5	4.0 ~ 6.0	28.9 ~ 43.4	5.5 ~ 8.3	39.8 ~ 60.0
M12 × 1.75	7.4 ~ 11.2	53.5 ~ 81.0	9.8 ~ 15.8	70.9 ~ 114
M14 × 2.0	12.2 ~ 16.6	88.2 ~ 120	16.7 ~ 22.5	121 ~ 163
M16 × 2.0	18.6 ~ 25.2	135 ~ 182	25.2 ~ 34.2	182 ~ 247
M18 × 2.0	25.8 ~ 35.0	187 ~ 253	35.1 ~ 47.5	254 ~ 344
M20 × 2.5	36.2 ~ 49.0	262 ~ 354	49.2 ~ 66.6	356 ~ 482
M22 × 2.5	48.3 ~ 63.3	349 ~ 458	65.8 ~ 98.0	476 ~ 709
M24 × 3.0	62.5 ~ 84.5	452 ~ 611	85.0 ~ 115	615 ~ 832
M30 × 3.0	124 ~ 168	898 ~ 1214	169 ~ 229	1223 ~ 1656
M36 × 4.0	174 ~ 236	1261 ~ 1704	250 ~ 310	1808 ~ 2242

#### (2) Fine thread

Bolt size	8T		10T	
	kgf · m	lbf · ft	kgf · m	lbf · ft
M 8 × 1.0	2.2 ~ 3.4	15.9 ~ 24.6	3.0 ~ 4.4	21.7 ~ 31.8
M10 × 1.2	4.5 ~ 6.7	32.5 ~ 48.5	5.9 ~ 8.9	42.7 ~ 64.4
M12 × 1.25	7.8 ~ 11.6	56.4 ~ 83.9	10.6 ~ 16.0	76.7 ~ 116
M14 × 1.5	13.3 ~ 18.1	96.2 ~ 131	17.9 ~ 24.1	130 ~ 174
M16 × 1.5	19.9 ~ 26.9	144 ~ 195	26.6 ~ 36.0	192 ~ 260
M18 × 1.5	28.6 ~ 43.6	207 ~ 315	38.4 ~ 52.0	278 ~ 376
M20 × 1.5	40.0 ~ 54.0	289 ~ 391	53.4 ~ 72.2	386 ~ 522
M22 × 1.5	52.7 ~ 71.3	381 ~ 516	70.7 ~ 95.7	511 ~ 692
M24 × 2.0	67.9 ~ 91.9	491 ~ 665	90.9 ~ 123	658 ~ 890
M30 × 2.0	137 ~ 185	990 ~ 1339	182 ~ 248	1314 ~ 1796
M36 × 3.0	192 ~ 260	1390 ~ 1880	262 ~ 354	1894 ~ 2562
M36 × 4.0	174 ~ 236	1261 ~ 1704	250 ~ 310	1808 ~ 2242

## 2) PIPE AND HOSE (FLARE TYPE)

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

## 3) PIPE AND HOSE (ORFS TYPE)

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
9/16-18	19	4	28.9
11/16-16	22	5	36.2
13/16-16	27	9.5	68.7
1-3/16-12	36	18	130.2
1-7/16-12	41	21	151.9
1-11/16-12	50	35	253.2

## 4) FITTING

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

#### 4) TIGHTENING TORQUE OF MAJOR COMPONENT

No.	Descriptions		Bolt size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	Engine	Engine mounting bolt (engine-bracket)	M10 × 1.5	7±1.5	50.6±10.9
2		Engine mounting bolt (bracket-frame)	M16 × 2.0	30±4.5	217±32.5
3		Radiator mounting bolt, nut	M14 × 2.0	14±1.0	101±7.2
4		Coupling mounting socket bolt	M14 × 2.0	14±1.0	101±7.2
		Coupling mounting clamp bolt	M16 × 2.0	11±1.0	79.6±7.2
5	Hydraulic system	Main pump mounting bolt	M12 × 1.75	12±1.0	86.8±7.2
6		Main control valve mounting bolt	M 8 × 1.25	3.4±0.7	24.6±5.0
7			M10 × 1.5	7±1.5	50.6±10.9
8		Fuel tank mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
9		Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
10		Turning joint mounting bolt, nut	M12 × 1.75	12.3±1.3	89±9.4
11	Power train system	Swing motor mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
12		Swing bearing upper mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7±3.0	215±21.7
13		Swing bearing lower mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7±3.0	215±21.7
14		Travel motor mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	23±2.5	166±18.1
15	Under carriage	Sprocket mounting bolt	M14 × 2.0	19.6±2.0	142±14.5
16		Carrier roller mounting bolt, nut	M16 × 2.0	29.7±3.0	215±21.7
17		Track roller mounting bolt	M14 × 2.0	19.6±2.0	142±14.5
18		Track tension cylinder mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7±3.0	215±21.7
19		Track shoe mounting bolt, nut	M14 × 1.5	25.5±2.5	184±18.1
20	Others	Counter weight mounting bolt	M27 × 3.0	140±15	1013±108
21		Cab mounting bolt, nut	M12 × 1.75	12.2±1.3	88.2±9.4
22		Operator's seat mounting bolt	M 8 × 1.25	1.17±0.5	8.5±3.6

### 3. FUEL, COOLANT AND LUBRICANTS

#### 1) NEW MACHINE

New machine used and filled with following lubricants.

Description	Specification
Engine oil	SAE 10W-30 (API CK-4)
Hydraulic oil	HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine long life (ISO VG46, VG68) Conventional (ISO VG15)
Swing and travel reduction gear	SAE 80W-90 (API GL-5)
Grease	Lithium base grease NLGI No. 2
Fuel	ASTM D975-No. 2 (low sulfur fuel or ultra low sulfur fuel)
Coolant	Mixture of 50% ethylene glycol base antifreeze and 50 % water.

**SAE** : Society of Automotive Engineers

**API** : American Petroleum Institute

**ISO** : International Organization for Standardization

**NLGI** : National Lubricating Grease Institute

**ASTM** : American Society of Testing and Material

· Low sulfur fuel : sulfur content  $\leq 500$  ppm

· Ultra low sulfur fuel : sulfur content  $\leq 15$  ppm

## 2) RECOMMENDED OILS

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils have been developed to offer the best performance and service life for your equipment. These oils have been tested according to the specifications of HD Hyundai Construction Equipment and, therefore, will meet the highest safety and quality requirements.

We recommend that you use only HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils and grease officially approved by HD Hyundai Construction Equipment.

Service point	Kind of fluid	Capacity ℓ (U.S. gal)	Ambient temperature °C ( °F)									
			-50 (-58)	-30 (-22)	-20 (-4)	-10 (14)	0 (32)	10 (50)	20 (68)	30 (86)	40 (104)	
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	10.5 (2.8)	★SAE 5W-40									
							SAE 30					
			SAE 10W									
			SAE 10W-30									
			SAE 15W-40									
Final drive	Gear oil	1.1×2 (0.3×2)	★SAE 75W-90									
			SAE 80W-90									
Hydraulic tank	Hydraulic oil	Tank; 56 (14.8)	★ISO VG 15									
			ISO VG 32									
		System; 109 (28.8)	ISO VG 46, HBHO VG 46★ <sup>3</sup>									
			ISO VG 68									
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel★ <sup>1</sup>	115 (30.4)	★ASTM D975 NO.1									
			ASTM D975 NO.2									
Fitting (grease nipple)	Grease	As required	★NLGI NO.1									
			NLGI NO.2									
Radiator (reservoir tank)	Mixture of antifreeze and water 50 : 50★ <sup>2</sup>	13 (3.4)	Ethylene glycol base permanent type									
			★Ethylene glycol base permanent type (60 : 40)									

**SAE** : Society of Automotive Engineers

**API** : American Petroleum Institute

**ISO** : International Organization for Standardization

**NLGI** : National Lubricating Grease Institute

**ASTM** : American Society of Testing and Material

★ : Cold region (Russia, CIS, Mongolia)

★<sup>1</sup> : Ultra low sulfur diesel

- sulfur content ≤ 15 ppm

★<sup>2</sup> : Soft water : City water or distilled water

★<sup>3</sup> : HD Hyundai Construction Equipment  
Bio Hydraulic Oil

※ Using any lubricating oils other than HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine products may lead to a deterioration of performance and cause damage to major components.

※ Do not mix HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine oil with any other lubricating oil as it may result in damage to the systems of major components.

※ Do not use any engine oil other than that specified above, as it may clog the diesel particulate filter(DPF).

※ For HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils and grease for use in regions with extremely low temperatures, please contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer.



## 4. MAINTENANCE CHECK LIST

### 1) DAILY SERVICE BEFORE STARTING

Check items	Service	Page
Visual check		
Fuel tank	Check, Refill	6-25
Hydraulic oil level	Check, Add	6-27, 27-1
Engine oil level	Check, Add	6-18
Radiator coolant level	Check, Add	6-20
Control panel & pilot lamp	Check, Clean	-
Fan belt tension and damage	Check, Adjust	6-23
★ Attachment pin and bushing	Lubricate	6-35
· Boom cylinder tube end		
· Boom foot		
· Boom cylinder rod end		
· Arm cylinder tube end		
· Arm cylinder rod end		
· Boom + Arm connecting		
· Bucket cylinder tube end		

★ Lubricate every 10 hours or daily for initial 100 hours.

### 2) EVERY 50 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Water separator	Check, Drain	6-25
Fuel tank (water, sediment)	Drain	6-25
Swing gear & piston	Lubricate	6-30
Track tension	Lubricate	6-32
Bucket linkage & blade pins	Lubricate	6-35
· Bucket cylinder rod end		
· Bucket + Arm connecting		
· Bucket control link + Arm		
· Bucket control rod		
· Boom swing post + Upper frame connecting		
· Boom swing cylinder head and rod		
· Dozer blade + Lower frame connecting		
· Dozer blade cylinder head and rod		

### 3) INITIAL 50 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Attachment pins	Add, Lubricate	6-35
Boom swing cylinder	Check, Add	6-30
Bolts & Nuts	Check, Tight	6-6
· Sprocket mounting bolts		
· Travel motor mounting bolts		
· Swing motor mounting bolts		
· Swing bearing mounting bolts		
· Engine mounting bolts		
· Counterweight mounting bolts		
· Turning joint locating bolts		
· Track shoe mounting bolts and nuts		
· Hydraulic pump mounting bolts		
Fan belt tension & damage	Check	-

### 4) EVERY 200 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
★ Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace	6-29
★ Pilot line filter element	Replace	6-29

★ **Replace 2 filters for continuous hydraulic breaker operation only.**

### 5) INITIAL 250 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Engine oil	Change	6-18, 19
Engine oil filter	Replace	6-18, 19
Fuel filter element	Replace	6-26
Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace	6-29
Pilot line filter element	Replace	6-29
Travel reduction gear oil	Replace	6-31

## 6) EVERY 250 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Battery (voltage)	Check, Add	6-37
Boom swing cylinder	Check, Add	6-30
Aircon and heater outer filter	Check, Clean	6-40
Swing bearing grease	Lubricate	6-30
Attachment pin and bushing	Lubricate	6-35
· Boom cylinder tube end		
· Boom foot		
· Boom cylinder rod end		
· Arm cylinder tube end		
· Arm cylinder rod end		
· Boom + Arm connecting		
· Bucket cylinder tube end		
Bolts & Nuts	Check, Tight	6-6
· Sprocket mounting bolts		
· Travel motor mounting bolts		
· Swing motor mounting bolts		
· Swing bearing mounting bolts		
· Engine mounting bolts		
· Counterweight mounting bolts		
· Turning joint locating bolts		
· Track shoe mounting bolts and nuts		
· Hydraulic pump mounting bolts		
Fan belt tension & damage	Check	-

## 7) EVERY 500 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
★ Engine oil	Change	6-18, 19
★ Engine oil filter	Replace	6-18, 19
Radiator and oil cooler fin	Check, clean	6-23
☆ Air cleaner element (primary)	Check, clean	6-24
Fuel filter element	Replace	6-26
Water separator element	Replace	6-25

★ If you use high sulfur containing fuel above than 0.5% or use low grade of engine oil reduce change interval.

☆ Clean the primary element only after 500 hours operation or when the air cleaner warning lamp blinks.

Replace primary element and safety element after 4 times cleanings of primary element.

## 8) EVERY 1000 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Hydraulic tank air breather element	Replace	6-29
Travel reduction gear oil	Change	6-31
Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace	6-29
Pilot line filter element	Replace	6-29

## 9) EVERY 2000 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Radiator coolant <sup>*1</sup>	Change	6-20, 21, 22
Hydraulic oil suction strainer	Check, Clean	6-28
Hydraulic oil <sup>*1</sup>	Change	6-28
HBHO <sup>*2</sup>	Change	6-28
Hoses, fittings, clamps (fuel, coolant, hydraulic)	Check, Retighten, Replace	-

<sup>\*1</sup> Conventional

<sup>\*2</sup> If do not want to change HBHO (HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Bio Hydraulic Oil, ISO VG 46) every 2000 hours, contact HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer and ask about SAMPLING.

※Change hydraulic oil every 600 hours of continuous hydraulic breaker operation.

## 10) EVERY 5000 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Hydraulic oil <sup>*3</sup>	Change	6-28

<sup>\*3</sup> HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine long life

※Change oil every 1000 hours of continuous hydraulic breaker operation.

## 11) EVERY 6000 HOURS SERVICE

Check items	Service	Page
Radiator coolant <sup>*3</sup>	Change	6-20, 21, 22

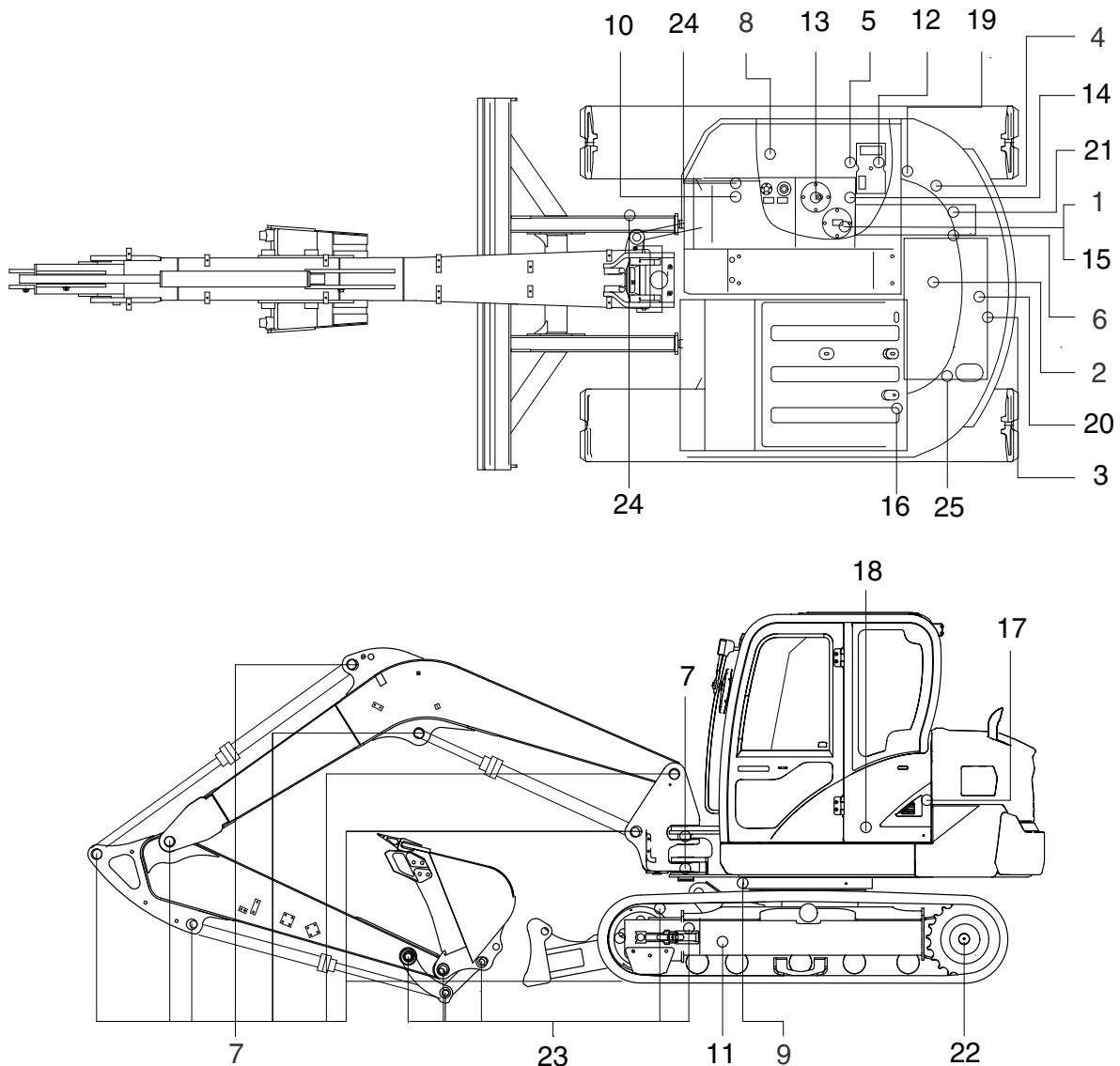
<sup>\*3</sup> HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine long life

## 12) WHEN REQUIRED

Whenever you have trouble with the machine, you must perform the service of related items, system by system.

Check items	Service	Page
Fuel system		
· Fuel tank	Drain or Clean	6-25
· Water separator	Drain or Replace	6-25
· Fuel filter element	Replace	6-26
Engine lubrication system		
· Engine oil	Change	6-18, 19
· Engine oil filter	Replace	6-18, 19
Engine cooling system		
· Radiator coolant	Add or Change	6-20, 21, 22, 23
· Radiator	Clean or Flush	6-20, 21, 22, 23
Engine air system		
· Air cleaner element (primary, safety)	Replace	6-24
Hydraulic system		
· Hydraulic oil	Add or Change	6-27-1, 28
· Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace	6-29
· Pilot line filter element	Replace	6-29
· Hydraulic tank air breather element	Replace	6-29
· Hydraulic oil suction strainer	Clean	6-28
Under carriage		
· Track tension	Check, Adjust	6-32
Bucket		
· Tooth	Replace	6-34
· Side cutter	Replace	6-33
· Linkage	Adjust	6-33
· Bucket assy	Replace	6-33
Aircon and heater		
· Outer filter	Clean, Replace	6-40
· Inner filter	Replace	6-41

## 5. MAINTENANCE CHART



85A6MA03

### Caution

1. Service intervals are based on the hour meter reading.
2. The number of each item shows the lubrication point on the machine.
3. Stop engine while filling oil, and use no open flames.
4. For other details, refer to the service manual.

Service interval	No.	Description	Service action	Oil symbol	Capacity ℓ (U.S.gal)	Service points No.
10 Hours or daily	1	Hydraulic oil level	Check, Add	HO	56 (14.8)	1
	2	Engine oil level	Check, Add	EO	10.5 (2.8)	1
	4	Radiator coolant	Check, Add	C	13 (3.4)	1
	8	Fuel tank	Check, Add	DF	115 (30.4)	1

※ Oil symbol : Please refer to the recommended lubricants for specification.

DF : Diesel fuel

GO : Gear oil

HO : Hydraulic oil

C : Coolant

PGL : Grease

EO : Engine oil

Service interval	No.	Description	Service action	Oil symbol	Capacity ℓ (U.S.gal)	Service points No.
50 Hours or weekly	5	Water separator	Check, Drain	-	-	1
	8	Fuel tank (water, sediment)	Check, Clean	-	-	1
	10	Swing gear & piston	Check, Lubricate	PGL	-	1
	11	Track tension	Check, Adjust	PGL	-	2
	23	Bucket linkage & blade pin	Lubricate	PGL	-	9
		Bucket linkage & angle dozer pin	Lubricate	PGL	-	12
Initial 250 Hours	2	Engine oil	Change	EO	11.6 (3.1)	1
	3	Engine oil filter	Replace	-	-	1
	13	Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace	-	-	1
	16	Pilot line filter element	Replace	-	-	1
	20	Fuel filter element	Replace	-	-	1
	22	Travel reduction gear oil	Change	GO	1.1 (0.3)	2
250 Hours	6	Fan belt tension and damage	Check, Adjust	-	-	1
	7	Attachment pin	Lubricate	PGL	-	11
	9	Swing bearing	Lubricate	PGL	-	3
	12	Battery (voltage)	Check, Clean	-	-	1
	17	Aircon and heater outer filter	Clean	-	-	1
	24	Boom swing cylinder	Lubricate	PGL	-	2
500 Hours	2	Engine oil	Change	EO	10.5 (2.8)	1
	3	Engine oil filter	Replace	-	-	1
	5	Water separator element	Replace	-	-	1
	19	Air cleaner element (primary)	Clean	-	-	1
	20	Fuel filter element	Replace	-	-	1
	21	Radiator and oil cooler fin	Check, Clean	-	-	3
1000 Hours	13	Hydraulic oil return filter	Replace	-	-	1
	14	Hydraulic tank air breather element	Replace	-	-	1
	16	Pilot line filter element	Replace	-	-	1
	22	Travel reduction gear oil	Change	GO	1.1 (0.3)	2
2000 Hours	1	Hydraulic oil <sup>*1</sup>	Change	HO	56 (14.8)	1
	1	Hydraulic oil (HBHO <sup>*2</sup> )	Change	-	56 (14.8)	1
	4	Radiator coolant <sup>*1</sup>	Change	C	13 (3.4)	1
	15	Hydraulic oil suction strainer	Check, Clean	-	-	1
	-	Hoses, fittings, clamps (fuel, coolant, hydraulic)	Check, Retighten, Replace	-	-	-
3000 Hours	25	DPF (diesel particulate filter)	Clean	-	-	1
5000 Hours	1	Hydraulic oil <sup>*3</sup>	Change	HO	56 (14.8)	1
6000 Hours	4	Radiator coolant <sup>*3</sup>	Change	C	13 (3.4)	1
As required	17	Aircon and heater outer filter	Clean, Replace	-	-	1
	18	Aircon and heater inner filter	Change, Replace	-	-	1
	19	Air cleaner element (primary)	Change, Replace	-	-	1
		Air cleaner element (safety)	Change, Replace	-	-	1

<sup>\*1</sup> Conventional      <sup>\*2</sup> HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Bio Hydraulic Oil

<sup>\*3</sup> HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine long life

※ Oil symbol : Please refer to the recommended lubricants for specification.

DF : Diesel fuel

GO : Gear oil

HO : Hydraulic oil

C : Coolant

PGL : Grease

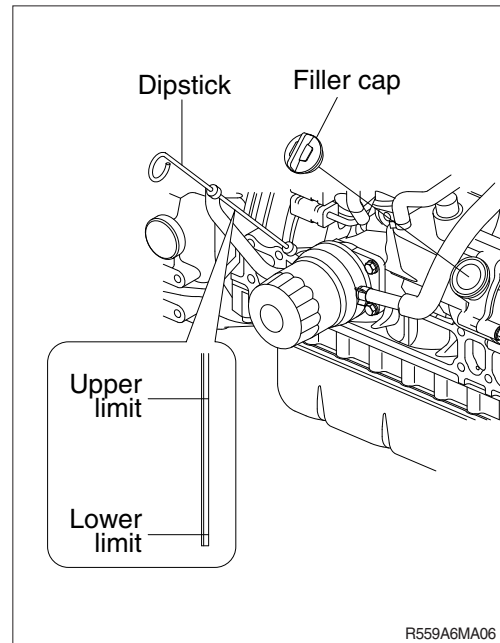
EO : Engine oil

## 6. SERVICE INSTRUCTION

### 1) CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL

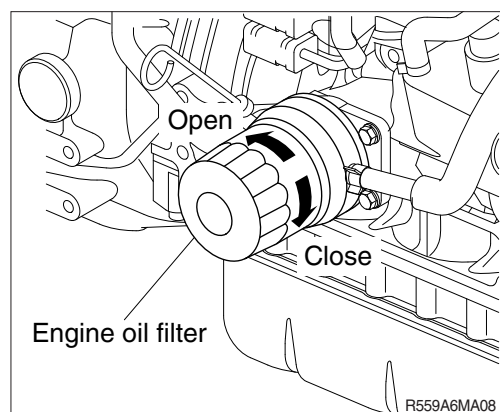
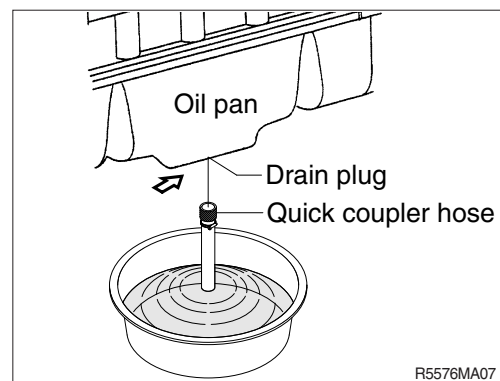
Check the oil level with the machine on flat ground before starting engine.

- (1) Pull out the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
  - (2) Check the oil level by inserting the dipstick completely into the hole and pulling out again.
  - (3) If oil level is LOW, add oil and then check again.
- ※ **If the oil is contaminated or diluted, change the oil regardless of the regular change interval.**
  - ※ **Check oil level after engine has been stopped for 15 minutes.**
  - ▲ **Do not operate unless the oil level is in the normal range.**



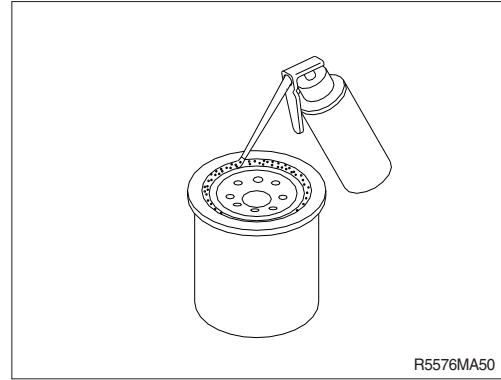
### 2) REPLACEMENT OF ENGINE OIL AND OIL FILTER

- (1) Warm up the engine.
  - (2) Remove the cover of drain plug and connect the quick coupler hose.
- ※ **A drain pan with a capacity of 20 liters (5 U.S. gallons) will be adequate.**
  - ※ **Dispose of the waste oil in accordance with local regulations.**
- (3) Clean around the filter head, remove the filter with a filter wrench and clean the gasket surface.



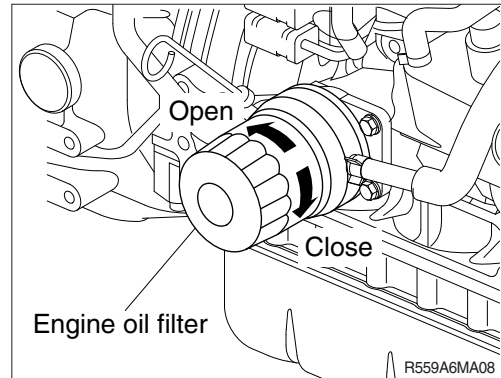


- (4) Apply a light film of lubricating oil to the gasket sealing surface before installing the filter.

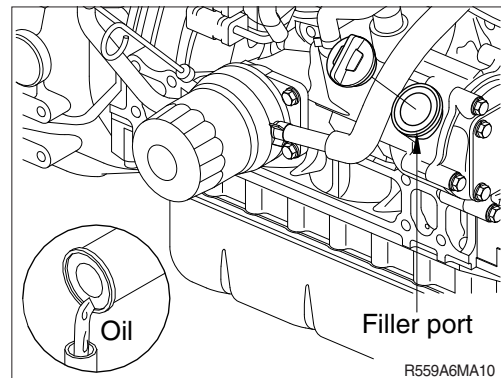


- (5) Install the new filter manually by turning it clockwise until it contacts the filter head.  
Tighten to 2.0~2.4 kgf · m (14~17 lbf · ft) or one additional turn using the filter wrench.  
Remove the quick coupler hose.

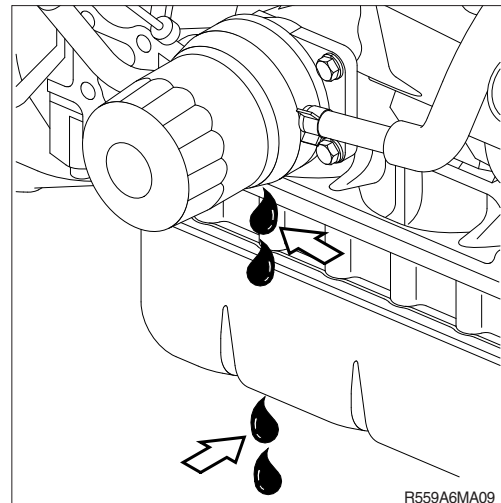
※ **Mechanical over-tightening may distort the threads or damage the filter element seal.**



- (6) Fill the engine with clean oil to the proper level.  
· Quantity : 10.5 ℓ (2.8 U.S.gallons)



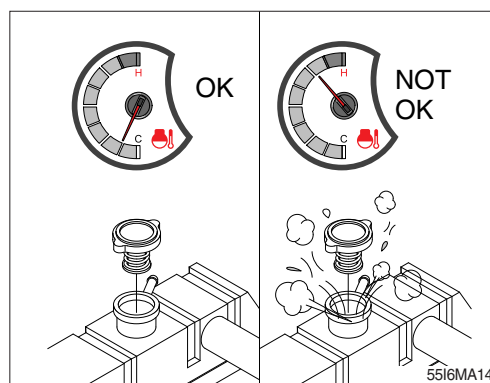
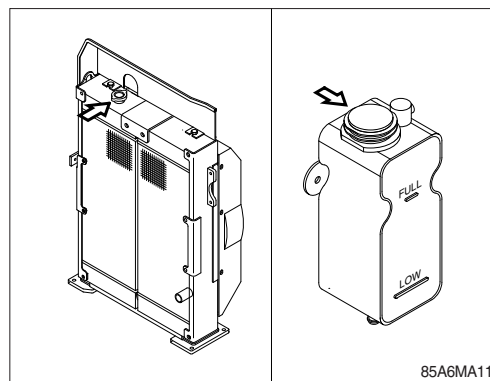
- (7) Operate the engine at low idle and inspect for leaks at the filter and the drain plug.  
Shut the engine off and check the oil level with the dipstick. Allow 15 minutes for oil to drain down before checking.
- (8) Reinstall the oil filler cap. If any engine oil is spilled, wipe it away with a clean cloth.



### 3) CHECK RADIATOR COOLANT

- (1) Check if the level of coolant in reservoir tank is between FULL and LOW.
- (2) Add the mixture of antifreeze and water after removing the cap of the reservoir tank if coolant is not sufficient.
- (3) Be sure to add the coolant by opening the cap of radiator when coolant level is below LOW.
- (4) Replace gasket of radiator cap when it is damaged.

**▲ Hot coolant can spray out if radiator cap is removed while engine is hot. Remove the cap after the engine has cooled down.**



### 4) FLUSHING AND REFILLING OF RADIATOR

- (1) Change radiator coolant

**▲ Avoid prolonged and repeated skin contact with used antifreeze. Such prolonged and repeated contact can cause skin disorders or other bodily injury.**

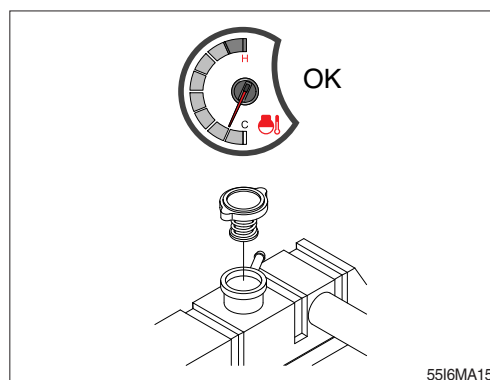
**Avoid excessive contact-wash thoroughly after contact is made.**

**Keep out of reach of children.**

**※ Protect the environment : Handling and disposal of used antifreeze can be subject to federal, state, and local law regulation.**

**Use authorized waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing authorized facilities for the receipt of used antifreeze.**

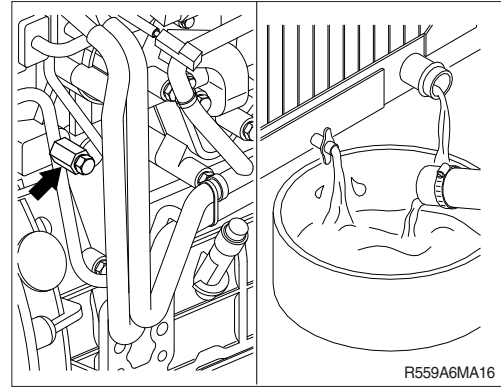
**If in doubt, contact your local authorities for guidance as to proper handling of used antifreeze.**



- ▲** Wait until the temperature is below 50°C (122°F) before removing the coolant system pressure cap.

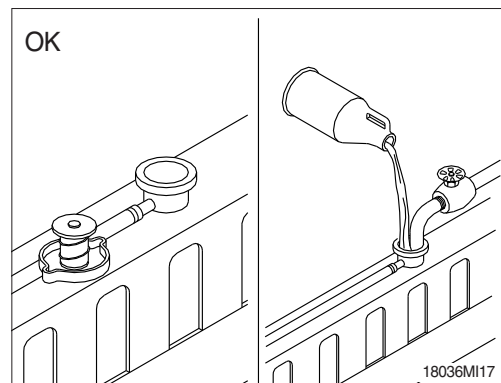
Failure to do so can cause personal injury from heated coolant spray.

Drain the cooling system by opening the drain valve on the radiator and removing the plug in the bottom of the water inlet. Drain the coolant from engine block. A drain pan with a capacity of 20 liters (5 U.S.gallons) will be adequate in most applications.

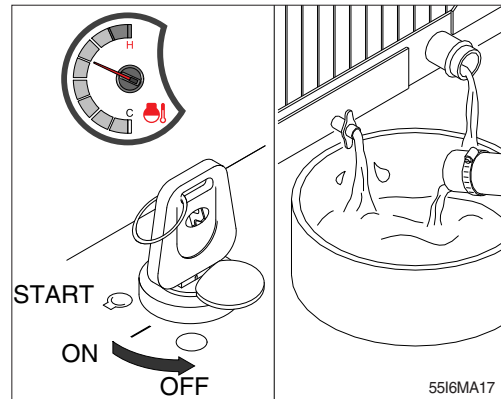


## (2) Flushing of cooling system

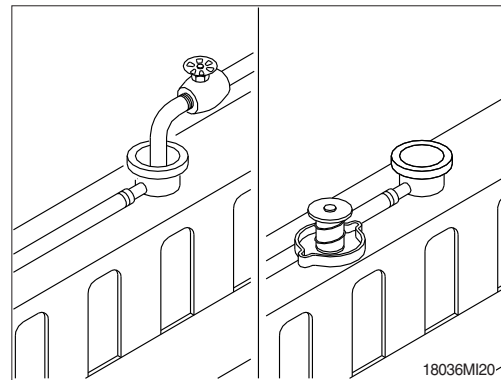
- ① Fill the system with a mixture of sodium carbonate and water(or a commercially available equivalent).
  - ※ Use 0.5 kg (1.0 pound) of sodium carbonate for every 23 liters (6.0 U.S.gallons) of water.
  - ※ Do not install the radiator cap. The engine is to be operated without the cap for this process.



- ② Operate the engine for 5 minutes with the coolant temperature above 80°C (176°F) .  
Shut the engine off, and drain the cooling system.

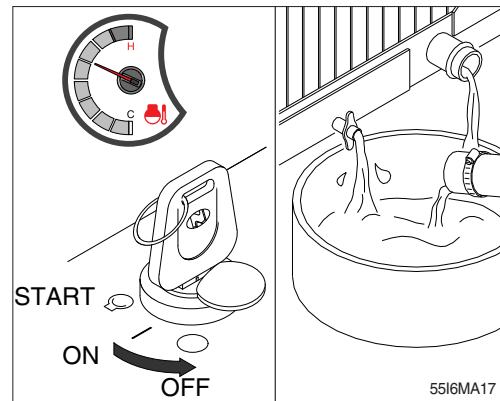


- ③ Fill the cooling system with clean water.
  - ※ Be sure to vent the engine and aftercooler for complete filling.
  - ※ Do not install the radiator cap or the new coolant filter.



- ④ Operate the engine for 5 minutes with the coolant temperature above 80°C (176°F). Shut the engine off, and drain the cooling system.

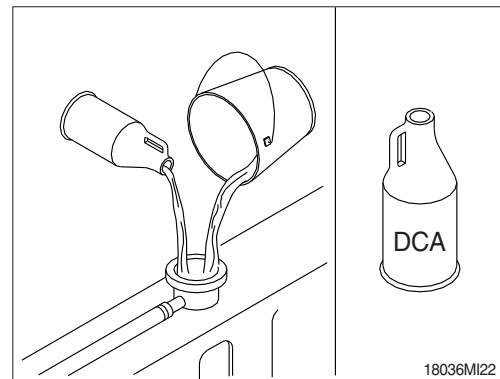
※ If the water being drained is still dirty, the system must be flushed again until the water is clean.



### (3) Cooling system filling

- ① Use a mixture of 50 percent water and 50 percent ethylene glycol antifreeze to fill the cooling system.

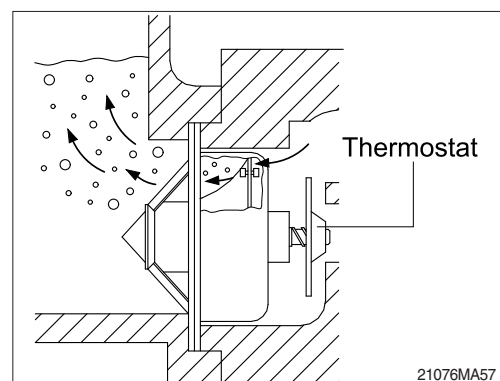
Coolant capacity (engine only) : 4.2 ℓ (1.1 U.S. gallons)



- ② The system has a maximum fill rate of 14 liters (3.5 U.S. gallons) per minute. Do not exceed this fill rate.

※ The system must be filled slowly to prevent air locks.

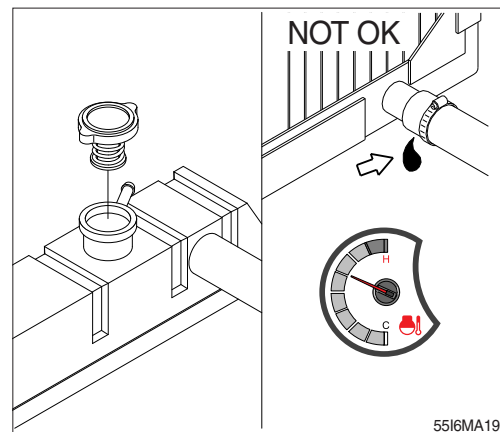
During filling, air must be vented from the engine coolant passage.



- ③ Install the pressure cap. Operate the engine until it reaches a temperature 80°C (176°F), and check for coolant leaks.

Check the coolant level again to make sure the system is full of coolant after allow engine to cool.

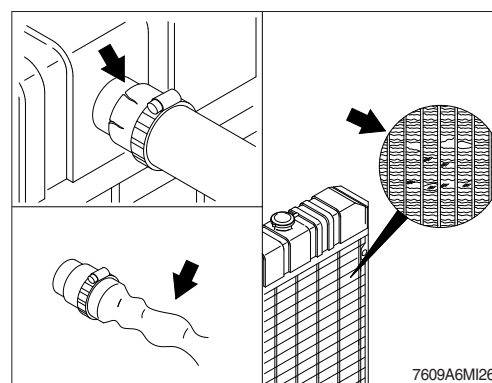
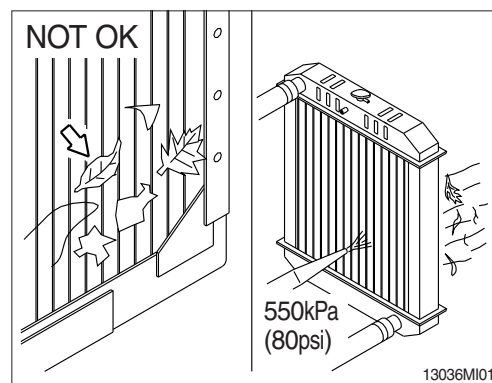
※ If the gasket of the surge tank cap is damaged, discard the old filler cap and install a new cap.



## 5) CLEAN RADIATOR AND OIL COOLER

Check, and if necessary, clean and dry outside of radiator and oil cooler. After working in a dusty place, clean radiator more frequently.

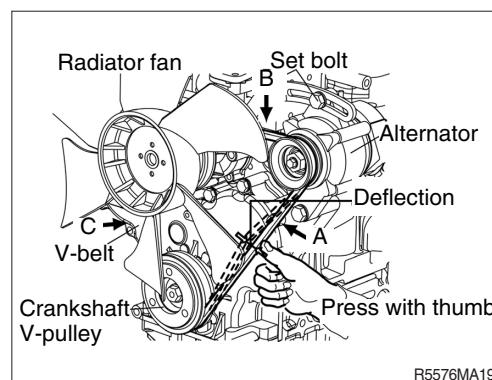
- (1) Visually inspect the radiator for clogged radiator fins.
- (2) Use 550 kPa (80 psi) air pressure to blow the dirt and debris from the fins.  
Blow the air in the opposite direction of the fan air flow.
- (3) Visually inspect the radiator for bent or broken fins.
- ※ If the radiator must be replaced due to bent or broken fins which can cause the engine to overheat, refer to the manufacturer's replacement procedures.
- (4) Visually inspect the radiator for core and gasket leaks.



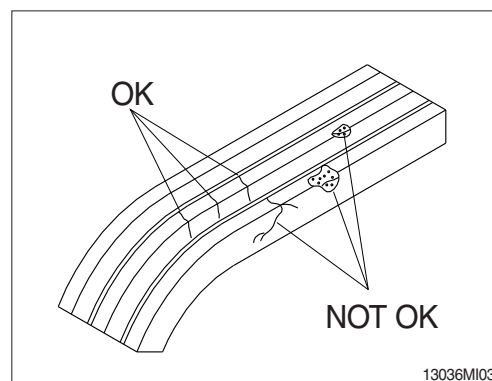
## 6) FAN BELT TENSION

- (1) Measure the belt deflection at the longest span of the belt.  
· Deflection

	A	B	C
Used belt	10~14	7~10	9~13
New belt	8~12	5~8	7~11



- (2) Inspect the drive for damage (cracks, oil or wear).  
If any of these conditions exist, replace.



## 7) INSPECTION OF COOLING FAN

▲ Serious injury can result from a fan blade failure. Never pull or pry on the fan. This can damage the fan blade and cause fan failure.

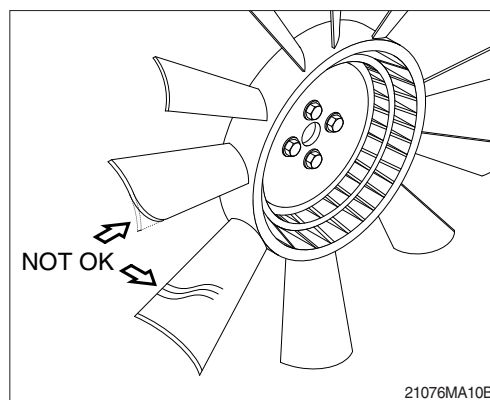
※ Rotate the crankshaft by using the engine barring gear.

※ A visual inspection of the cooling fan is required daily.

Check for cracks, loose rivets, and bent or loose blades.

Check the fan to make sure it is securely mounted. Tighten the capscrews if necessary.

Replace any fan that is damaged.



## 8) CLEANING OF AIR CLEANER

### (1) Primary element

- ① Open cover and remove the element.
- ② Clean the inside of the body.
- ③ Clean the element with pressurized air.

· Remove the dust inside of the element by the pressurized air (below 3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 40 psi) forward and backward equally.

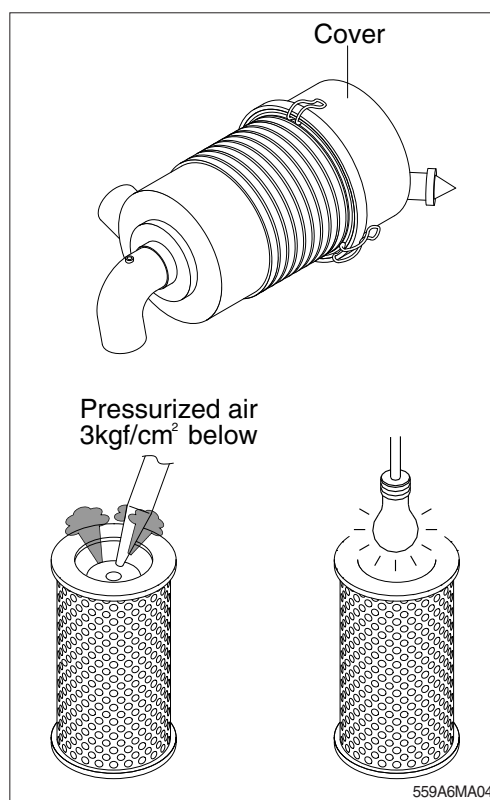
- ④ Inspect for cracks or damage of element by putting a light bulb inside of the element.
- ⑤ Insert element and close cover.

※ Replace the primary element after 4 cleanings.

### (2) Safety element

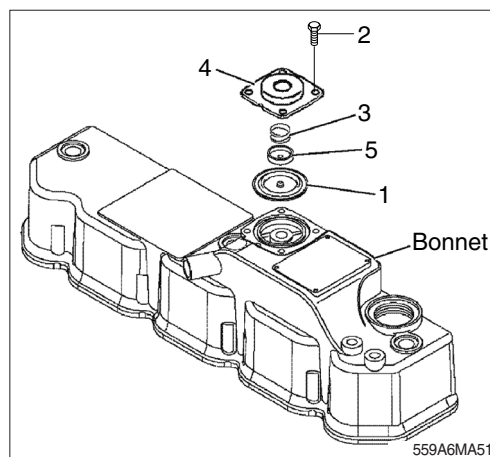
※ Replace the safety element only when the primary element is cleaned 4 times.

△ Always replace the safety element. Never attempt to reuse the safety element by cleaning the element.



## 9) CRANKCASE BREATHER

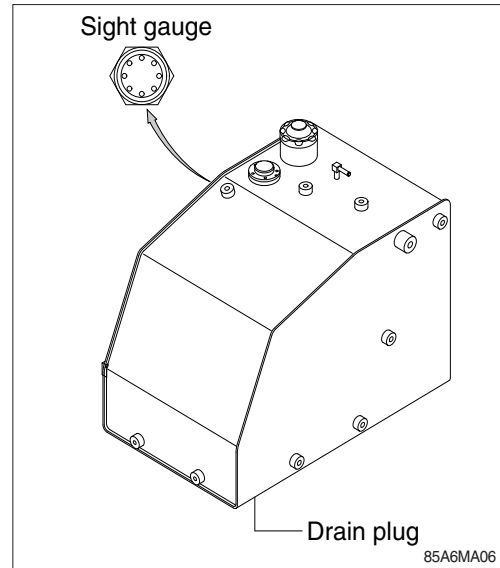
- (1) Remove the bolts (2) retaining the diaphragm cover.
- (2) Remove the diaphragm cover (4), spring (3), diaphragm plate (5) and diaphragm (1).
- (3) Inspect the diaphragm for tears. Inspect the spring for distortion. Replace components if necessary.
- (4) Reinstall the diaphragm, diaphragm plate, spring and diaphragm cover. Tighten the bolts.





## 10) FUEL TANK

- ※ **Remove the strainer of the fuel tank and clean it if contaminated.**
- (1) Fill fuel tank fully to minimize water condensation and check the fuel gauge level before starting the machine.
- (2) Drain the water and sediment in the fuel tank by opening the drain cock.
- ※ **Be sure to LOCK the cap of fuel tank.**
- △ **Stop the engine when refueling.**  
All lights and flames shall be kept at a safe distance while refueling.

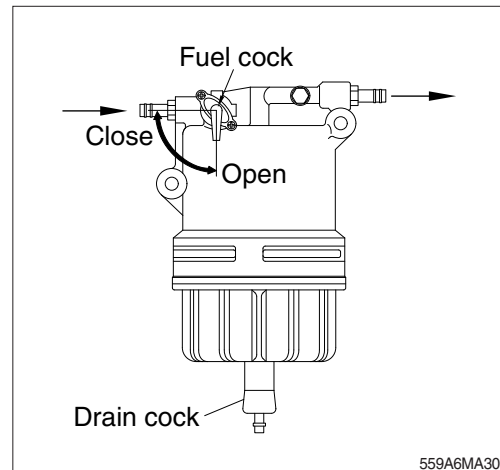


## 11) WATER SEPARATOR

- ※ **Inspect or drain the collection bowl of water every 50 hours and replace the element every 500 hours.**

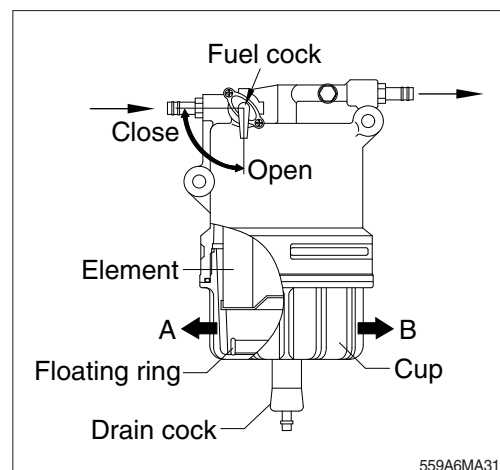
### (1) Drain water

- ① Close the fuel cock.
- ② Loosen the drain cock at the bottom of the water separator. Drain water collected inside.
- ③ Hand-tighten the drain cock.
  - Tightening torque :  $0.15 \pm 0.05 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $1.1 \pm 0.37 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
- ④ Open the fuel cock.
- ⑤ Be sure to prime the diesel fuel system when you are finished. See priming the fuel system on page 6-26.
- ⑥ Check for leaks.

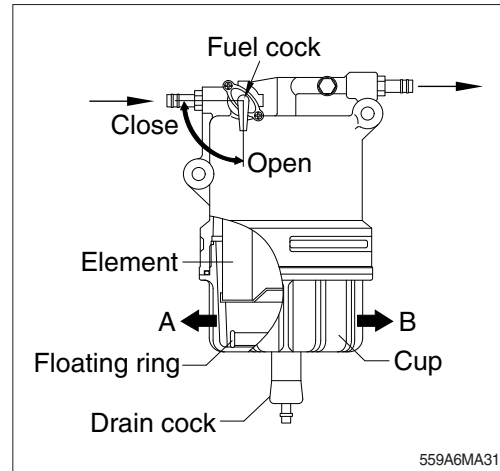


### (2) Replace element

- ① Close the fuel cock.
- ② Turn the retaining ring to the left (A) and remove the cup.
- ③ Carefully hold the cup to prevent fuel from spilling. If you spill any fuel, clean up the spill completely.
- ④ Remove the float ring from the cup. Pour the contaminants into the container and dispose of it properly.

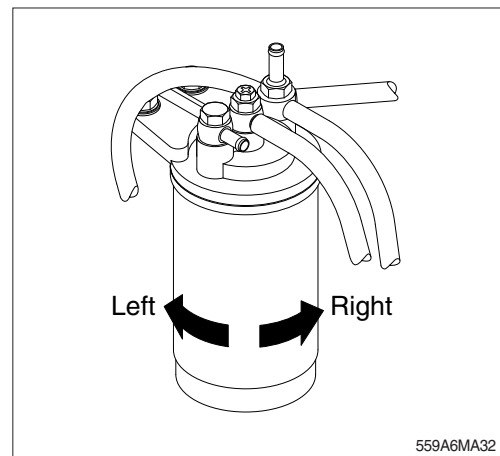


- ⑤ Replace the new element into the top of the water separator.
- ⑥ Install the new O-ring in the cup.
- ⑦ Position the floating ring in the cup.
- ⑧ Check the condition of the cup. Replace if necessary.
- ⑨ Install the cup to the bracket by tightening the retaining ring to the right (B) to a torque of  $2.8\sim 3.4 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$  ( $20.3\sim 24.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ ).
- ⑩ Close the drain cock.
- ⑪ Open the fuel cock.
- ⑫ Prime the fuel system.
- ⑬ Check for leaks.



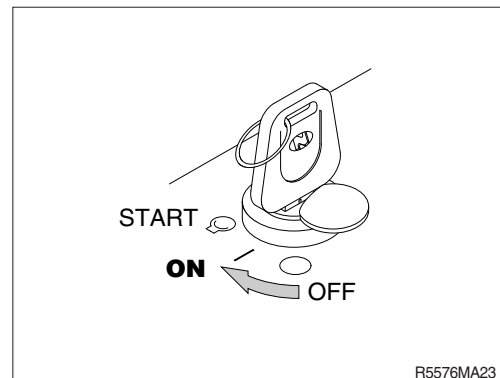
## 12) REPLACEMENT OF FUEL FILTER ELEMENT

- (1) Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- (2) Close the fuel cock of the water separator.
- (3) Remove the fuel filter element with a filter wrench, turning it to the left. When removing the fuel filter element, carefully hold it to prevent the fuel from spilling. Wipe up all spilled fuel.
- (4) Clean the filter mounting surface and apply a small amount of diesel fuel to the gasket of the new fuel filter element.
- (5) Install the new fuel filter element. Turn to the right and hand-tighten if only until it comes in contact with the mounting surface. Tighten to  $2.0\sim 2.4 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$  ( $14.5\sim 17.4 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ ) or one additional turn using the filter wrench.
- (6) Open the fuel cock of the water separator.
- (7) Prime the fuel system.
- (8) Check for leaks.



## 13) PRIMING THE FUEL SYSTEM

- (1) Turn the starting switch to the ON position for 10~15 seconds. This will allow the electric fuel pump to prime the fuel system.
- ※ **Never use the starter motor to crank the engine in order to prime the fuel system. This may cause the starter motor to overheat and damage the coils, pinion and/or ring gear.**

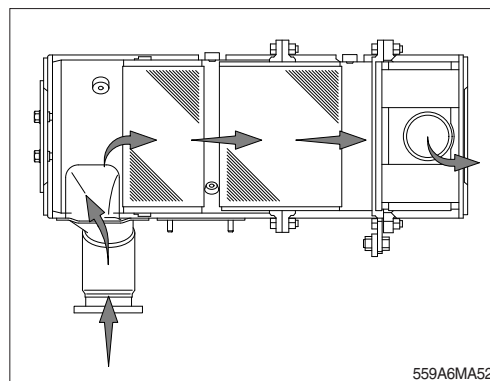




#### 14)DPF (diesel particulate filter) **CLEANING**

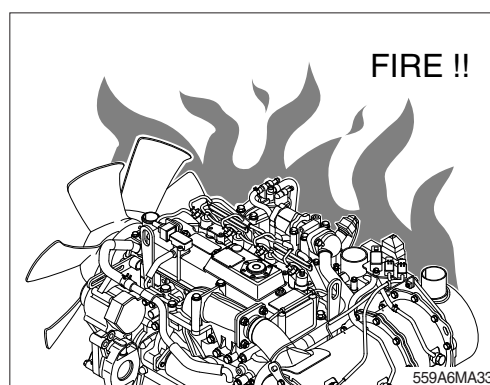
The diesel particulate filter can not be cleaned for maintenance purpose using conventional tools. The diesel particulate filter needs to be cleaned and checked using an approved cleaning machine at a authorized service center.

- ※ The diesel particulate filter shall be cleaned every 6000 hours.
- ※ Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer.



#### 15) LEAKAGE OF FUEL

- ▲ Use care when cleaning the fuel hose, injection pump, fuel filter and other connections as the leakage from these parts can cause fire.

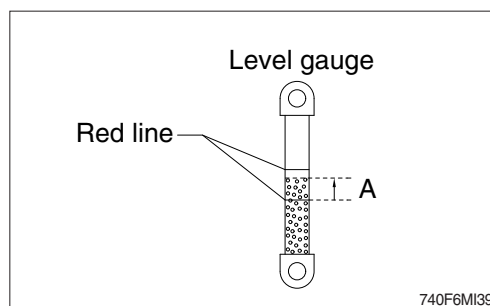
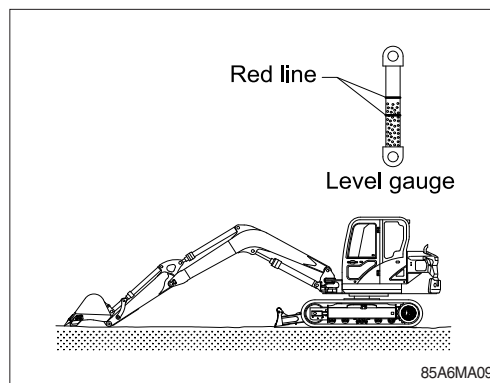


#### 16) HYDRAULIC OIL CHECK

- (1) Position the machine as shown in the illustration on the right. Please stop the engine and wait for about 5 minutes.
- (2) Check the oil level at the level gauge of hydraulic oil tank.
- (3) The oil level is normal if the oil is between the red lines. The oil level depends on the temperature of the hydraulic oil. Refer to the height (A) in the below table to check the level gauge.

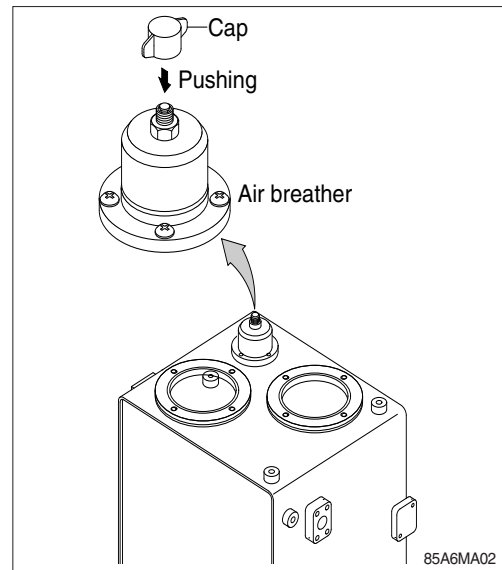
Temperature		Height A	
℃	°F	mm	inch
0	32	15	0.6
10	50	25	1.0
20	68	30	1.2
30	86	35	1.4
40	104	40	1.6

- ※ Refer to page 3-19 for checking the temperature of the hydraulic oil.
- ※ Add the hydraulic oil, if necessary.



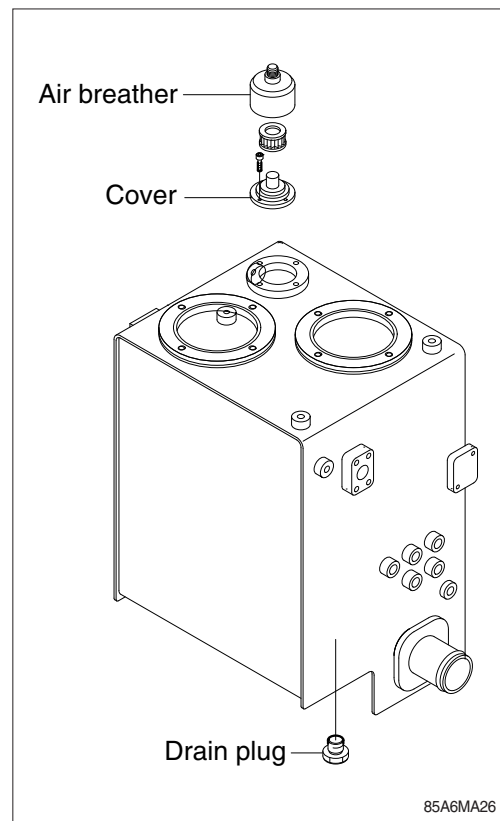
## 17) FILLING HYDRAULIC OIL

- (1) Position the machine like the hydraulic oil check.  
Then stop engine.
- (2) Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
- (3) Remove the breather on the top of oil tank and fill the oil to the specified level.
  - Tightening torque :  $4.05 \pm 0.8 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $29.3 \pm 5.8 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
- (4) Start engine after filling and operate the work equipment several times.
- (5) Check the oil level at the level check position after engine stops.



## 18) CHANGE HYDRAULIC OIL

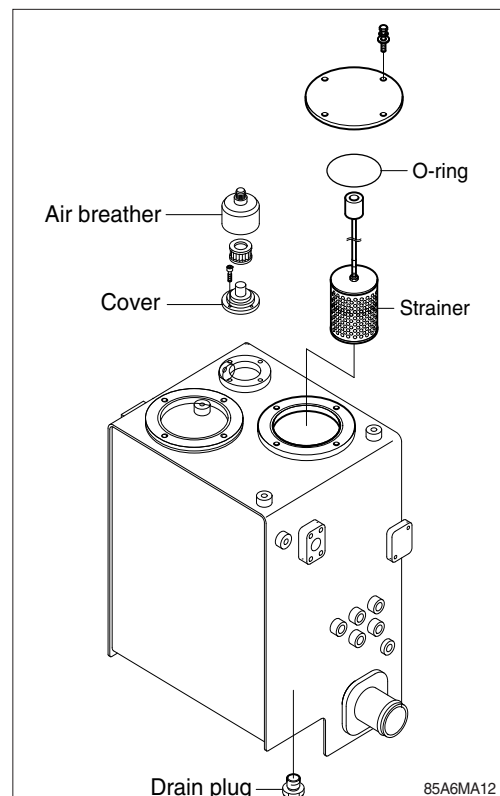
- (1) Position the machine like the hydraulic oil check.  
Then stop engine.
  - (2) Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
  - (3) Remove the cover.
    - Tightening torque :  $6.9 \pm 1.4 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $50 \pm 10 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
  - (4) Prepare a suitable container with a capacity of 109 ℓ (28.8 U.S. gal)
  - (5) To drain the oil loosen the drain plug at the bottom of the oil tank.
  - (6) Close the drain valve and fill proper amount of recommended oil.
  - (7) Put the breather in the right position.
  - (8) To bleed air hydraulic pump loosen the air breather at top of hydraulic pump assembly.
  - (9) Start engine and run continually. Release the air by full stroke of each control lever.
- ※ In case of injecting HBHO (HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Bio Hydraulic Oil) to machines that have formerly used different hydraulic oil, the proportion of residual oil must not exceed 2 %
- ※ Do not mix any other Bio oil, use only HBHO as bio oil. If changing to Bio oil, contact your local HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer.



## 19) CLEAN SUCTION STRAINER

Clean suction strainer as follows.

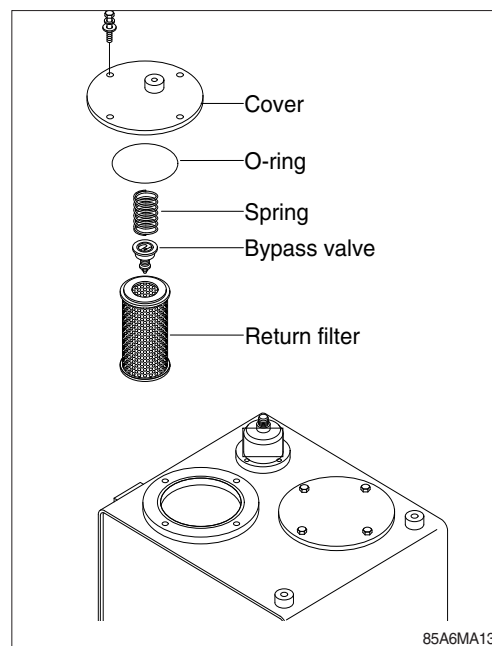
- (1) Remove the cover on the top of the oil tank.
    - Tightening torque :  $6.9 \pm 1.4 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $50 \pm 10 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
  - (2) Pull out the strainer in the tank.
  - (3) Wash the suction strainer with gasoline or cleaning oil (mineral spirits).
  - (4) Replace the suction strainer if it is damaged.
  - (5) Assemble with reverse order of disassembly.  
Be sure to install a new O-ring.
- ※ Loosen bolts on the cover slowly as the cover has spring force applied. This will prevent cover from popping off without notice.



## 20) REPLACEMENT OF RETURN FILTER

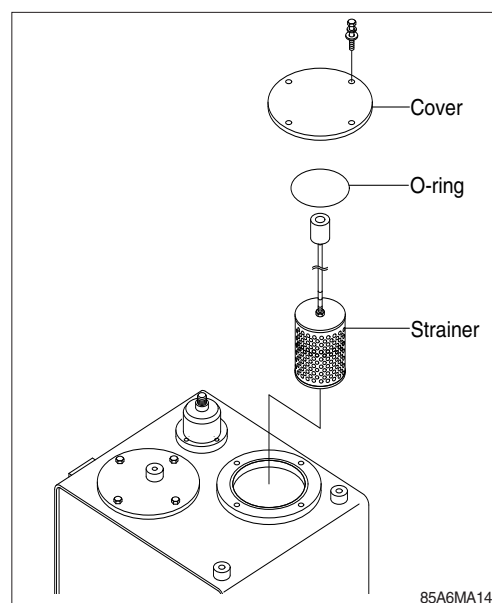
Replace return filter as follow.

- (1) Remove the cover.
- (2) Remove the spring, by-pass valve, and return filter in the tank.
- (3) Replace the return filter with a new one.
- (4) Reassemble by reverse order of disassembly.
  - Tightening torque :  $6.9 \pm 1.4 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $50 \pm 10 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



## 21) REPLACEMENT OF ELEMENT IN HYDRAULIC TANK AIR BREATHER

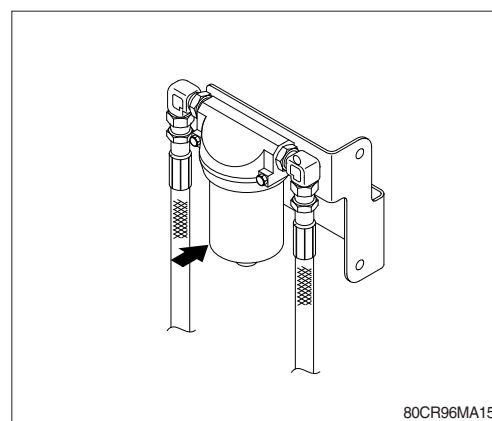
- (1) Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
- (2) Loosen the lock nut and remove the cover.
- (3) Pull out the air breather element.
- (4) Replace the air breather element with a new one.
- (5) Reassemble by reverse order of disassembly.
  - Tightening torque :  $4.05 \pm 0.8 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $29.3 \pm 5.8 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



## 22) REPLACEMENT OF PILOT LINE FILTER ELEMENT

- (1) Loosen the nut positioned on the filter body.
- (2) Pull out the filter element and clean filter housing.
- (3) Install the new element and tighten using specified torque.
  - Tightening torque :  $3.0 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $21.7 \pm 3.6 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )

※ **Change the element after initial 250 hours of operation. Thereafter, change the element every 1000 hours.**



## 23) LUBRICATE SWING BEARING AND RING GEAR

### (1) Swing bearing

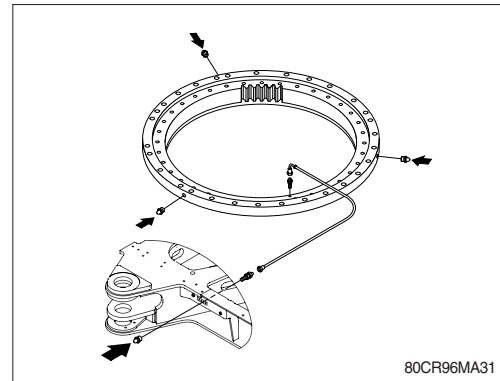
Grease at 3 fittings shown in the illustration.

※ Lubricate every 250 hours.

### (2) Swing ring gear (manifold)

Grease at 1 fitting shown in the illustration..

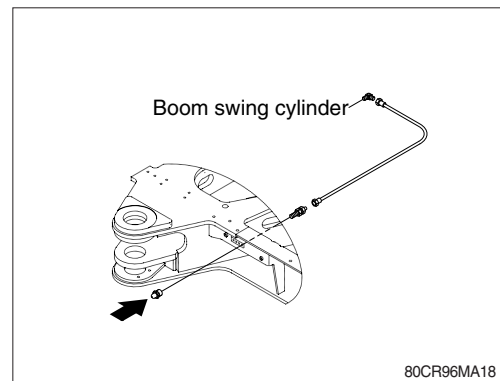
※ Lubricate every 50 hours.



### (3) Boom swing cylinder

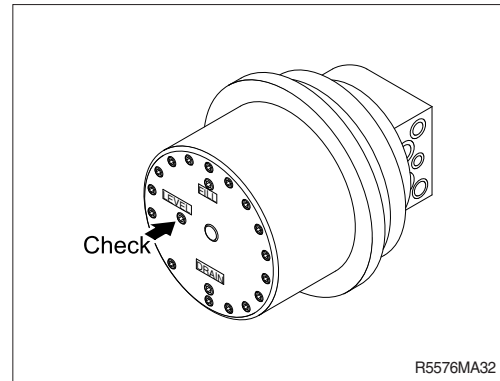
Grease at fitting shown in the illustration.

※ Lubricate every 250 hours.



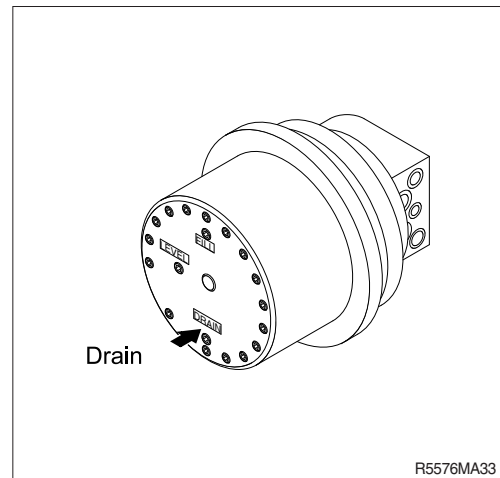
## 24) CHECK THE TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR OIL

- (1) Position the travel motor as shown in the illustration and make sure the machine is on flat ground.
- (2) Loosen the level plug and check the oil level.  
If the level is at the hole of the plug, it is normal.  
Fill the oil if it is not sufficient.
  - Tightening torque :  $6.0 \pm 1.0 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $43.4 \pm 7.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )



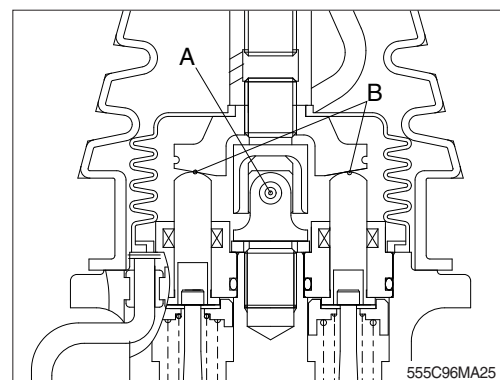
## 25) CHANGE OF THE TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR OIL

- (1) Raise the temperature of the oil by operating the machine first.
- (2) Position the travel motor as shown in the illustration and make sure the machine is on flat ground.
- (3) Loosen the level plug and then the drain plug.
- (4) Drain the oil to adequate container with a capacity of 5 ℓ (1.3 U.S. gal).
- (5) Tighten the drain plug and fill specified amount of oil at filling port.
  - Amount of oil : 1.1 ℓ (0.3 U.S. gal)
  - Tightening torque :  $6.0 \pm 1.0 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$   
( $43.4 \pm 7.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$ )
- (6) Tighten the level plug and travel slowly to check if there is any leakage of oil.



## 26) LUBRICATE RCV LEVER

Remove the bellows and with a grease gun grease the joint part (A) and sliding parts (B).



## 27) ADJUSTMENT OF TRACK TENSION

⚠ Serious injury or death can result from grease under pressure.

※ It is important to adjust the tension of track properly to extend the life of track and traveling components.

※ The wear of pins and bushings on the undercarriage will vary with the working conditions and soil properties.

It is thus necessary to continually inspect the track tension so as to maintain the standard tension on it.

(1) Raise the chassis with the boom and arm as shown in the illustration.

(2) Measure the distance between bottom of track frame on track center and back of shoe.

※ **Remove mud by rotating the track before measuring.**

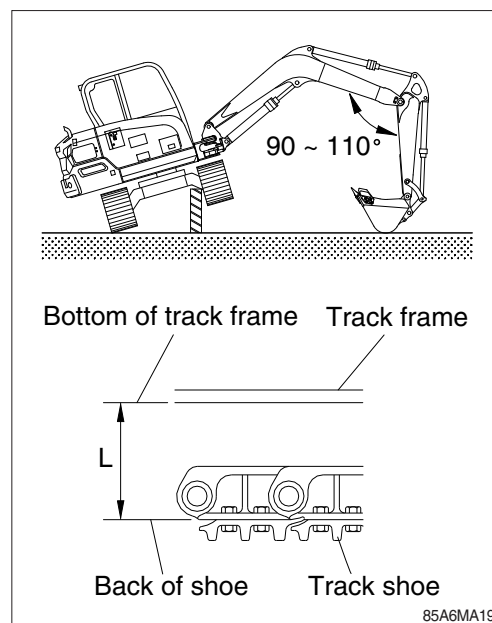
(3) If the tension is tight, drain the grease in the grease nipple and if the tension is loose, charge the grease.

⚠ Unscrew the grease nipple after release the tension by pushing the poppet only when necessarily required.

Grease leaking hole is not existing. So, while unscrew the grease nipple, grease is not leaking until the grease nipple is completely coming out. If the tension is not released in advance, the grease nipple can be suddenly popped out by pressurized grease.

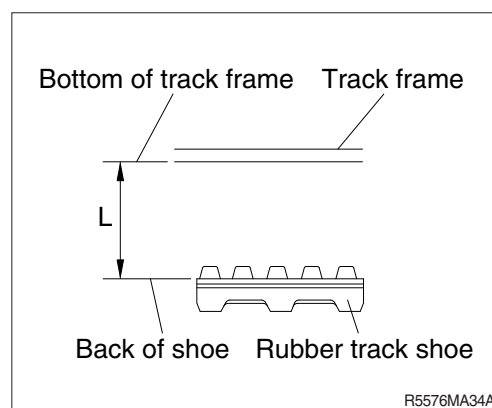
※ When the grease does not drained smoothly, move the machine to forward and backward a short distance.

If the track tension is loose even after the grease is charged to the maximum, change the pins and bushings as they are worn excessively.



Steel track

Length (L)	
210~240 mm	8.3"~9.4"



Rubber track

Length (L)	
100~110 mm	3.9~4.3"

## 28) REPLACEMENT OF BUCKET

△ When knocking the pin in with a hammer, metal particles may fly and cause serious injury, particularly if they get into your eyes. When carrying out this operation, always wear goggles, helmet, gloves, and other protective equipment.

※ When the bucket is removed, place it in a stable condition.

※ When performing joint work, make sure to signal clearly to each other and work carefully to avoid serious injury.

(1) Lower the bucket on the ground as shown in the illustration on the top right.

(2) Lock the safety knob to the LOCK position and stop the engine.

(3) Remove the stopper bolts (1) and nuts (2), then remove pins (3, 4) and remove the bucket.

※ When removing the pins, place the bucket so that it is in light contact with the ground.

※ If the bucket is lowered strongly to the ground, the resistance will be increased and it will be difficult to remove the pins.

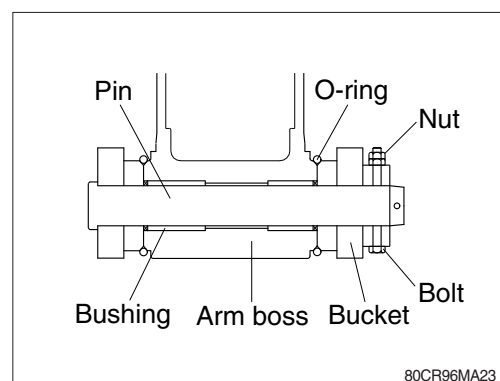
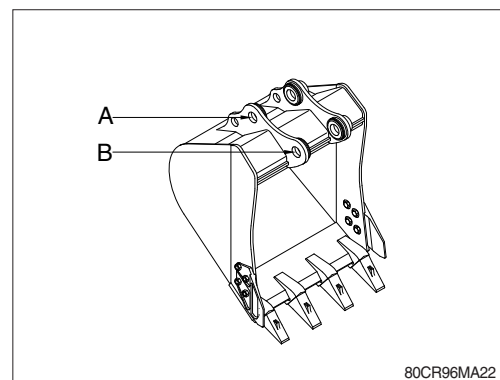
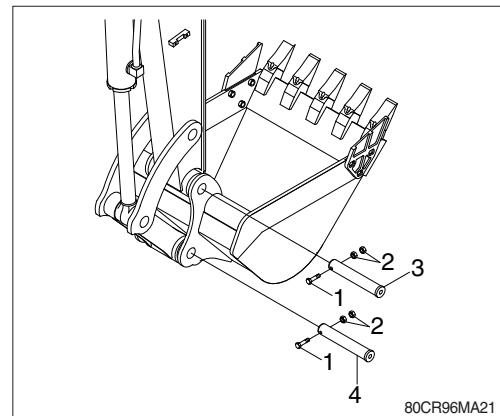
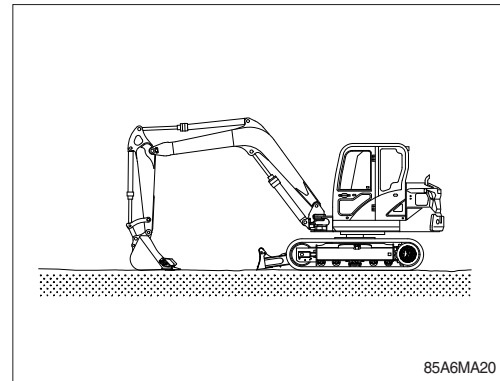
※ After removing the pins, make sure that they do not become contaminated with sand or mud and that the seals of bushings on both sides do not become damaged.

(4) Align the arm with holes (A) and the link with holes (B), then coat with grease and install pins (3, 4)

※ When installing the bucket, the O-rings are easily damaged, so fit the O-rings on the boss of the bucket as shown in the picture.

After hitting the pin, move the O-ring down to the regular groove.

(5) Install the stopper bolt (1) and nuts (2) for each pin, then grease the pin.

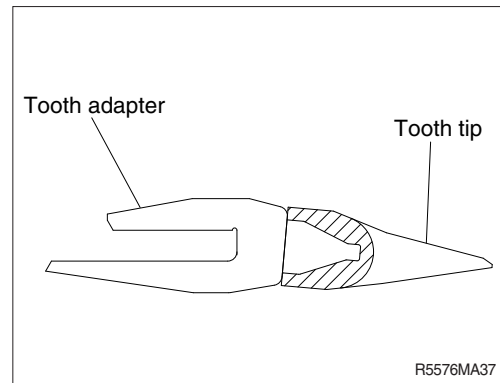




## 29) REPLACEMENT OF BUCKET TOOTH

### (1) Timing of replacement

- ① Check wearing condition as shown in the illustration and replace tooth tip before adapter starts to wear.
- ② In case of excessive use and tooth adapter has worn excessively, replacement may become impossible.



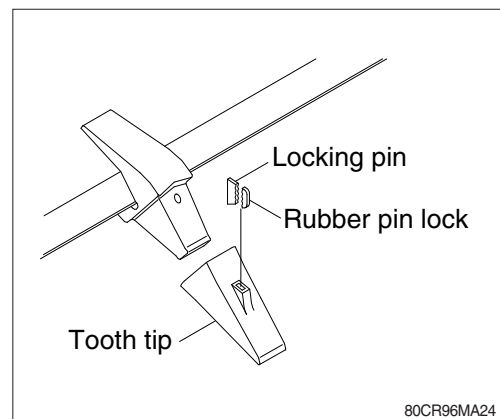
### (2) Instructions for replacement

- ① Pull out pin by striking pin with punch or hammer, avoiding damage to rubber pin lock.
- ② Remove dust and mud from surface of tooth adapter by using knife.
- ③ Place rubber pin lock in its proper place, and fit tooth tip to adapter.
- ④ Insert pin until rubber pin lock is positioned at locking pin groove.

▲ Serious injury or death can result from bucket falling.

▲ Block the bucket before changing tooth tips or side cutters.

▲ The operator should wear clothes and personal protection gear that are appropriate for the work environment. Protects the eyes from dust, particles and airborne materials with a protection gear like goggle.



### 30) LUBRICATE PIN AND BUSHING

#### (1) Lubricate to each pin of working device

Lubricate the grease to the grease nipple according to the lubricating interval.

No.	Description	Qty
1	Lubrication manifold at upper frame	2
2	Boom connection pin	2
3	Boom cylinder pin (head and rod)	2
4	Arm cylinder pin (head and rod)	2
5	Boom and arm connection pin	1
6	Bucket cylinder pin (head and rod)	2
	Bucket link (control rod)	2
	Arm and bucket connection pin	1
	Bucket and control rod connection pin	1
	Arm and control link connection pin	1
7	Dozer blade connection pin	4
8	Boom swing post	3
9	Boom rear bearing center ★	1

※ Shorten lubricating interval when working in water or dusty places.

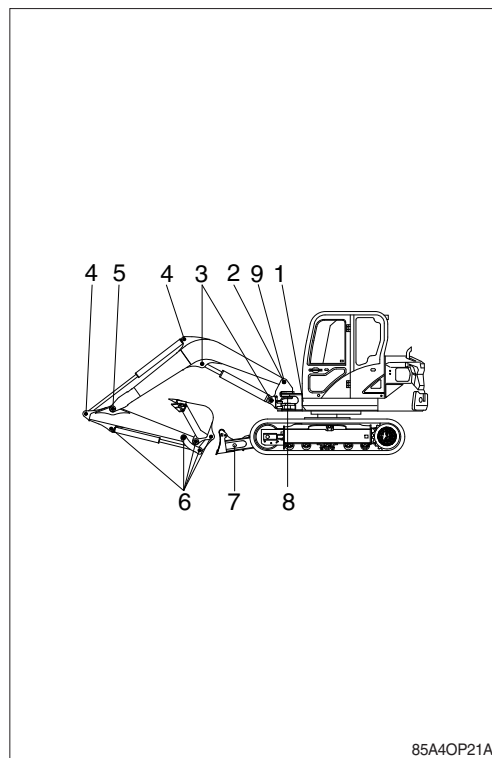
★ Not required : If necessary, lubricate the grease.

#### (2) Dust seals are mounted on the rotating part of working device to extend the lubricating interval.

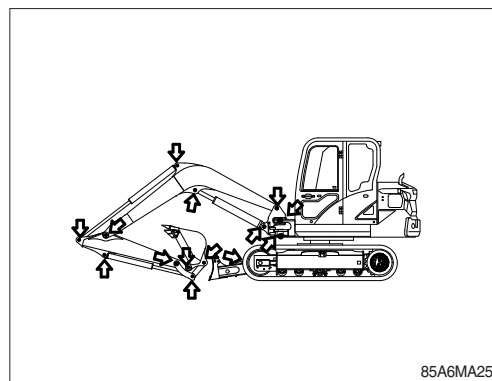
※ Mount the lip so it is facing outside when replacing dust seals.

※ If it is assembled in wrong direction, it will cause fast wear of pin and bushing, and create noise and vibration during operation.

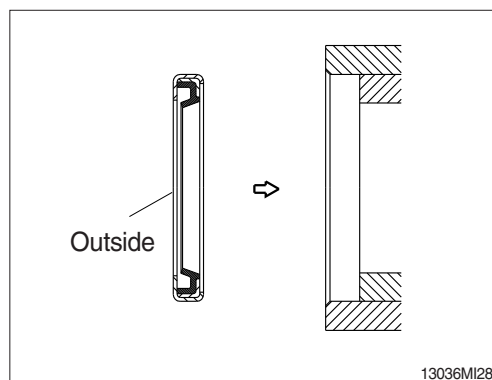
※ Install seal in the same manner as shown in the illustration. Use a plastic hammer to lightly and evenly tap the seal into place.



85A4OP21A



85A6MA25

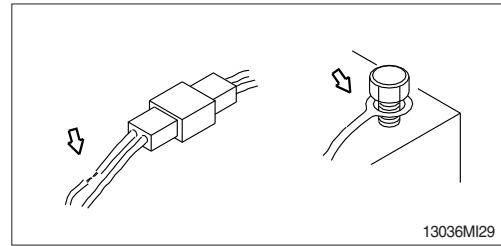


13036MI28

## 7. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

### 1) WIRING, GAUGES

Check regularly and repair loose or malfunctioning gauges when found.



### 2) BATTERY

#### (1) Clean

- ① Wash the terminal with hot water if it is contaminated, and apply grease to the terminals after washing.

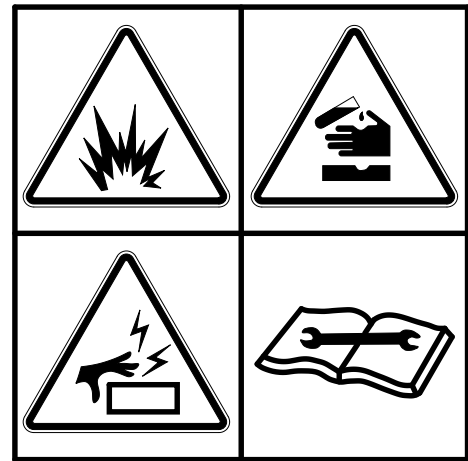
⚠ **Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries.**

⚠ **Always wear protective glasses when working with batteries.**

⚠ **Do not stain clothes or skin with electrolyte as it is acid.**

Be careful not to get the electrolyte in eyes.

If eyes are affected, flush with clean water or eye solution and seek immediate medical attention.



36070FW05

#### (2) Recycle

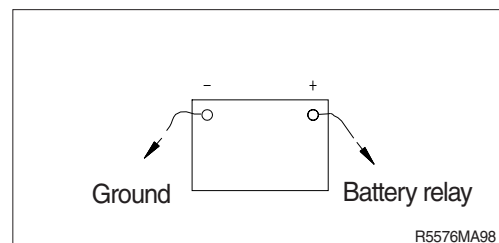
Never discard a battery.

Always return used batteries to one of the following locations.

- A battery supplier
- An authorized battery collection facility
- Recycling facility

#### (3) Method of removing the battery cable

Remove the cable from the ground connection first (⊖ terminal side) and reconnect it last when reassembling.



### 3) STARTING THE ENGINE WITH A BOOSTER CABLE

Follow these procedures when starting.

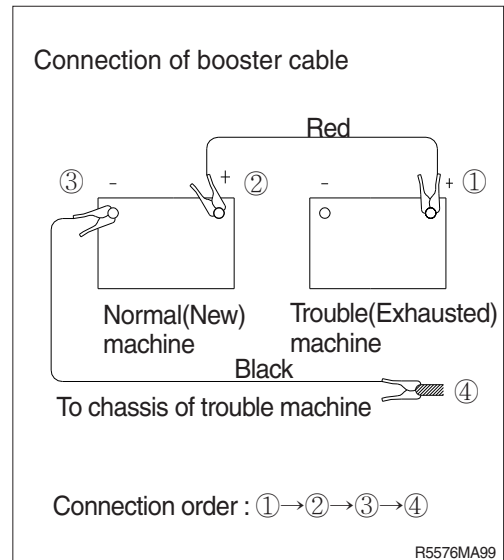
#### (1) Connection of booster cable

※ **Use the same capacity of battery for starting.**

- ① Make sure that the starting switches of the normal machine and trouble machine are both in the OFF position.
- ② Connect the red terminal of booster cable to the battery (+) terminal between exhausted and new battery.
- ③ Connect the black terminal of the booster cable between new battery (-) terminal and chassis of trouble machine.

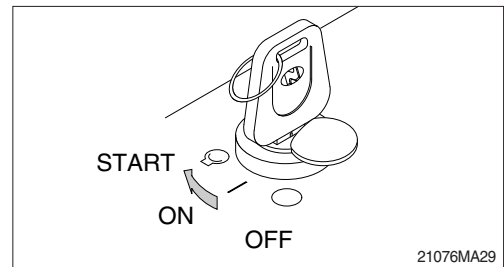
※ **Make and maintain a firm connection.**

※ **Sparks will occur slightly when making the final connection.**



#### (2) Starting the engine

- ① Start the engine of the normal machine and keep it running at high idle.
- ② Start engine of the troubled machine with starting switch.
- ③ If you can not start it with the first attempt, try again after 2 minutes.



#### (3) Taking off the booster cable

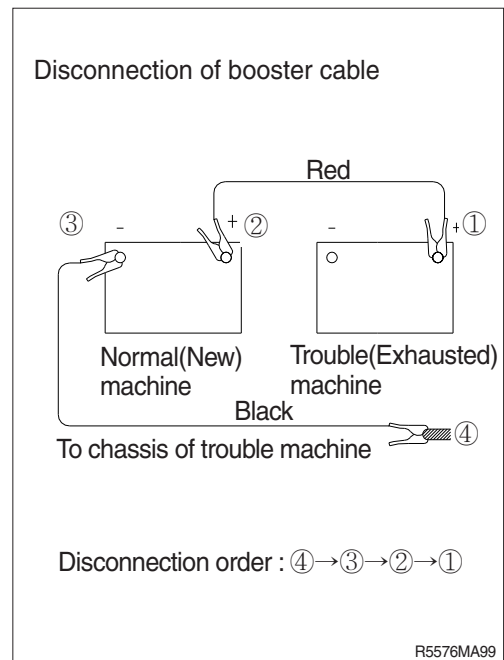
- ① Take off the booster cable (black).
- ② Take off the booster cable (red) connected to the (+) terminal.
- ③ Run engine at high idle until charging of the exhausted battery is complete.

▲ **Explosive gas is generated while using the battery or charging it. Keep any flames away and be careful not to cause a spark.**

※ **Charge the battery in a well ventilated area.**

※ **Place the machine on the earth or concrete. Avoid charging the machine on any steel or steel plates.**

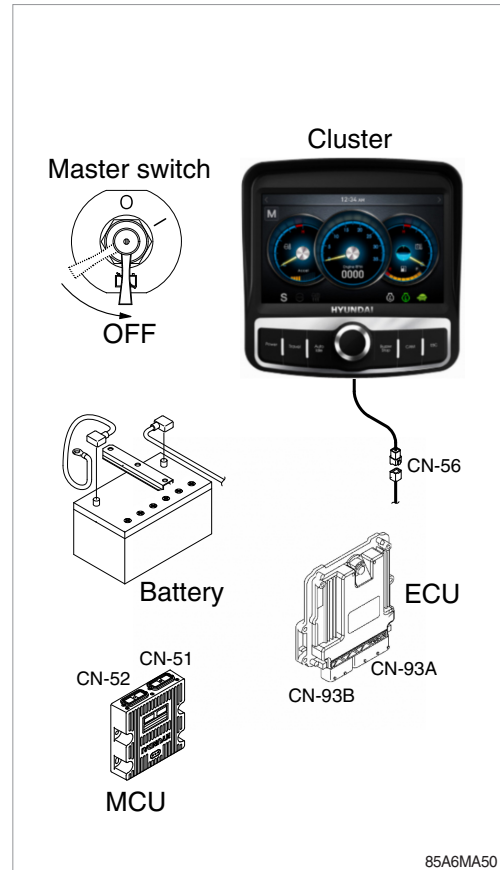
※ **Do not connect (+) terminal and (-) terminal when connecting booster cable because it will be shorted.**



#### (4) Welding repair

Before welding, follow the below procedure.

- ① Shut off the engine and remove the key.
  - ② Disconnect ground cable from battery by master switch.
  - ③ Before carrying out any electric welding on the machine, the battery cables should be disconnected and the connectors pulled out of the electronic control units (cluster etc).
  - ④ Connect the earth (ground) lead of the welding equipment as close to the welding point as possible.
- ※ Remove all paint to ensure a solid ground is achieved.
  - ※ Do not weld or flame cut on pipes or tubes that contain flammable fluids. Clean them thoroughly with nonflammable solvent before welding or flame cutting on them.
- ▲ Do not attempt to weld before carrying out the above.  
If not, it will cause serious damage to electric system.

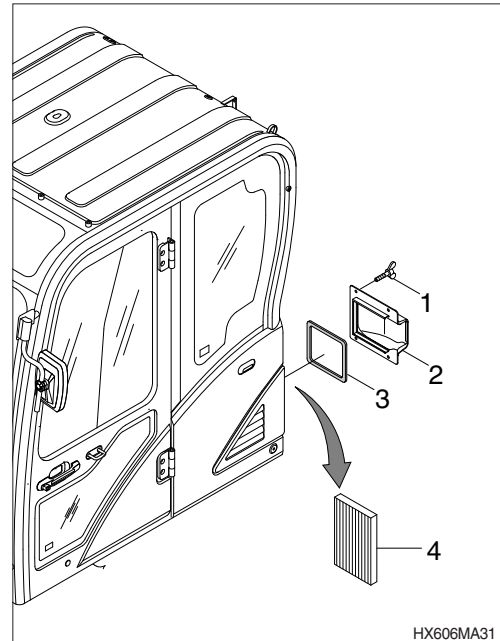


## 8. AIR CONDITIONER AND HEATER

### 1) CLEAN AND REPLACE OF THE OUTER FILTER

※ **Always stop the engine before servicing.**

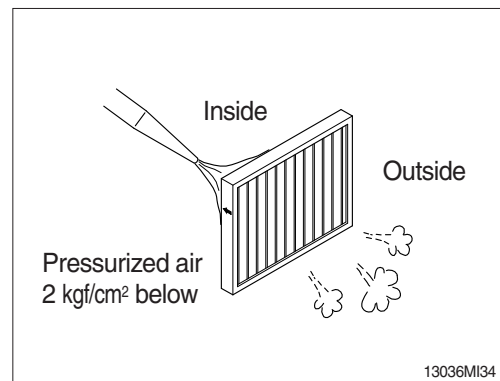
- (1) Remove the screw (1), cover (2) and pad (3).
- (2) Remove the outer filter (4).



- (3) Clean the outer filter using pressurized air (below 2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 28 psi).

▲ **When using pressurized air, be sure to wear safety glasses.**

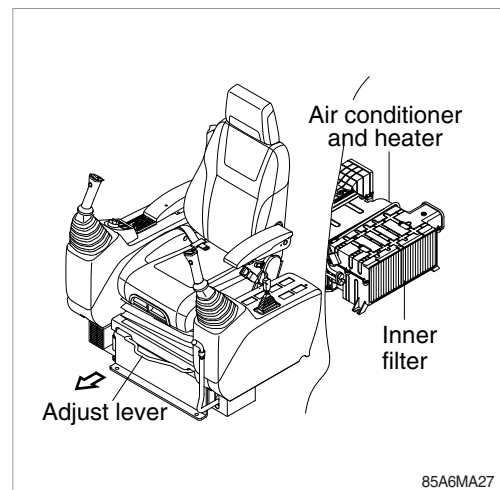
- (4) Inspect the filter after cleaning. If it is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new filter.



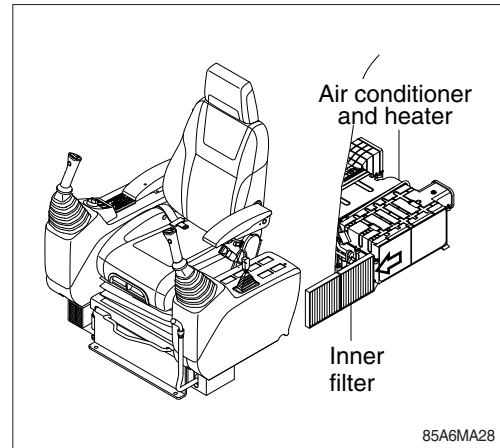
### 2) CLEAN AND REPLACE OF THE INNER FILTER

※ **Always stop the engine before servicing.**

- (1) Move seat and console box to arrow direction using the adjust lever.



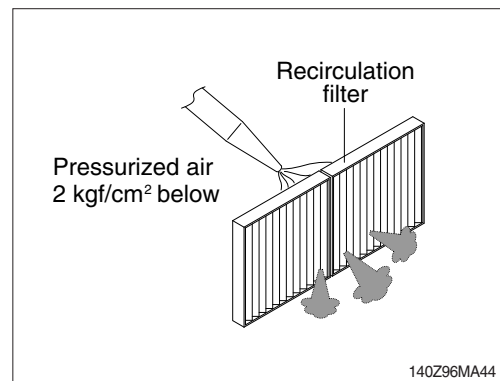
- (2) Remove the inner filter.



- (3) Clean the inner filter using pressurized air (below 2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 28 psi) or washing with water.

**▲ When using pressurized air, be sure to wear safety glasses.**

- (4) Inspect the filter after cleaning. If it is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new filter.



### 3) PRECAUTIONS FOR USING AIR CONDITIONER

- (1) When using the air conditioner for a long time, open the window once every one hour or ventilate by using the fresh air function.
- (2) Be careful not to overcool the cab.
- (3) The cab is properly cooled if the operator feels cool when entering from outside (about 5°C lower than the outside temperature).

### 4) CHECK DURING SEASON

Ask the service center for replenishment of refrigerant or other maintenance service so that the cooling performance does not wear prematurely.

### 5) CHECK DURING OFF-SEASON

Operate the air conditioner 2 or 3 times a month (each time for a few minutes) to avoid loss of oil film in the compressor.

## 6) REFRIGERANT

### (1) Equipment contains fluorinated greenhouse gas.

Model	Type	Quantity	GWP : 1430
HX85A	HFC-134a	0.75 kg (1.65 lb)	CO <sub>2</sub> eq. : 1.0725 t

#### ※ GWP

Global warming potential (GWP) is a measure of how much heat a gas traps in the atmosphere relative to that of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>). GWP is calculated in terms of the 100-year warming potential of 1 kg of a greenhouse gas relative to 1 kg of CO<sub>2</sub>.

### (2) Environmental precautions

The air conditioning system of the machine is filled with HFC-134a refrigerant at the factory.

HFC-134a refrigerant is a fluorinated greenhouse gas and contributes to global warming.

Do not release refrigerant into the environment.

### (3) Safety precautions

Work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by a qualified service technician.

Do not attempt to perform work on the air conditioning system.

Wear safety goggles, chemical resistant gloves and appropriate personal protective equipment to protect bare skin when there is a risk of contact with refrigerant.

### (4) Action in case of exposure

#### ① Eye contact / Limited skin contact

Rinse with warm water and apply a light bandage. Seek medical attention immediately.

#### ② Extensive skin contact

Rinse with warm water and carefully heat the area with warm water or warm clothing.

Seek medical attention immediately.

#### ③ Inhalation

Leave the area and find fresh air. Seek medical attention immediately.



# TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

## 1. ENGINE

※ This guide is not intended to cover every condition, however many of the more common possibilities are listed.

Trouble	Service	Remark
The engine oil pressure lamp lights up when engine speed is raised after completion of warm up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Add the oil to the specified level.</li> <li>· Replace the oil filter cartridge.</li> <li>· Check oil leakage from the pipe or the joint.</li> <li>· Replace the monitor.</li> </ul>	
Steam is emitted from the top part of the radiator (the pressure valve). Coolant level warning lamp lights up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Supply coolant and check leakage.</li> <li>· Adjust fan belt tension.</li> <li>· Wash out inside of cooling system.</li> <li>· Clean or repair the radiator fin.</li> <li>· Check the thermostat.</li> <li>· Tighten the radiator cap firmly or replace the cap itself.</li> <li>· Replace the monitor.</li> </ul>	
The engine does not start when the starting motor is turned over.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Confirm fuel supply.</li> <li>· Repair where air is leaking into fuel system.</li> <li>· Check the injection pump or the nozzle.</li> <li>· Check the valve clearance.</li> <li>· Check engine compression.</li> </ul>	
Exhaust gas is white or blue.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Adjust to specified oil quantity.</li> <li>· Replace with specified fuel.</li> </ul>	
Exhaust gas occasionally turns black.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Clean or replace the air cleaner element.</li> <li>· Check the nozzle.</li> <li>· Check engine compression.</li> <li>· Clean or replace the turbocharger.</li> </ul>	
Combustion noise occasionally changes to breathing sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the nozzle.</li> </ul>	
Unusual combustion noise or mechanical noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Confirm fuel quality.</li> <li>· Check over-heating.</li> <li>· Replace the muffler.</li> <li>· Adjust valve clearance.</li> </ul>	

## 2. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Trouble	Service	Remark
Work lamp does not glow brightly or flickers even when engine runs at high idle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check for loose terminals and open-circuit wiring.</li> <li>· Adjust belt tension.</li> </ul>	
Battery charging lamp does not go out even when engine runs at high speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the alternator.</li> <li>· Check and repair wiring.</li> </ul>	
Unusual noise is emitted from the alternator.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the alternator.</li> </ul>	
Starting motor does not turn when starting switch is turned ON.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check and repair the wiring.</li> <li>· Charge the battery.</li> <li>· Check the starting motor.</li> <li>· Check the safety relay.</li> </ul>	
The pinion of the starting motor keeps going in and out.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Charge the battery.</li> <li>· Check the safety relay.</li> </ul>	
Starting motor turns the engine sluggishly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Charge the battery.</li> <li>· Check the starting motor.</li> </ul>	
The starting motor disengages before the engine starts up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check and repair the wiring.</li> <li>· Charge the battery.</li> </ul>	
The engine warming up lamp does not go ON.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check and repair wiring.</li> <li>· Check the monitor.</li> </ul>	
The engine oil pressure lamp does not light up when engine is stationary (when the starting switch is in ON position.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the monitor.</li> <li>· Check the caution lamp switch.</li> </ul>	
Battery charging lamp does not light up when the engine is stationary. (when the starting switch is in ON position.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check the monitor.</li> <li>· Check and repair the wiring.</li> </ul>	

### 3. OTHERS

Trouble	Service	Remark
Track slips out of place. Excessive wear of the sprocket.	· Adjust tension of track.	
Bucket either rises slowly or not at all.	· Add oil to specified level.	
Slow speed of travel, swing, boom, arm and bucket.	· Add oil to specified level.	
Unusual noise emitted from pump.	· Clean the hydraulic tank strainer.	
Excessive oil temperature rise of hydraulic oil.	· Clean the check the oil cooler. · Adjust fan belt tension. · Add oil to specified level.	

# HYDRAULIC BREAKER AND QUICK COUPLER

## 1. SELECTING HYDRAULIC BREAKER

- ※ Read safety hints in this manual and breaker & quick coupler manuals in website (Dealer Portal) before using breaker and quick coupler.
- 1) Become familiar with the manual and select breakers suitable to machine specifications.
- 2) Make careful selection in consideration of oil quantity, pressure and striking force, to enable satisfied performance.
- 3) When apply a breaker to the machine, consult your local dealer of HD Hyundai Construction Equipment for further explanation.

## 2. CIRCUIT CONFIGURATION

- 1) As for breaker oil pressure line, use extra spool of main control valve.
- 2) Set proper breaker pressure on load relief valve.
- 3) The pressure of the HX85A system is 280 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> (3980 psi).
- 4) The accumulator should be used to the breaker charging and return line.  
If the accumulator is not used, it can cause damage as the input wave is delivered.  
※ **Keep the pressure pulsation of pump below 60 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> (850 psi) by installing the accumulator.**
- 5) Do not connect the breaker return line to the main control, but connect to the return line in front of oil cooler.
- 6) Do not connect the breaker return line to drain lines, such as of swing motor, travel motor or pump, otherwise they will be damaged.
- 7) One spool of the main control valve should be connected to the tank.
- 8) Select the size of pipe required considering the back pressure.
- 9) Shimless tube should be used for the piping. The hose and seal should be HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine parts.
- 10) Weld the bracket for pipe clamp to prevent damage caused by vibration.

### 3. MAINTENANCE

#### 1) MAINTENANCE OF HYDRAULIC OIL AND FILTER

- (1) A machine with hydraulic breaker can cause the hydraulic oil to become severely contaminated.
- (2) Therefore machine may go down if not maintained properly.
- (3) Inspect and maintain hydraulic oil, hydraulic oil return filter, pilot line filter element and drain filter.
- (4) Replace when the breaker work is used for short time according to the standard of right graph.

#### 2) RELEASING THE PRESSURE IN BREAKER CIRCUIT

When breaker operating is finished, stop engine and push pedal or switch for breaker to release pressure in breaker circuit.

If you allow pressure to remain on the system, the lifetime of the diaphragm in the accumulator will be shortened.

- 3) Be careful to prevent contamination by dust, sand etc.  
If such pollution becomes mixed into the oil, the pump's moving parts will wear abnormally, shorten lifetime and become damaged. This could also contaminate the entire hydraulic system.
- 4) When operating breaker, bolts and nuts of main equipment may be loosened by vibration. So, it must be inspected periodically.

Service interval unit : hours

Attachment	Operating rate	Hydraulic oil	Filter element
Breaker	100 %	600* <sup>1</sup>	200
		1000* <sup>2</sup>	

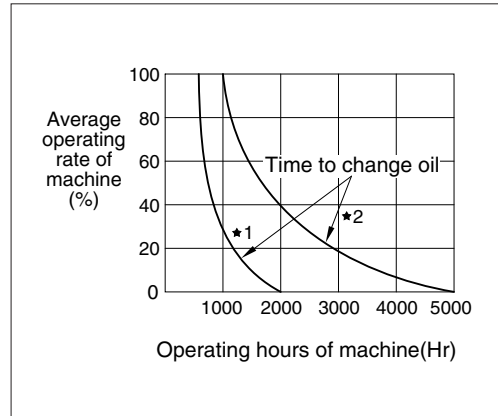
\*<sup>1</sup> : Conventional hydraulic oil

\*<sup>2</sup> : HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine long life hydraulic oil

#### ● Replace following filter at same time

- Hydraulic oil return filter : 1 EA
- Pilot line filter element : 1 EA

Hyd oil change guide for hydraulic breaker



\*<sup>1</sup> : Conventional hydraulic oil

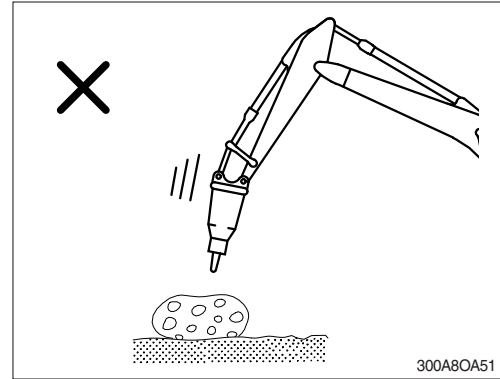
\*<sup>2</sup> : HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine long life hydraulic oil

## 4. PRECAUTIONS WHILE OPERATING THE BREAKER

### DO NOT BREAK ROCK WHILE LOWERING

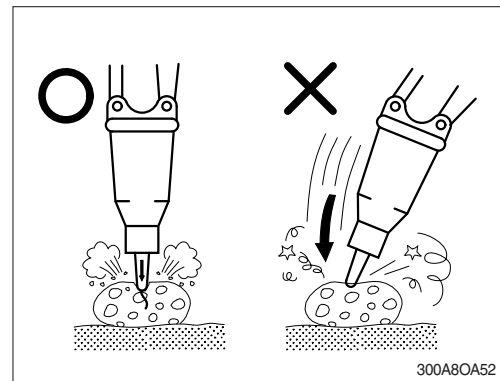
As the breaker is heavy in comparison with bucket, it must be operated slowly.

If breaker is rapidly pushed down, working device may be damaged.



### DIRECTION OF THRUST

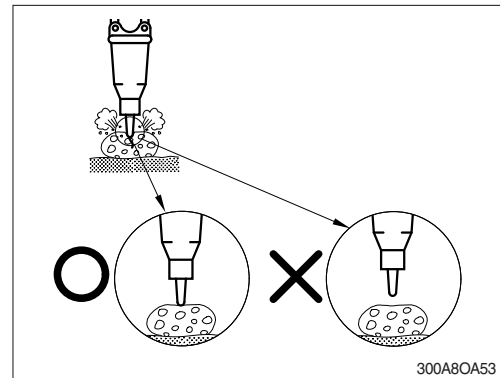
Apply a thrust in a straight line with the tool. Place the tool on a rock with the hammering side as vertically as possible. If the hammering side is oblique, the tool may slip during hammering, causing the chisel and piston to break, or seized. When breaking, select the point of a rock on which hammering can perform stably and fully stabilize the chisel to the hammer.



### PROPER THRUST

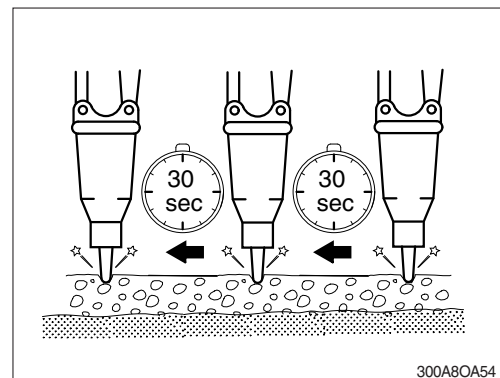
To break effectively, a proper thrust force must be applied to the breaker. If thrust is too low, impact energy of the piston may not be sufficient to break rocks.

Breaking force is transferred to the breaker body, arm and boom resulting in damage of those parts.



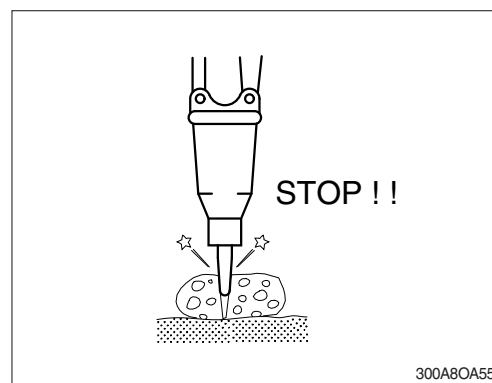
Move the impact point from the edge to the interior. Never try to break off a too large block, if the object has not broken within 30 seconds. The object should be broken up piece by piece in small blocks. Large distance steps will not improve working results.

Operating the breaker longer than 30 seconds may cause damage to the breaker.



### BLANKS THRUST

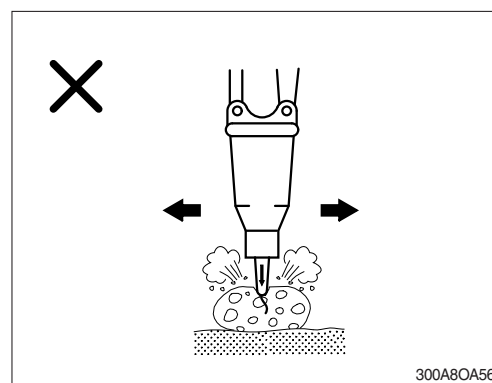
Blank blows, which are impact on the chisel without contact with the object, are very harmful for the breaker. Always press the chisel down onto the material before starting the breaker. And stop operation immediately as soon as the object has been broken. If operation is continued, blank blows could result in excessive wear to major components.



### DO NOT MOVE MACHINE OR BREAKER WHILE STRIKING

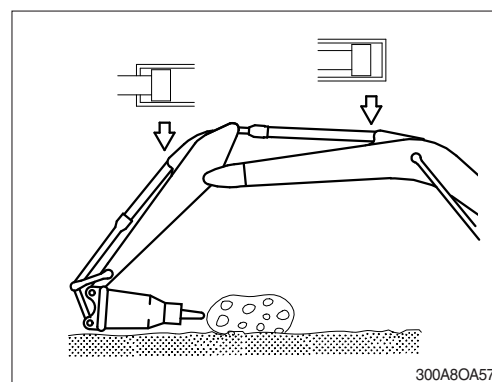
Do not move hammer while striking.

This will cause damage to the working device and the swing system.



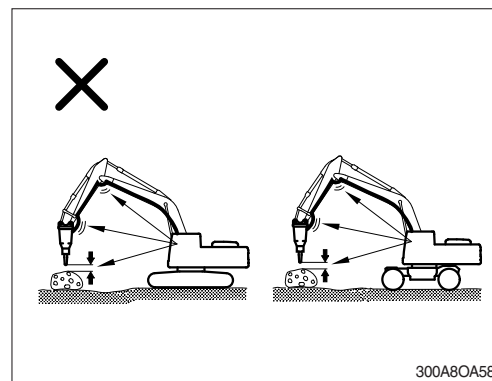
### OPERATE BREAKER WITH A GAP IN EXCESS OF 100 mm (4 inches) FROM THE END OF THE STROKE TIP

If breaker is operated with the end tip, the cylinder may be damaged.



### STOP THE OPERATION IMMEDIATELY IF HOSES VIBRATE EXCESSIVELY

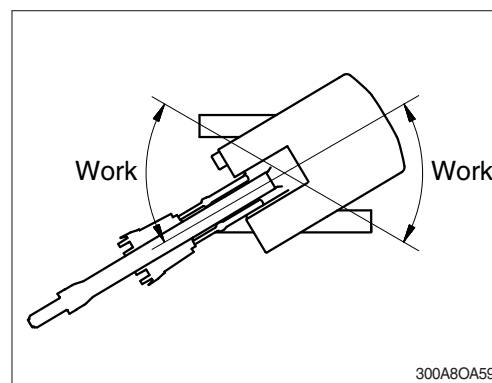
Violent pulsations of the high / low pressure breaker hoses could indicate an accumulator fault. Check for oil leaks at the hose fitting points retightening as necessary. Should symptoms persist, contact the service shop appointed by the Hyundai dealer in your territory for repair. An excessive gap between tool and workpiece between strikes may indicate seizure of the tool in the front head. Disassemble the front head, inspect the components and repair or replace defective parts.



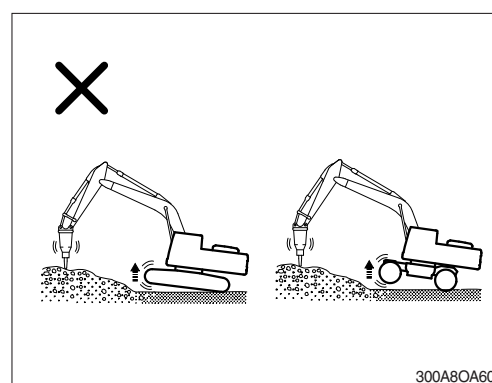


### DO NOT WORK WHILE IN A SWING STATE

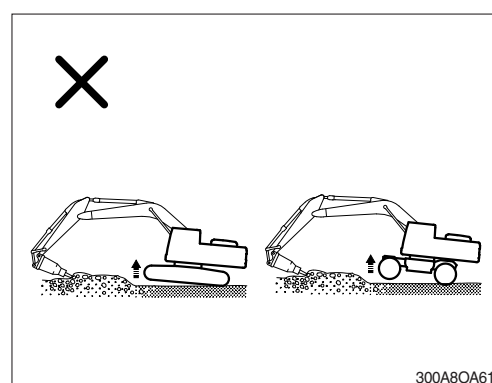
Do not work while swinging the upper structure. It cause oil leakage of the bend in the track shoe and rollers.



Conversely, if thrust is excessive or breaking is performed with boom of the lower chassis raised as shown, the machine may suddenly tip toward the movement. The breaker body may strike the broken rocks violently resulting in damage.

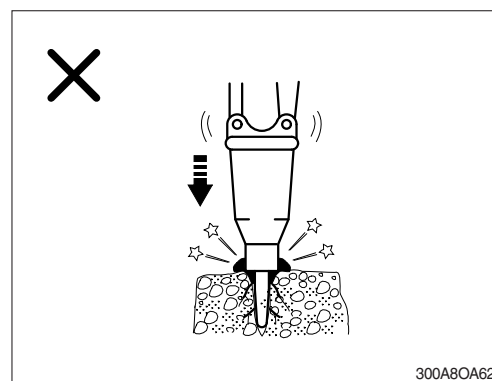


Do not extend the bucket cylinder fully and thrusting to raise the machine off the ground.



Excessive force as above may also result in vibrations being transmitted to the tracks causing damage.

Care is required to ensure adequate but not excessive force is applied to the breaker in operation.



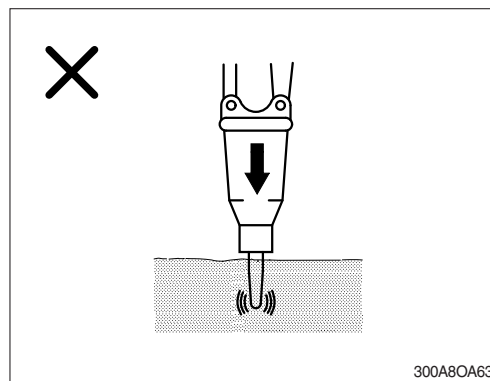
## NEVER DRIVE THE CHISEL INTO THE GROUND

If the advance is too large and the chisel is not rocked to release the dust, the chisel will be driven into the material without breaking the material. This causes the chisel tip to glow red-hot and lose its hardness.

As a result, the chisel wears out more quickly. Operating in this way is not permitted.

Dust dampens impact power, when the chisel is inserted into the ground, and reduces the efficiency of the breaker. Tilt the breaker slightly backward and forward, not more than 5°, while operating so that the dust can escape.

Do not rock the breaker at angles greater than 5° or the chisel will be broken.

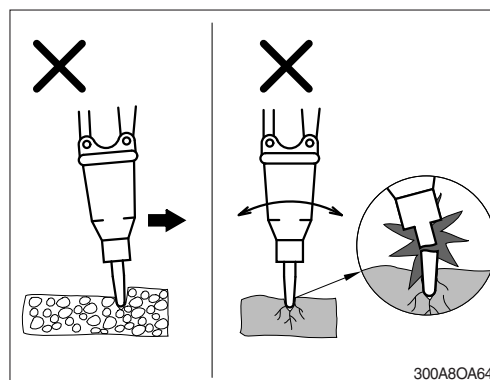


## NEVER USE AS A LEVER

Do not use the chisel as a lever; e.g. crowbar, as this will cause the chisel to break.

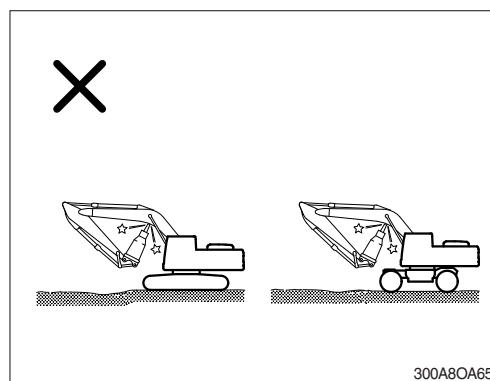
Under any circumstances, operating in this way is not permitted.

Most of bending failure of the chisel may be caused by lever action in stone that is inside hard or frozen ground. Be careful and stop operating if you feel sudden resistance under the chisel.



## TAKE CARE OF CHISEL AND BOOM INTERFACE

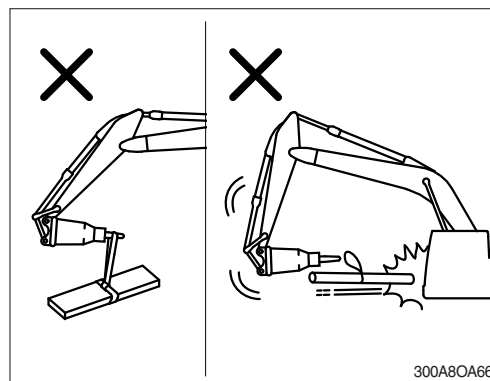
Be aware of clearance between breaker tip and the underside of boom as shown.



### **NEVER USE FOR LIFT OR TRANSPORT PURPOSES**

The hydraulic breaker is not designed to lift or transport loads. Never use the chisel as a lifting point.

This is dangerous and could damage the breaker or the chisel.

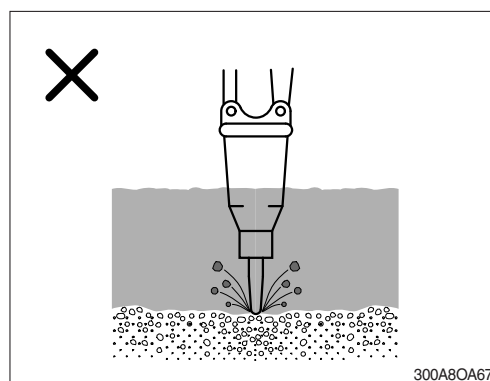


### **NEVER USE THE HYDRAULIC BREAKER UNDER WATER**

The hydraulic breaker, as a standard assembly, never be used in or under water without prior conversion. If you use under water, water fills the impact chamber between the piston and the chisel, a strong hydraulic pressure wave is generated and will damage the seals in the breaker. And, in addition, corrosion, lack of lubrication or penetration of water could result in further damage to components of the breaker and the lower chassis.

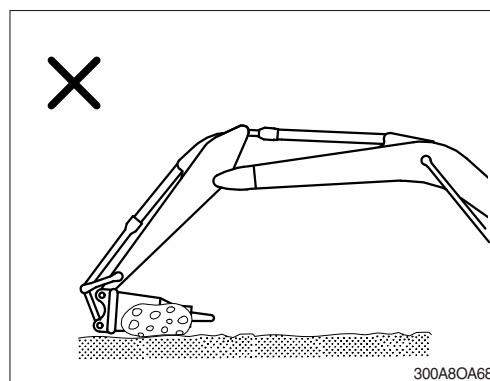
To operate the breaker under water, compressed air must be supplied into the breaker, into the impact chamber of the front-head, prior to use.

Consult your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer for the underwater kit.



### **DO NOT USE BREAKER TO CARRY BROKEN STONE OR ROCK BY SWING OPERATING**

This may damage the operation device and swing system.

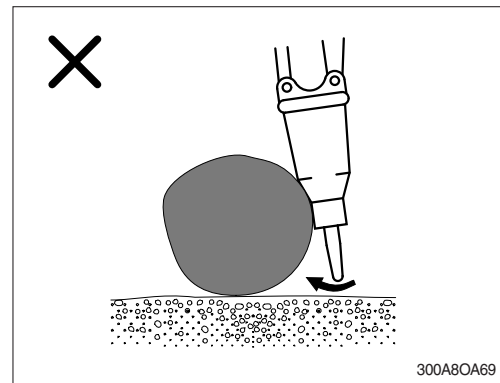


**NEVER USE THE CHISEL OR HYDRAULIC BREAKER TO MOVE ROCKS OR OTHER OBJECTS**

The hydraulic breaker is not designed for this usage.

Do not use the breaker or chisel to roll, push the object or reposition the lower chassis.

This may cause damage to the breaker and the lower chassis.

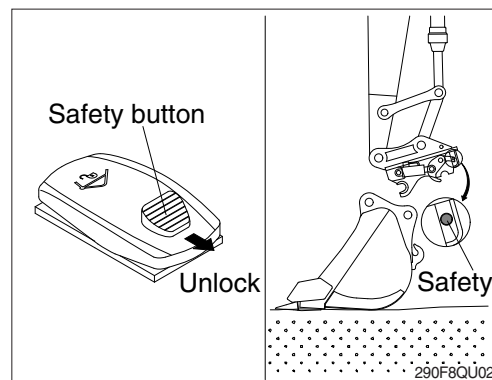


## 5. QUICK COUPLER

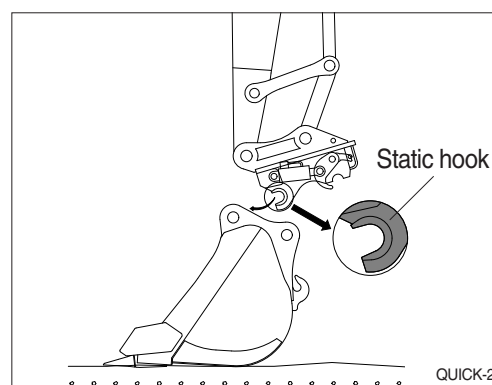
■ MACHINE SERIAL NO. : -#0208

### 1) FIXING BUCKET WITH QUICK COUPLER

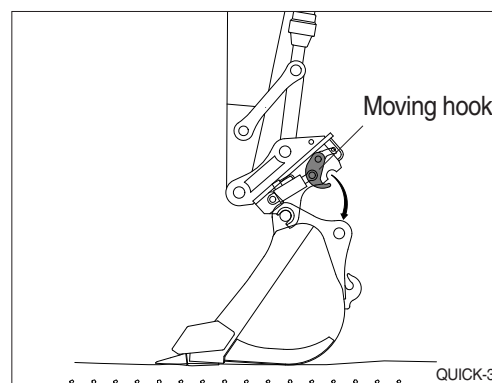
- (1) Before fixing bucket, remove safety pin of the moving hook.
- (2) Pulling safety button, press the quick coupler switch to unlock position. Then, the moving hook is placed in the release position.



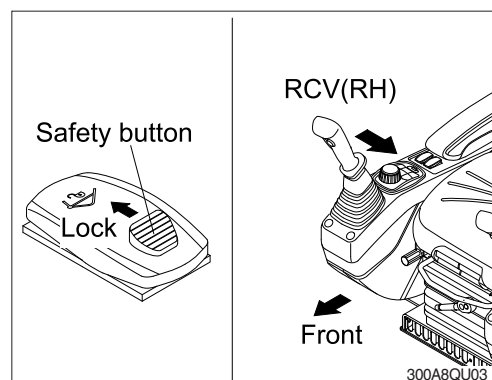
- (3) Aligning the arm and bucket, insert static hook of quick coupler to the bucket pin while pressing the quick coupler switch.



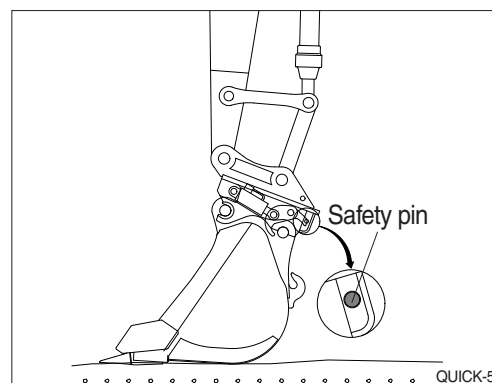
- (4) Operate RCV lever to bucket-in position. Then, the moving hook is coupled with the bucket link pin while pressing the quick coupler switch. Make sure that the moving hook is completely contacted with bucket link pin.



- (5) Push safety button to lock position.  
Operate RCV lever to bucket-in position.  
※ **Be sure to check connection status between bucket pins and hooks of quick coupler.**



- (6) After checking the connection status between bucket pins and hooks of quick coupler, **insert safety pin of moving hook to lock position.**



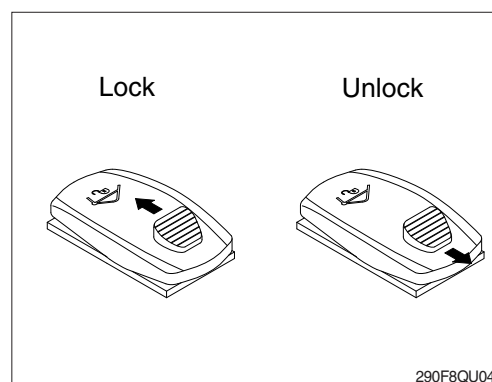
## 2) REMOVE BUCKET FROM QUICK COUPLER

Removing procedure is reverse of fixing.

## 3) PRECAUTION OF USING QUICK COUPLER

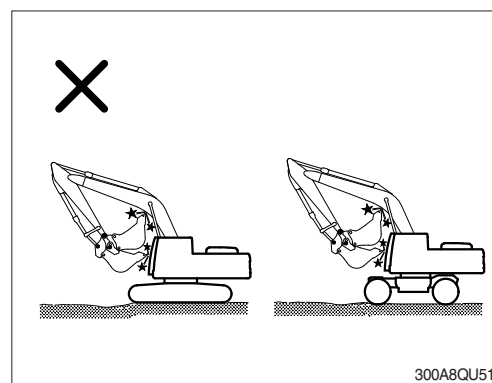
- ⚠ When operating the machine with quick coupler, confirm that the quick coupler switch is in the LOCK position and safety pin of moving hook is inserted.

Operating the machine with quick coupler switch unlocked and without safety pin of moving hook can cause the bucket to drop off and could result in personal injury, death, machine damage or property damage.



- ⚠ Be careful of the operating the machine which is equipped with quick coupler. The bucket may hit cab, boom and boom cylinders when it reaches the vicinity of them as shown in the illustration.

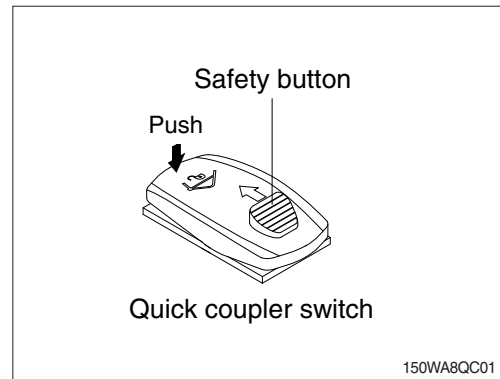
HD Hyundai Construction Equipment will not be responsible for any injury, death or damage in the event that the coupler, attachment and safety pin are not installed correctly.



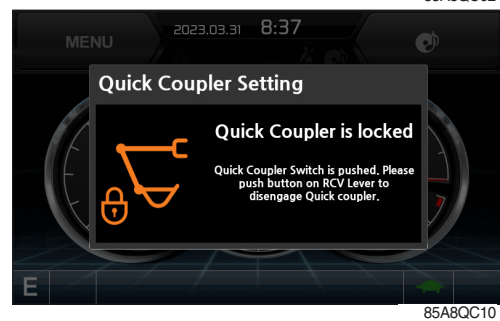
■ MACHINE SERIAL NO. : #0209-

1) FIXING BUCKET WITH QUICK COUPLER

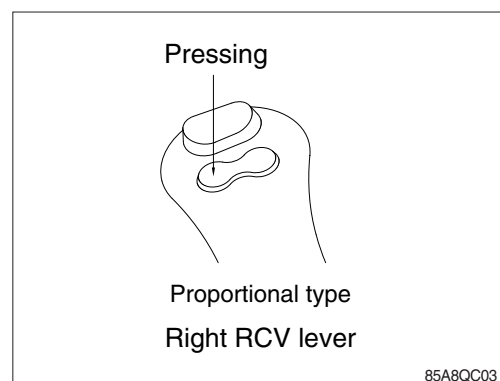
- (1) Park the excavator and attachment on firm and level ground.
- (2) After checking the safe environment conditions for installing/removing the quick coupler, perform the disengagement process.
- (3) To unlock the quick coupler switch, press the safety button forward and press the switch.



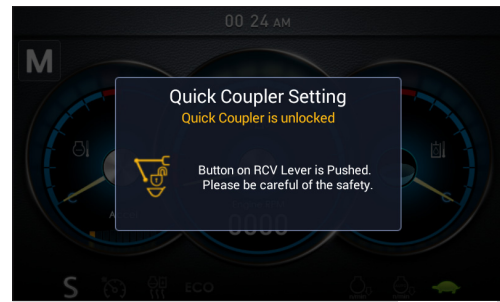
- (4) Quick coupler symbols and warning messages appear on the cluster screen, and warning buzzers sound.
- ※ The warning buzzer continues to operate up to step (12).



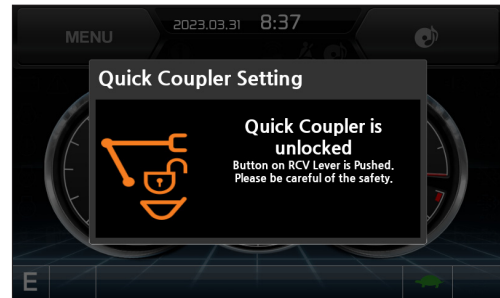
- (5) To unlock the quick coupler, press the quick coupler button on the right RCV lever. To maintain the unlock status of the quick coupler the operator must maintain pressing the coupler button.



- (6) The warning message in the cluster screen is changed, and the quick coupler lock is released.

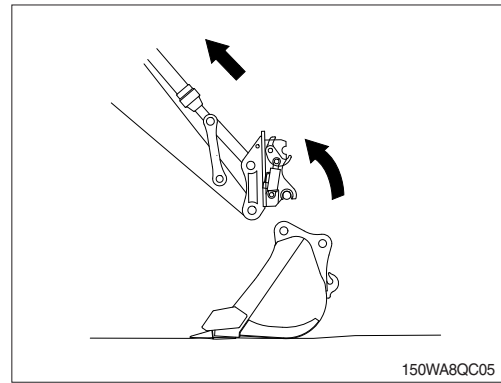


85A8QC04



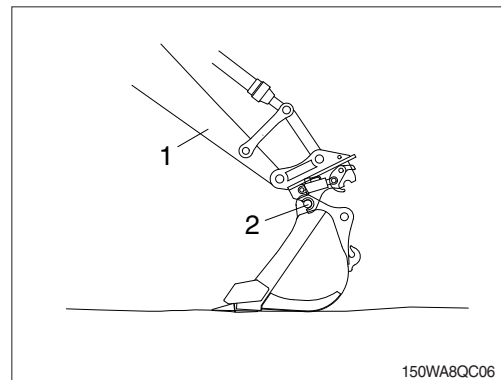
85A8QC11

- (7) Retract the bucket cylinder. Align the quick coupler with attachment mounting pins or interface.



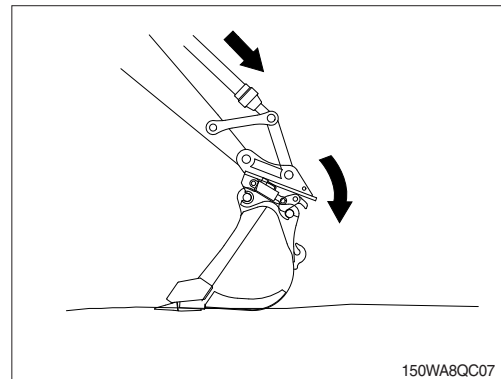
150WA8QC05

- (8) Move the arm (1) and raise it until hook engages the upper (2) pin or interface of attachment.



150WA8QC06

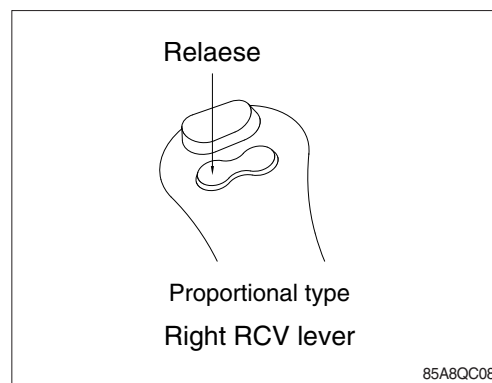
- (9) With the bucket crowded, engage the quick coupler to the lower attachment pin or interface.



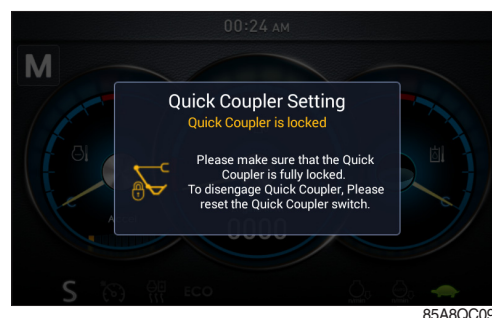
150WA8QC07



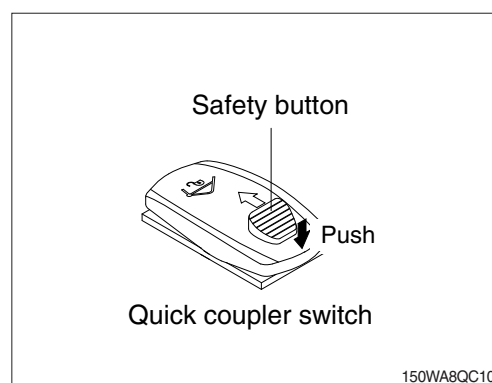
- (10) To engage the quick coupler, release the quick coupler button on the right RCV lever.



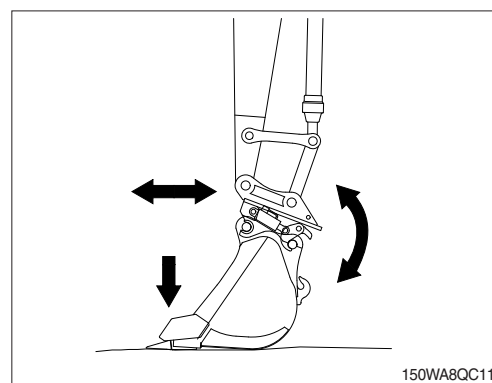
- (11) The warning message in the cluster screen is changed, and the quick coupler lock is engaged.
- ※ After changing warning message, the quick coupler will be locked even if the operator presses the quick coupler button of the right RCV lever again. To unlock the quick coupler again the operator must repeat from the process (3).



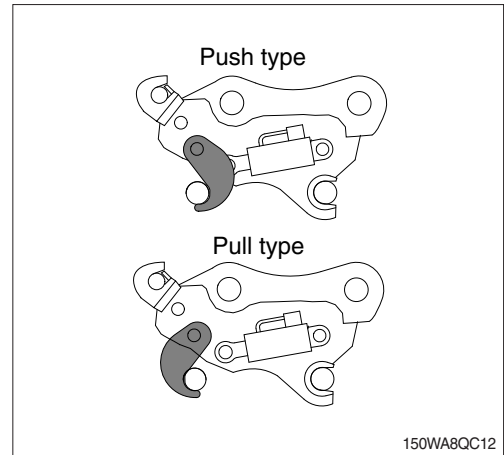
- (12) To confirm the engagement of the quick coupler, release the safety button to its original position.
- The buzzer will stop activating.
  - The warning message will disappear.



- (13) Shake the attachment vigorously and lower the boom to the ground and apply down pressure to the quick coupler and attachment to check that attachment is fully engaged and locked to the quick coupler.

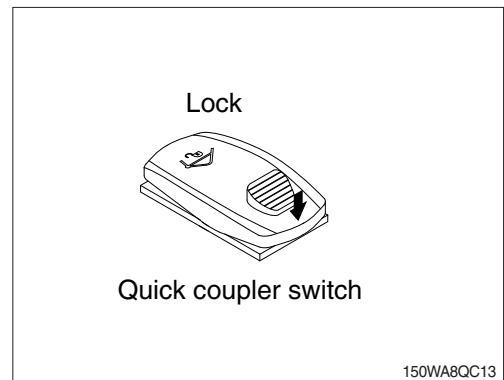


- (14) Visually check that quick coupler is fully engaged and locked before operating the machine and attachment.

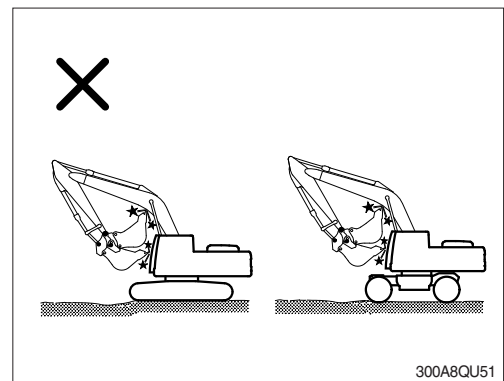


## 2) PRECAUTION OF USING QUICK COUPLER

- ⚠ When operating the machine with quick coupler, confirm that the quick coupler switch is in the LOCK position. Operating the machine with quick coupler switch unlocked can cause the bucket to drop off and could result in personal injury, death, machine damage or property damage.



- ⚠ Be careful of the operating the machine which is equipped with quick coupler. The bucket may hit cab, boom and boom cylinders when it reaches the vicinity of them as shown in the illustration. HD Hyundai Construction Equipment will not be responsible for any injury, death or damage in the event that the quick coupler and attachment are not install-ed correctly.



## A

After engine start .....	4-5
Air breather element .....	6-29
Air cleaner filter .....	6-24
Air conditioner & heater .....	3-43
Air conditioner filter .....	6-40
Attachment lowering .....	4-18

## B

Battery .....	6-36
Before starting engine .....	4-2
Boom lowering .....	4-18
Boom swing cylinder grease .....	6-31
Bucket clearance adjustment .....	6-33
Bucket replacement .....	6-33
Bucket selection guide .....	2-16
Bucket tooth replacement .....	6-34

## C

Cab air filter .....	6-40
Cab device .....	3-1
Changing machine control pattern .....	4-21
Cigar lighter .....	3-46
Cluster .....	3-2
Cooling fan .....	6-24

## D

Data plate .....	0-15
------------------	------

## E

Engine oil filter .....	6-18
Engine oil level .....	6-18
Engine starting & stop .....	4-4
Engine starting by booster .....	6-37
Engine stop .....	4-6

## F

Fan belt .....	6-23
Fuel filter .....	6-26
Fuel leakage .....	6-27
Fuel system bleeding .....	6-26
Fuel tank .....	6-25
Fuse & relay box .....	3-55

## G

Gauge .....	3-3
-------------	-----

## H

Hydraulic breaker .....	8-1
Hydraulic oil changing .....	6-28
Hydraulic oil filling .....	6-27-1
Hydraulic oil level .....	6-27
Hydraulic oil return filter .....	6-29

## L

LCD .....	3-2
Levers & pedals .....	3-41
Lifting capacities .....	2-8
Lubricant specification .....	2-21

## M

Maintenance check list .....	6-11
Major component .....	2-12
MCU (Machine Control Unit) .....	3-49
Monitor panel .....	3-2

## N

New machine operation .....	4-1
-----------------------------	-----

## O

Oil cooler .....	6-23
Operating pattern .....	4-21

## P

Pattern change valve .....	4-22
Pedals .....	3-41
Periodical replacement parts .....	6-5
Pilot line filter element .....	6-29
Pin & bushing lubrication .....	6-35
Pilot lamps .....	3-10

## Q

Quick coupler .....	8-6
---------------------	-----

## R

Radiator coolant .....	6-20
Radiator flushing .....	6-20
Radio & USB player .....	3-57
RCV lever lubricate .....	6-31
Recommended oils .....	2-21, 6-10
Relieving pressure .....	6-3
RCV lever operating pattern .....	4-21

## S

Safety instructions .....	1-2
Safety labels .....	0-5
Safety parts .....	6-5
Seat .....	3-48
Seat belt .....	3-48
Specification for major component .....	2-18
Specification .....	2-2
Start switch .....	3-35
Storage .....	4-19
Suction strainer .....	6-28
Swing bearing grease .....	6-30
Swing reduction gear oil .....	6-31
Switch panel .....	3-35
Switches .....	3-35

## T

Torques-major component .....	6-8
Torques-fastener .....	6-6
Towing machine .....	4-10
Track adjustment .....	6-32
Track shoe selection .....	2-17
Transportation .....	5-1
Travel reduction gear oil .....	6-31
Traveling machine .....	4-8
Troubleshooting guide .....	7-1

## U

Undercarriage .....	2-17
---------------------	------

## W

Warming up operation .....	4-5
Warning lamps .....	3-5
Water separator .....	6-25
Weight .....	2-7
Working device operation .....	4-7
Working method .....	4-11
Working range .....	2-5